The Ultimate Chess Strategy Book: Volume 1

How to play the Closed Openings like a virtuoso

Alfonso Romero and Amador Gonzalez de la Nava
The Ultimate Chess Strategy Book
Volume 1

Alfonso Romero and Amador Gonzalez de la Nava

GAMBIT
First published in the UK by Gambit Publications Ltd 2008

Copyright © Alfonso Romero and Amador Gonzalez de la Nava 2008

The right of Alfonso Romero and Amador Gonzalez de la Nava to be identified as the authors of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out or otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

ISBN-10: 1-904600-84-0

DISTRIBUTION:
Tel +44 (0)20 8986 4854 Fax +44 (0)20 8533 5821. E-mail: orders@Centralbooks.com

E-mail: info@gambitbooks.com
Website (regularly updated): www.gambitbooks.com

Edited by Graham Burgess
Typeset by John Nunn
Cover image by Wolff Morrow
Printed in Great Britain by The Cromwell Press, Trowbridge, Wilts.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Gambit Publications Ltd
Managing Director: Murray Chandler GM
Chess Director: Dr John Nunn GM
Editorial Director: Graham Burgess FM
German Editor: Petra Nunn WFM
Webmaster: Dr Helen Milligan WFM
Contents

Symbols 4
Foreword by Veselin Topalov 5
Preface 6

Tests 1-90 7

Solutions 68
Index of Players 206
Index of Openings 207
Symbols

+ check
++ double check
# checkmate
!! brilliant move
! good move
!? interesting move
?! dubious move
? bad move
?? blunder
+- White is winning
± White is much better
± White is slightly better
= the position is equal
⌘ Black is slightly better
⌘ Black is much better
--+ Black is winning
Ch championship
Cht team championship
Wch world championship
Wcht world team championship
Ech European championship
Echt European team championship
Ct Candidates event
IZ interzonal
Z zonal
ECC European Clubs Cup
OL olympiad
jr junior event
tt team event
1-0 the game ends in a win for White
½-½ the game ends in a draw
0-1 the game ends in a win for Black
(n) nth match game
(D) see next diagram
Foreword by Veselin Topalov

This first volume of *The Ultimate Chess Strategy Book*, covering Closed Openings, is a practical book for every chess amateur who wants to improve his knowledge of chess strategy. This is, without a doubt, a key step in the improvement of the chess-player, in addition to training in calculating variations.

The approach of this work is original. It is not only a book with practical exercises. The authors introduce a critical position (there are 90 in this first volume) and they ask the reader how to continue the game by choosing one of several candidate moves. All them are very logical, so it is difficult to find the strongest move and there is a very strict scoring system. As a matter of fact, sometimes we see in the solutions that the protagonists of the model game didn’t find the best possible move. In the solutions, the authors explain the shortcomings of this and that choice and the suitability of the candidate move, besides providing extensive analysis, giving on some occasions supplementary material to the model game. Their idea is that the reader may systematize ideas and strategic solutions at the time he checks his knowledge.

The problems are classified according to opening and level of difficulty, in increasing order. Likewise, in the solutions, the authors make a classification according to the main strategic theme.

Because of the aforementioned reasons, I think this book is the right choice for chess-players of medium level, and in fact there are exercises that require a master level in order to solve them. The reader will not only exercise his understanding of chess, but will also learn in a quick and entertaining way. I would even say this is a good method of improvement for teachers and higher-level students.

**Alfonso Romero Holmes** is a grandmaster, member of the Spanish Team in the Chess Olympiads and has been involved in the fields of journalism and publishing for many years.

**Amador González de la Nava** is a FIDE Master, although his profession is teaching. He is a National and FIDE Trainer, Chief Executive at the ‘Technical Centre’ of Castile-Leon for the last 5 years and pretty soon he will be a FIDE Senior Trainer.

**Veselin Topalov**
FIDE World Champion 2005-6
Preface

The main focus in these strategy exercises is on the key themes, so that our readers will be able to employ them in their own games to good effect. The selection of the problems was not an easy job, as we wished to choose clear-cut and memorable examples that will entertain our readers and remain in their memory, ready for later use.

In each exercise we offer 2, 3 or 4 possible answers. One of them is the correct or ideal answer, while the others are logical or natural choices, but less effective for some reason and therefore receiving lower scores. However, the strength of the main move will sometimes be similar to the second best, which therefore also receives a very high score. We have tried to be realistic in these assessments, while also producing a competitive environment in which the reader will be rewarded for making the very best decision. In the solutions, we explain the reasons for the right choice, and classify the problem according to a particular strategic theme, so that the reader is acquiring experience across a wide range of strategic themes and in making decisions at critical moments. The solution always includes the complete model game, with the notes focusing particularly on those aspects that are relevant to the main themes under discussion. Many of the selected games feature the greatest strategists in the history of chess, making them especially instructive.

By examining how well he scores in exercises on particular themes and in particular openings, the reader will quickly see where the weaknesses lie in his game, and will thus know which areas need improvement in the future.

Finally, we should mention that the problems are sorted according to difficulty (in increasing order) in each opening. However, we do not reveal until the solution what the main theme of the exercise is; otherwise, this information would noticeably help the reader to find the best answer. We should also note that the classification by opening is not followed rigorously, as we wish to provide variety to readers working through the book sequentially – there are batches of exercises with a particular opening, but for the more major openings, there is more than one such batch.

We hope you enjoy this book and its innovative features, and find it a useful source of training material, both for teachers and pupils.
Test 1

Larsen – A. Nielsen

_Esbjerg 1953_

Symmetrical English [A31]

1. \( \square f3 \square f6 2. c4 c5 3. d4 cxd4 4. \square xd4 \square c6 5. \square c3 d6 6. g3 g6 7. \varepsilon g2 \varepsilon d7 8. \varepsilon c2 \varepsilon g7 9. b3 9. 0-0 0-0 10. \varepsilon d2 a6 11. \varepsilon c1 (if 11. \varepsilon b1 then 11...b5! with counterplay in return for the pawn) is the main alternative.

9...0-0 10. \varepsilon b2 a6 11. 0-0 \varepsilon b8?!

The beginning of a dubious plan. 11...\varepsilon a5 would have been better.

12. \varepsilon c1 b5?

As we are going to see, this move is a serious positional mistake. It was imperative to play 12...\varepsilon a5! 13. \varepsilon d5 \varepsilon xd5 14. \varepsilon xg7 \varepsilon e3! 15. \varepsilon xe3 \varepsilon xg7 16. \varepsilon c2 \varepsilon c8 with only a very small edge for White, Nemeth-Leko, Hungary 1994.

13. \varepsilon d5 \varepsilon xd5 14. \varepsilon xg7 \varepsilon xg7 15. cxd5 \varepsilon e5

Even though this e5-knight is going to be a source of concern for Black, 15...\varepsilon a5 does not solve Black’s problems either: 16. \varepsilon d4+ \varepsilon g8 17. \varepsilon b4! \varepsilon a8 18. \varepsilon c2 \varepsilon f5 19. \varepsilon c3 \varepsilon e8 20. \varepsilon fc1 \varepsilon b7 21. \varepsilon c6 \varepsilon d7 22. b4! with an overwhelming advantage for White, Stähling-Enevoldsen, Copenhagen 1960.

16. \varepsilon h3 \varepsilon b6 (D)

Test 2

Bisguier – Karpov

_Skopje OL 1972_

Symmetrical English [D94]

1. c4 c5 2. \varepsilon c3 g6 3. \varepsilon f3 \varepsilon g7 4. e3

4. d4 cxd4 5. \varepsilon xd4 \varepsilon c6 6. \varepsilon c2 \varepsilon xc3+! 7. bxc3 has also been played.

4...\varepsilon f6 5. d4 0-0 6. \varepsilon e2 cxd4 7. exd4 7. \varepsilon xd4 has been tested in some games.

7...d5 8. 0-0

8. \varepsilon g5?! is dubious due to 8...\varepsilon xc4 9. \varepsilon xc4 \varepsilon g4.

8...\varepsilon c6 9. h3 \varepsilon f5 10. \varepsilon e3 dxc4 11. \varepsilon xc4 \varepsilon c8 12. \varepsilon e2 \varepsilon e6 13. \varepsilon d2

13. \varepsilon g5 will be met by 13...\varepsilon d5 with a slight advantage for Black.

13...\varepsilon a5 (D)

Black’s dubious opening play has landed him in quite a delicate position. His main problem is the unsteadiness of the e5-knight, which would be immediately trapped if White could carry out the advance f4. White has several ways to try to take advantage of this.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 17. \varepsilon d4, offering the exchange of queens.

Option B: Play 17. \varepsilon d4, threatening to trap the knight by f4.

Option C: Play 17. \varepsilon h1, with the same idea as mentioned under Option B.

Here we see a typical Isolated Queen’s Pawn position. On this occasion, Black’s position is unmistakably sound, without any weakness and
with a good blockading square on d5; besides, he aims to play his king’s rook to d8 in order to put pressure on the isolated white pawn. White’s pieces are not active enough to compensate for this weakness.

**White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:**

**Option A:** 14 \( \mathbb{h}6 \), exchanging off Black’s fianchettoed bishop, thus weakening the castled position.

**Option B:** Play 14 a3, avoiding the blockading manoeuvre \( \mathbb{b}4-d5 \), as well as threatening to play b4.

**Option C:** Play 14 \( \mathbb{fd}1 \), strengthening the position.

---

**Test 3**

*Karpov – Schawecker*

*Bath Echt 1973*

Symmetrical English [A33]

1 \( \mathbb{f}3 \) \( \mathbb{f}6 \) 2 c4 c5 3 \( \mathbb{c}3 \) e6 4 g3 \( \mathbb{c}6 \)

4...\( b6 \) is another possibility.

5 \( \mathbb{g}2 \) d6

Black can also play 5...\( \mathbb{e}7 \) 6 0-0 0-0 7 d4 cxd4 8 \( \mathbb{xd}4 \), with a slight advantage for White; or 5...d5, with a transposition to the Tarrasch Defence.

6 0-0 \( \mathbb{d}7 \) 7 d4 cxd4 8 \( \mathbb{xd}4 \) a6 9 b3 \( \mathbb{e}7 \)

\((D)\)

---

**Test 4**

*Timman – Karpov*

*Montreal 1979*

English Opening, Four Knights [A28]

1 c4 e5 2 \( \mathbb{c}3 \) \( \mathbb{f}6 \) 3 \( \mathbb{f}3 \) \( \mathbb{c}6 \) 4 e3

4 g3 is the more usual move.

4...\( \mathbb{e}7 \)

The alternative is 4...\( b4 \).

5 d4

5 \( \mathbb{c}2 \) 0-0 6 0-0 d5 7 cxd5 \( \mathbb{xd}5 \) 8 d3, getting a Sicilian Defence with reversed colours, is a better option for White.

5...exd4 6 \( \mathbb{xd}4 \) 0-0 7 \( \mathbb{e}2 \) d5 8 \( \mathbb{xc}6 \) bxc6 9 0-0 \( \mathbb{d}6 \) 10 b3 \( \mathbb{e}7 \) 11 \( \mathbb{b}2 \) \((D)\)

\( W \)

\( B \)

---

Here we have a typical Symmetrical English position, where White has a spatial advantage.

This is a theoretical variation of the English. White has a slightly better pawn-formation.
Black, in turn, has his pieces actively placed, with several ways of neutralizing White’s pressure on d5.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities to deal with the pressure against d5:

Option A: Protect the centre by 11...\textit{c}6.
Option B: Hold the central pawn indirectly, by playing 11...\textit{d}8.
Option C: Capture on c4, sacrificing the pawn-formation but getting active play for the black pieces in return.

Test 5

**Karpov – Korchnoi**

*Brussels 1988*

Symmetrical English [A33]

1 \textit{e}f3 \textit{g}f6 2 \textit{c}4 \textit{c}5 3 \textit{c}3 \textit{c}6 4 \textit{d}4 \textit{c}xd4 5 \textit{c}xd4 \textit{e}6 6 \textit{g}3 \textit{w}b6

6...\textit{c}5 and 6...\textit{b}4 have been played quite regularly too.

7 \textit{w}b3

7 \textit{d}b5 was met by the interesting novelty 7...\textit{a}6! in the game Gelfand-Topalov, Dortmund 2002.

7...d5 8 \textit{x}d5 \textit{c}xd5 9 \textit{x}d5 \textit{e}xd5 10 \textit{g}2 \textit{e}6

10...\textit{b}4+ 11 \textit{d}2 a5 is more usual.

11 0-0

Taking on d5 by 11 \textit{c}xd5? is inappropriate on account of 11...\textit{b}4+ 12 \textit{f}1 \textit{d}8.

11...\textit{d}8 12 \textit{g}5! \textit{f}6 (D)

A good example of a \textit{zwischenzug}: White had to decide between three possible squares for the dark-squared bishop – see below – but first he moved the bishop to g5, provoking a weakening on Black’s kingside. This is the sort of subtlety capable of changing the evaluation of a position.

White to play. Choose one of the following retreats for the bishop:

Option A: 13 \textit{c}3, in order to help the blockade of the isolated queen’s pawn.

Option B: 13 \textit{d}2 with the idea of \textit{c}3, with the same idea of blockading the d-pawn.

Option C: Drop the bishop back to the active h2-b8 diagonal.

Test 6

**Korchnoi – Karpov**

*Moscow 1971*

Symmetrical English [D73]

1 \textit{c}4 \textit{c}5 2 \textit{f}3 \textit{f}6 3 \textit{g}3 \textit{d}5 4 \textit{c}xd5 \textit{c}xd5 5 \textit{g}2 \textit{g}6?!

A dubious move that causes Black many problems. 5...\textit{c}6 is the normal move.

6 \textit{d}4! \textit{g}7 7 \textit{e}4 \textit{c}7 8 \textit{d}5 \textit{b}5 9 0-0 0-0

9...\textit{g}4?! deserves attention.

10 \textit{w}c2 \textit{a}6 11 \textit{f}4 \textit{g}4 12 \textit{bd}2 \textit{d}4

12...\textit{c}8 would be met by 13 \textit{w}b3.

13 \textit{d}c4 \textit{c}xd4 14 \textit{f}3! \textit{w}b6 (D)

After a dubious opening on the part of Black, the resulting position clearly favours White. It
is quite obvious that a knight jump to e5 fits within White’s plans. This knight could then move to d3, blockading the black d-pawn. But a question then arises: should White make this move at once, without delay, or would it be convenient to make some preparations?

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 15 \( \text{Qe5} \).

Option B: Play 15 \( \text{Qe5} \) at once.

Test 7

Pfleger – Karpov
Montilla 1976
Symmetrical English [A30]

1 \( \text{c4 Qf6} \) 2 \( \text{Qc3 e6} \) 3 \( \text{Qf3 c5} \) 4 \( \text{g3 b6} \)

Here many players prefer 4...d5, reaching a Tarrasch or Semi-Tarrasch.

5 \( \text{Qg2 Qb7} \) 6 0-0 a6 7 b3 d6

Black is playing a sort of Hedgehog system.

8 \( \text{Qb2 Qe7} \) 9 d4 cxd4 10 \( \text{Qxd4} \)

White usually recaptures with the queen.

10...\( \text{Qxg2} \) 11 \( \text{Qxg2 0-0} \) (D)

This is a typical Symmetrical English position. White enjoys a spatial advantage, which would be more tangible after the advance e4. However, Black has a very sound position, without weaknesses, and a good control of the central squares. And White should always have in mind Black’s potential breaks at b5 and d5.

White to play. Choose one of the following plans:

Option A: Play 12 e4, getting a safe spatial advantage very typical of this sort of structures.

Option B: Play 12 \( \text{Qd3} \), preparing the advance e4.

Option C: Play 12 \( \text{Qd3} \) with the idea of moving the queen to f3, trying to take advantage of the weakening of c6.

Test 8

Adams – Karpov
Las Palmas 1994
Trompowsky Attack [A45]

1 d4 \( \text{Qf6} \) 2 \( \text{Qg5} \) e6 3 e4 h6 4 \( \text{Qxf6} \) \( \text{Qxf6} \) 5 \( \text{Qc3} \) d6 6 \( \text{Qd2} \) 7 0-0-0

7...\( \text{Qc4} \)? intending 8 \( \text{Qe2} \) gained popularity thanks to Yusupov’s efforts – he was Anand’s second in 1998. White is planning to castle kingside, followed by the advance f4. Anand-Karpov, Lausanne FIDE Wch (8) 1998 was very interesting: 7...\( \text{Qc6} \) 8 \( \text{Qge2} \) \( \text{Qg7} \) 9 \( \text{Qd1} \) \( \text{Qd7} \) 10 0-0 0-0 0-0 (10...0-0 11 \( \text{Qe3} \) intending f4) 11 \( \text{Qb5}! \) (11 b4 g4 12 b5 \( \text{Qa5} \) 13 \( \text{Qd3} \) h5) 11...a6 12 \( \text{Qa3} \) (intending c3 and b4) 12...g4! 13 f4 (13 b4! \( \text{Qg5}! \)) 13...\( \text{Qxf3} \) 14 \( \text{Qxf3} \) \( \text{Qe7} \) 15 \( \text{c3} \) h5 16 \( \text{Qdf1} \) \( \text{Qdf8} \) 17 b4 \( \text{Qa7} \) 18 \( \text{Qc2} \) \( \text{Qh6} \) 19 \( \text{Qe1} \) \( \text{Qb8} \) 20 \( \text{Qd3} \) \( \text{Qc6}! \) (Black has counterplay thanks to the bishop-pair and the open g-file) 21 \( \text{Qf4} \) \( \text{Qf8} \) (21...e5 22 \( \text{Qxh5}! \) 22 d5 (22 \( \text{Qxh5} \! f5!) 22...\( \text{Qe8} \) (22...\( \text{Qxf4} \) 23 \( \text{Qd6} \) [23 \( \text{Qxf4} \! \text{exd5} \) 24 \( \text{Qxf7} \) \( \text{Qg5} \! \text{f5} \) 23...e5 24 \( \text{Qxb7} \! \text{Qf5} \) 23 \( \text{Qxf2} \) (23 \( \text{Qxb7} \! \text{Qg5} \) 24 \( \text{Qg3} \! \text{Qh4} \) with compensation) 23...\( \text{Qg7} \) (23...h4?!?) 24 \( \text{Qd4} \) \( \text{Qd7} \) 25 \( \text{Qxe6} \! \text{Qxe4} \) 26 \( \text{Qxd4} \) \( \text{fxe6} \) 27 e5 \( \text{Qc6} \) 28 \( \text{Qg6} \) (28 \( \text{Qg3} \) h4) and instead of the disastrous 28...\( \text{Qd8} \?? \) 29 \( \text{Qxb8} \! \pm \) Black should have played 28...\( \text{Qxg6} \) 29 \( \text{Qxg6} \) (29 \( \text{Qf8} \?? \! \text{Qc8} \! \text{h4}!) \! \text{+} \! \text{f4} \! \text{xf3} \) 30 \( \text{Qxf3} \! \text{dxe5} \) 31 \( \text{Qxe5} \! \text{c6} \) (31...\( \text{Qxb4} \) 32 \( \text{Qf6} \) is unclear) 32 \( \text{Qf6} \) with unclear play.

7...\( \text{Qg7} \) 8 e5

8 g3! \( \text{Qc6} \) 9 \( \text{Qb5} \! \text{d8} \) 10 c3! is another interesting possibility.

8...\( \text{dxe5} \) 9 \( \text{dxe5} \) \( \text{Qe7} \) 10 f4 \( \text{Qc6} \) 11 \( \text{Qf3} \) \( \text{d7} \)

12 h4 \( \text{Qxf4} \) 13 \( \text{Qxf4} \) 0-0-0 14 \( \text{Qe4} \) (D)
Here we see some typical issues in the 2...e6 line of the Trompowsky. White controls more space, has active piece-play and some initiative. On the other hand, Black possesses the bishop-pair. The outcome of the game will depend on whether White is able to turn his initiative and spatial advantage to account (for instance, by winning some material), or if Black is going to neutralize the opponent’s initiative and activate his bishops.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

**Option A**: Prepare the pawn-break ...f6 with 14...\(\mathbb{h}f8\).

**Option B**: Regroup with 14...\(\mathbb{b}b8\) followed by ...\(\mathbb{c}c6\) and ...\(\mathbb{d}d7\).

**Option C**: Transfer the knight to d5 by means of 14...\(\mathbb{f}b4\).

---

**Test 9**

**Taimanov – Karpov**

**USSR 1973**

Nimzo-Indian Defence, Rubinstein System [E54]

1 d4 \(\mathbb{d}f6\) 2 c4 e6 3 \(\mathbb{c}c3\) \(\mathbb{b}b4\) 4 e3

We have now the Rubinstein System, one of the most popular weapons against the Nimzo-Indian Defence.

1...c5 5 d3 0-0 6 \(\mathbb{f}f3\) d5 7 0-0 dxc4 8 \(\mathbb{e}c4\) \(\mathbb{x}d4\) 9 \(\mathbb{x}d4\) b6 10 \(\mathbb{w}e2\) (D)

The main line is 10 \(\mathbb{g}g5\) \(\mathbb{b}b7\) 11 \(\mathbb{e}e1\) \(\mathbb{b}d7\) 12 \(\mathbb{c}c1\) \(\mathbb{c}c8\) 13 \(\mathbb{d}d3\) \(\mathbb{xc}3\) 14 bxc3.

10...\(\mathbb{b}b7\) 11 \(\mathbb{d}d1\) \(\mathbb{b}d7\) 12 \(\mathbb{d}d2\) \(\mathbb{c}c8\) 13 \(\mathbb{a}a6?!\)

This move is harmless for Black; better is 13 \(\mathbb{d}d3\) \(\mathbb{xc}3\) 14 bxc3 \(\mathbb{c}c7\) 15 \(\mathbb{a}a1\) \(\mathbb{a}a8\) 16 \(\mathbb{f}f6\) \(\mathbb{d}d6\) 17 h3 (17 \(\mathbb{e}e5?!\)) 17...\(\mathbb{h}h6\) 18 \(\mathbb{h}h1\) \(\mathbb{d}d5\) 19 c4 \(\mathbb{w}h5\) with a more or less level game, Scheeren-Ribli, Wijk aan Zee 1983.

13...\(\mathbb{x}a6\) 14 \(\mathbb{w}xa6\) \(\mathbb{c}c3\) 15 bxc3 \(\mathbb{c}c7\) 16 \(\mathbb{a}a1\) \(\mathbb{c}c8\) 17 \(\mathbb{w}a4\) (D)

---

This is a very typical pawn-structure which can be reached via many openings: the Nimzo-Indian Defence (as in this case), the Semi-Tarrasch Defence, the Panov Attack in the Caro-Kann, etc. As normal, White has some activity to compensate for the weakening of the pawn-structure; however, here we have a quite simplified position, so the dynamic chances offered by this pawn-formation are diminished.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:
Option A: Play 17...wb7 followed by ...fc8, with pressure against the hanging pawns.
Option B: Play actively, sacrificing a pawn but preventing the advance c4, by means of 17...e4.
Option C: Press by 17...e4.

Test 10

Hostalet – Karpov
Groningen U-18 1967/8
Nimzo-Indian Defence,
Rubinstein System [E38]

1 d4 c5 2 e4 e6 3 d4 d5 4 c4 cxd5 5 exd5 c6 6 0-0 0-0 7 e3 Nf6 8 f4 d6
Better is 8 dxe5 Ne4 9 Ne2 Nf5+ with an approximately equal game.
8...exd4 9 exd4 d5 10 Ne2 dxc4 11 Ne6	(D)

An Isolated Queen’s Pawn position again. Now we have a different problem: should Black play this position in a standard way, or, on the contrary, should he aim to take advantage of the fact that White’s king is still in the centre of the board? In case of adopting the first plan, Black should choose among several logical possibilities in order to face this kind of battle, and if the second plan is to be preferred, he should open the position quickly.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Complete Black’s development with 11...b5 followed by ...e7.
Option B: Play 11...d6 first, assisting in the blockade of White’s isolated d-pawn, and then follow with ...b6 and ...e6.
Option C: Blockade the white pawn at once with 11...d5.
Option D: Open the position by playing 11...c5, attempting to use the lead in development.

Test 11

Lautier – Karpov
Linares 1995
Nimzo-Indian Defence,
Capablanca Variation [E32]

1 d4 c5 2 e4 e6 3 d4 d5 4 c4 cxd5 5 exd5 Nf6 6 c3 Bb4+ 7 cxb4 c5 8 a3
Better is 8 dxc5 Ne4 9 Ne2 Nf5+ with an approximately equal game.
8...exd4 9 exd4 d5 10 Ne2 dxc4 11 Ne6	(D)

12 Ne4 exd4 13 exd4 exd4 14 exd4 d5 15 c5
White has played 15 0-0 too.
15...a8 16 a6 Nc7 (D)

Besides the usual strategic elements of the Nimzo-Indian, we have a very special feature:
the exposed position of the rook at c7. The question is how White should take advantage of this fact.

White to play. Choose one the following possibilities:

Option A: Take on b6 followed by 0-0 or else \( \text{g}g3 \).

Option B: Take advantage of the bad placing of the black rook at c7, playing \( \text{g}g3 \) at once.

Test 12

Kamsky – Karpov
Elista FIDE Wch (14) 1996
Nimzo-Indian Defence,
Rubinstein System [E48]

1 d4 \( \text{f}6 \) 2 c4 e6 3 \( \text{c}c3 \) \( \text{b}4 \) 4 e3 c5 5 \( \text{d}d3 \) \( \text{c}c6 \) 6 \( \text{e}e2 \)

Another possibility is 6 \( \text{f}3 \), allowing Black to play the Hübner Variation after 6...\( \text{x}c3+ \) 7 bxc3 d6 8 0-0 e5.

6...\( \text{xd}4 \) 7 \( \text{xd}4 \) d5 8 \( \text{cxd}5 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) 9 0-0 \( \text{d}6 \)

The alternatives 9...0-0 and 9...\( \text{f}6 \) deserve attention.

10 \( \text{e}e4 \) \( \text{e}7 \) 11 a3 0-0 12 \( \text{c}c2 \) \( \text{c}7 \) 13 \( \text{d}d3 \) \( \text{d}d8 \) 14 \( \text{g}5 \) g6 15 \( \text{b}3 \)

15...\( \text{f}6 \) has been played in this position too.

15...\( \text{f}6 \) 16 \( \text{d}1 \) \( \text{f}8 \)

Transferring the bishop to \text{g7} – where it will press on \text{d}4 – while also strengthening Black’s castled position.

17 \( \text{f}4 \) (D)

We have the customary issues in positions with an Isolated Queen’s Pawn. White enjoys a spatial advantage, the initiative and active play for his pieces, in return for the weakness represented by the IQP. There seem to be some threats against Black’s slightly weakened castled position. However, with precise play Black is able to neutralize the danger.

Black to play. The queen is attacked. Choose one of the following:

Option A: 17...\( \text{a}5 \).
Option B: 17...\( \text{e}7 \).
Option C: 17...\( \text{b}6 \).

Test 13

Botvinnik – Tal
Moscow Wch (18) 1960
Nimzo-Indian Defence,
Sämisc Variation [E24]

1 d4 \( \text{f}6 \) 2 c4 e6 3 \( \text{c}c3 \) \( \text{b}4 \) 4 a3 \( \text{x}c3+ \) 5 bxc3 \( \text{e}4!? \)

The text-move is interesting, although 5...c5 is the customary move.

6 \( \text{c}2 \)

Botvinnik’s idea 6 e3 f5 7 \( \text{h}5+ \)! deserves attention.

6...f5 7 \( \text{h}3 \) 0-0 8 f3 \( \text{f}6 \) 9 c5 b6 10 cxb6 (D)

A typical position of the Nimzo-Indian Defence. White has a better position in the centre and the theoretical advantage of the bishop-pair.
On the other hand, Black possesses some dynamic features thanks to his lead in development and queenside counterplay.

Black to play. White has just taken on b6. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Take with the c7-pawn, opening the c-file.

Option B: Take with the a7-pawn, activating the rook at once and moving pawns towards the centre.

**Test 14**

**Portisch – Karpov**

*Bugojno 1978*

Nimzo-Indian Defence, Rubinstein System [E54]

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♘b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♘d3 c5 6 ♘f3 d5 7 0-0 dxc4 8 ♘xc4 exd4 9 exd4 b6 10 ♘g5 ♘b7 11 ♘e1

Both 11 ♘e5 and 11 ♘e2 are two commonly played moves in this position.

11...♘bd7 12 ♘e1 ♘e8 (D)

A typical position in this line of the Nimzo-Indian Defence. We see that White has hanging pawns and the bishop-pair. As with the isolated queen’s pawn, these pawns represent a weakness, but one offering some compensation by controlling more ground and allowing piece activity. Black’s possibilities, as we are going to see, are no worse than White’s.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Press on the hanging pawns by means of 17...♘d6.

Option B: Seek to exchange pieces, reducing White’s chances, by 17...♗g4.

Option C: Take on f3 followed immediately by the break on e5.

**Test 15**

**Zsinka – Tolnai**

*Hungary 1988*

Nimzo-Indian Defence, Rubinstein System [E58]

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♘b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♘d3 d5 6 ♘f3 c5 7 0-0 ♘c6 8 a3 ♘xc3 9 bxc3 ♘e7

The main line is 9...dxc4 10 ♘xc4 ♘c7, followed by ...c5.

10 cxd5 exd5 11 ♘h4 ♘e7 12 g3

After 12 ♘a2 ♘g6 13 ♘xg6 hxg6 14 f3 ♘e5 Black gets a good game. 12 a4 and 12 ♘b2 have also been played.

12...h3 13 ♘e1 ♘g6 14 ♘g2 ♘d7 15 f3 (D)
Here we have a typical pawn-structure of the Nimzo-Indian Defence. White has a mobile centre. Among various plans available for Black in this type of position, we shall focus on that of preventing the central advance by accumulating forces on e4, lessening the effects of such an advance through exchanges, while seeking counterplay on the queenside along the c-file.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

**Option A:** Play 15...\( \text{c5} \), and then capture on d4 at once, beginning counterplay along the c-file.

**Option B:** Take on d4, followed by ...\( \text{c5} \), starting counterplay along the c-file.

**Option C:** Play 15...\( \text{c5} \) followed immediately by ...h5, strengthening the position of the bishop.

**Test 16**

A.H. Williams – Karpov

*Nice OL 1974*

Nimzo-Indian Defence,
Leningrad Variation [E31]

1 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{df6} \) 2 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{e6} \) 3 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{b4} \) 4 \( \text{g5} \) \( \text{h6} \) 5 \( \text{h4} \) \( \text{c5} \) 6 \( \text{d5} \) \( \text{d6} \) 7 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{xc3}+ \) 8 \( \text{bxc3} \) \( \text{e5} \) 9 \( \text{d3} \)

9 \( \text{f3} \) is the main alternative.

9...\( \text{e4}?! \) 10 \( \text{c2} \)

Obviously not 10 \( \text{xe4}?! \) on account of 10...\( \text{g5} \) winning a piece.

10...\( \text{g5} \) *(D)*

10...\( \text{bd7} \) has been played too.

11 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 12 \( \text{h4} \) \( \text{g8} \) 13 \( \text{hxg5} \) \( \text{hxg5} \) 14 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{bd7} \) 15 \( \text{b1} \) \( \text{d8} \) 16 \( \text{a4} \) \( \text{a5} \) 17 \( \text{a2} \) \( \text{c7} \)

*We have before us a sharp position of the Leningrad Variation in the Nimzo-Indian Defence. Here White possesses the bishop-pair (attacking e4 and d6, with an annoying indirect influence of the dark-squared bishop against the black king), and some pressure on the queenside via the b-file. In return for this, Black's pawn-structure is much better, and if he consolidates the position, neutralizing White's threats, he would secure a strategically winning position. We are faced by another interesting discussion, with a fight between dynamic features for one side, and static elements for the other.*

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:
Option A: Play 18 h6, operating on the h-file and restricting the f6-knight due to the pressure on d6.

Option B: Play 18 b2 with pressure on the b-file.

Option C: Play 18 b5 with pressure on the queenside.

Test 17

Marin – Ki. Georgiev
Warsaw Z 1987
Nimzo-Indian Defence,
Rubinstein System [E42]

1 d4 f6 2 c4 e6 3 Qc3 b4 4 e3 c5 5 Qe2
The main alternative is 5 Qd3.
5...exd4 6 exd4 0-0 7 a3 Qe7 8 g3
8 d5 has been played very often.
8...d5 9 c5 b6 10 b4 a5 11 Qb1 axb4
11...bxc5 deserves attention: 12 dxc5 Qc6
13 Qg2 Qb8! (without exchanging on b4 since the exchange allows Qa3), as shown in the game Salov-M. Gurevich, Leningrad 1987. The game is given in the solution to this exercise.
12 axb4 bxc5 13 dxc5 Qc6 (D)

A very appealing position. On one hand, White has two united passed pawns on the queenside, and on the other hand, Black has the advantage in the centre, with his mobile d- and e-pawns. The side achieving a successful blockade of the opponent’s pawns, and able to push his own passed pawns should win the game.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 18 Qc1 with the idea of transferring the bishop from a3 to f4. There it will prove to be more active, disturbing Black’s blockading forces, and inviting Black to advance his central pawns. In this way, White thinks he will be able to blockade those pawns more easily, so getting important squares for his own pieces.

Option B: Play 18 Qd4, attacking the blockading squares of White’s passed pawns.

Option C: Play 18 Qd3, threatening b5.

Test 18

Karpov – Nikolić
Skellefteå 1989
Bogo-Indian Defence [E11]

1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 e6 3 Qf3 Qb4+
This defence is a popular choice of many Nimzo-Indian supporters when White plays 3
\( \text{f3}, \) although in recent decades it has for the most part been eclipsed by the development of the Queen's Indian Defence.

4 \( \text{d2} \)

4 \( \text{bd2} \) is the other possibility, while 4 \( \text{c3} \) would transpose to the Nimzo-Indian Defence.

4...\( \text{e7} \)

4...\( \text{a5}, 4...\text{c5} \) and 4...\( \text{xd2+} \) are the main alternatives.

5 \( \text{g3} \) 0-0 6 \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{xd2+} \) 7 \( \text{xd2} \) (D)

7 \( \text{bxd2} \) has been played too, even though the knight is more passively placed here than on \( \text{c3} \), and for this reason we prefer to take with the queen.

Test 19

Karpov – Andersson

Madrid 1973

Queen's/Bogo-Indian [E16]

1 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{f6} \) 2 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{e6} \) 3 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{b6} \) 4 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{b4+} \) 5

\( \text{bd2} \) 6 \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{0-0} \)

6...\( \text{c5?!} \) is an interesting choice.

7 \( \text{0-0} \) \( \text{c5?!} \)

Better is 7...\( \text{d5} \) 8 \( \text{e5} \), as played in more recent games.

8 \( \text{a3} \) \( \text{xd2} \) (D)

In this position White has a great advantage in space, while Black, despite having a sound position without weaknesses, lacks any effective counterplay.

White to play. Choose one the following possibilities:

**Option A:** Play 17 \( \text{f4} \) at once, choosing the set-up depending on the opponent's plan.

**Option B:** Play 17 \( \text{wd1} \) first, controlling \( \text{g4} \), being then able to play \( \text{xe3} \) followed by \( \text{e1} \) – strengthening the centre – and advance with \( \text{f4} \) later.

White will have the advantage of the bishop-pair. In return for this, Black has good control of the \( \text{e4} \)-square. However, as the game will prove, the move 7...\( \text{c5} \) does not give Black enough chances to level the game.

White to play. He is facing a difficult decision: should he take on \( \text{d2} \) with the bishop or with the queen? Choose one of these three possibilities:
Option A: Take on d2 with the bishop.
Option B: Take on d2 with the queen.
Option C: There is no difference in taking with one piece or the other, since in both cases White gets an advantageous position.

Test 20

Karpov – A. Sokolov
Linares Ct (10) 1987
Queen’s Indian Defence,
4 g3 d6 [E15]
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 f3 b6 4 g3 a6 5 b3
b4 6 d2 e7 7 c3 0-0 8 e4
8 g2 is the alternative.
8...dxe5 9 cxd5 fxe5 10 fxe5 exd5 11 e5 de4
Without a doubt, this is better than the move
11...e8, which was formerly played.
12 e2 dxe3 13 dxe3 d7 14 g2 d6
(D)

With the last move, Black wants to transfer
the knight to e6 by way of d8. From there, the
knight will help in blockading the white pawns,
as well as supporting the advance ...c5. At the
same time, it will exert some influence on the
kingside.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Move the rook from a1 to c1 and
the other to d1, with the idea of exerting
pressure on the c-file, as well as against the future
hanging pawns after Black plays ...c5.

Option B: Play 15 h1 with the idea of
g1, followed by pushing the f-pawn.

Option C: Play 15 h1 in order to double
rooks on the d-file with d3 and d1, prevent-
ing Black’s counterplay with ...c5.

Option D: Play 15 h4 threatening to meet
...d8 with the knight jump to g5, followed by
h5 or d3 launching an attack against the
black king.

Test 21

Keres – Flohr
Semmering/Baden 1937
Grünfeld Defence, Fianchetto Variation [D75]
1 d4 f6 2 c4 g6 3 f3 f3 g7 4 g3 c6
4...d5 (Grünfeld Defence) and 4...d6 (King’s
Indian) are major alternatives.
5 g2 d5 6 cxd5 cxd5?! A better possibility is 6...cxd5.
7 0-0 0-0 8 d3 d3 9 bxc3 c5 10 a3
cxd4
(D)

After a rather imprecise opening on Black’s
part, we have reached an interesting position.

Black has just taken on d4, and the question
is: with what piece should White capture on
d4? Pawn or knight?

Option A: With the pawn, getting a central
pawn-majority.

Option B: With the knight, hindering Black’s
development and exerting pressure along the
long diagonal.
Test 22

Karpov – Hübner

Tilburg 1980
Grünfeld Defence, Exchange Variation [D85]

1 d4 ﬀf6 2 c4 g6 3 _kwargs c3 d5 4 cxd5 ﬀxd5 5 e4 ﬀxc3 6 bxc3 ﬀg7 7 ﬀf3 c5 8 ﬄc3 ﬄa5 (D)
8...0-0, 8...ﬀg4 and 8...ﬄc6 are also playable moves.

Test 23

Karpov – Kasparov

London/Leningrad Wch (5) 1986
Grünfeld Defence, 4 ﬄf4 [D82]

1 d4 ﬄf6 2 c4 g6 3 _kwargs c3 d5 4 ﬄf4

There is no doubt that 4 cxd5 ﬄxd5 5 e4 is the most common line, but White has also played both 4 ﬄf3 ﬄg7 5 ﬄb3 and 4 ﬄg5 on a regular basis.

4...ﬄg7 5 e3 c5 6 dxc5 ﬄa5 7 ﬄc1 ﬄf4
7...dxc4 8 ﬄxc4 0-0 9 ﬄf3 ﬄxc5 is a possibility.

8 cxd5 ﬄxc3 9 ﬄd2 ﬄxa2 10 bxc3 ﬄxd2+

Interesting is 10...ﬄa5?? 11 ﬄc4 ﬄd7 12
ﬄe2 ﬄxc5 13 0-0 0-0 14 ﬄf3 e5! 15 ﬄg3 b5 16
ﬄa2 ﬄb6 17 ﬄh1 a5 with good counterplay for Black.

11 ﬄxd2 ﬄd7 12 ﬄb5 0-0 13 ﬄxd7 ﬄxd7
14 e4 f5 15 e5 e6 16 c4 ﬄc8 17 c6! bxc6 18 d6
19 h4 h6 (D)
The white pawns at e5 and d6 are imprisoning the black g7-bishop, excluding it from playing an active role in the game. The question is whether White can maintain this situation, and therefore, which development of the knight is best suited to this aim.

White to play. Please consider the following knight moves. Which is the correct one?

**Option A:** 20 \( \text{h}2 \).
**Option B:** 20 \( \text{h}3 \).
**Option C:** 20 \( \text{f}3 \).

---

**Test 24**

Karpov – Kamsky  
*Moscow 1992*  
Grüinfeld Defence, Fianchetto Variation [D79]

1 \( d4 \text{f}6 \) 2 \( c4 \text{g}6 \) 3 \( \text{f}3 \text{g}7 \) 4 \( g3 \text{c}6 \)  
This move-order avoids the sharpest lines, and the game takes on a positional character.  
5 \( \text{g}2 \text{d}5 \) 6 \( \text{cx}d5 \text{c}xd5 \) 7 \( \text{c}3 \text{c}0-0 \) 8 \( \text{e}5 \text{e}6 \) 9 0-0  
9 \( \text{g}5 \) has been played in many games too.  
9...\( \text{f}d7 \) 10 \( \text{f}4 \text{c}6 \) 11 \( \text{e}3 \text{b}6 \)  
Black has also played 11...\( \text{f}6 \).  
12 \( \text{f}2 \) 13 \( \text{d}7 \) 14 \( \text{c}e7 \) 15 \( \text{c}d7 \text{e}7 \) 15  
16 \( \text{c}1 \text{a}6 \) 17 \( \text{b}3! ? \) \( \text{c}7 \) 18 \( \text{f}d2 \text{f}c8 \) 19 \( \text{g}4 \text{f}8 \) (D)

**Test 25**

Karpov – Kasparov  
*London/Leningrad Wch (15) 1986*  
Grüinfeld Defence, Russian System [D98]

1 \( d4 \text{f}6 \) 2 \( c4 \text{g}6 \) 3 \( \text{c}c3 \text{d}5 \) 4 \( \text{f}3 \text{g}7 \) 5  
\( \text{b}3 \text{dxc}4 \) 6 \( \text{xc}4 \text{b}0-0 \) 7 \( \text{e}4 \text{g}4 \)  
Prins’s idea 7...\( \text{a}6 \) is also popular.  
8 \( \text{e}3 \text{f}d7 \) 9 \( \text{d}1 \text{c}6 \) 10 \( \text{e}2 \text{b}6 \) 11 \( \text{e}5 \text{d}6 \) (D)

![Diagram](image)

12 \( \text{e}5 ! \)  
Of course, there are other moves in this position, but none of them causes Black problems, as it has been shown in master practice. The
text-move is the only one which poses difficult problems to Black.

12...\( \mathcal{W} \mathcal{x}c5 \) 13 \( dxc5 \) \( \mathcal{Q}c8 \) 14 \( \mathcal{Q}b5 \) (D)

The best move is 14 h3, as Karpov himself proved in a later game of the same title match.

This move is, without a doubt, stronger than 13 h4, which has been played frequently too.

13...f6 14 gxf6 \( \mathcal{W}xf6 \)

Better is 14...\( \mathcal{W}xf6 \).

15 0-0-0 \( \mathcal{A}f7 \) 16 \( \mathcal{A}b1 \) b5 17 \( \mathcal{C}c1 \) \( \mathcal{D}f8 \) 18 \( \mathcal{A}e2 \) \( \mathcal{D}d7 \) 19 a3 \( \mathcal{D}d8 \) (D)

This position arose in the first game with the novelty 12 e5, introduced by Karpov in the 1986 return match for the world championship. However, the knight’s jump to b5 is not the strongest continuation, since Black is able to solve all his difficulties with correct play.

\textit{Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:}

\textbf{Option A}: Take with the knight on e5.

\textbf{Option B}: Take on f3 and then with the bishop on e5.

\textbf{Option C}: Move the rook to b8, answering the knight’s capture on c7 with ...e6, threatening to trap the knight after ...a6.

\textbf{Option D}: Move the rook to b8, and reply to \( \mathcal{D}xc7 \) with ...\( \mathcal{D}xf3 \), then capturing on e5 with the bishop (so attacking the white c7-knight).

\textbf{White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:}

\textbf{Option A}: Play 20 b4 with the idea of \( \mathcal{D}b3-a5 \).

\textbf{Option B}: Play 20 \( \mathcal{D}1a2 \) with the idea of \( \mathcal{D}b4-c6 \).

\textbf{Option C}: Play 20 \( \mathcal{D}b3 \) with the idea of \( \mathcal{D}a2 \) and \( \mathcal{D}a5 \).

\textbf{Test 26}

\textbf{Karpov – Dolmatov}

\textit{Dortmund 1993}

King’s Indian Defence,
Sämisch Variation [E89]

1 \( d4 \) \( \mathcal{D}f6 \) 2 c4 g6 3 \( \mathcal{D}c3 \) \( \mathcal{g}7 \) 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0

6 \( \mathcal{A}c3 \) e5 7 \( \mathcal{G}ge2 \) c6 8 \( \mathcal{D}d2 \) \( \mathcal{D}bd7 \) 9 d5 cxd5 10 cxd5 a6 11 g4 h5 12 g5 \( \mathcal{D}h7 \) 13 \( \mathcal{G}g1 \)!

\textbf{Test 27}

\textbf{Petrosian – Gligorić}

\textit{Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade Ct 1959}

King’s Indian Defence,
Petrosian System [E93]

1 \( d4 \) \( \mathcal{D}f6 \) 2 c4 g6 3 \( \mathcal{D}c3 \) \( \mathcal{g}7 \) 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0

6 \( \mathcal{A}e2 \) e5 7 d5 \( \mathcal{D}bd7 \)
Modern practice prefers 7...a5 followed by ...
...\text{\textipa{a}6.}

\textbf{8 \textit{\textipa{g}5}}

White plays the Petrosian System, whose main goal is to hinder Black’s counterplay based on ...f5.

\textbf{8...h6 9 \textit{\textipa{h}4 a6}}

With this move Black prevents a possible jump of a knight to b5, which means he can unpin with ...\textit{\textipa{e}8}, and then accomplish the thematic counterplay with ...f5. However, this method proved too slow and allows White a good position. The main alternative is 9...g5!; e.g., 10 \textit{\textipa{g}3 \textit{\textipa{h}5} 11 h4 g4 12 \textit{\textipa{d}2 f5!?} with unclear play.

\textbf{10 \textit{\textipa{d}2 \textit{\textipa{e}8} 11 0-0 \textit{\textipa{h}7} 12 b4 \textit{\textipa{g}5}}}

Not 12...f5? 13 exf5 gxf5 (13...\textit{\textipa{x}f5}) 14 \textit{\textipa{h}5! \pm Petrosian.}

\textbf{13 \textit{\textipa{c}1 f5 14 f3 \textit{\textipa{e}7} 15 \textit{\textipa{h}1!}}}

15 \textit{\textipa{f}2} had been played earlier by Tal against Fischer.

\textbf{15...\textit{\textipa{f}6} 16 c5 \textit{\textipa{h}5} (D)}

16...dxc5? 17 bxc5 \textit{\textipa{x}c5} 18 \textit{\textipa{b}5} is much better for White.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

A typical position in the King’s Indian Defence. White puts all his hopes on the queenside, and Black on the opposite flank. White must choose among several interesting possibilities, but only one of them makes all the shortcomings in Black’s position evident.

White to play. Choose one of the following continuations:

\textbf{Option A:} Play 17 c6 closing the queenside but confining Black’s c8-bishop.

\textbf{Option B:} Take on d6 opening the c-file; then play the knight to a4, clearing the c-file and with an eye on b6.

\textbf{Option C:} Transfer the knight to c4, where it will be ideally placed to threaten the queenside.

\textbf{Test 28}

\textbf{Karpov – Kasparov}

\textit{New York/Lyons Wch (23) 1990}

King’s Indian Defence, Sämische Variation [E87]

1 \textit{\textipa{d}4 \textit{\textipa{f}6} 2 c4 g6 3 \textit{\textipa{c}3 \textit{\textipa{g}7} 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0

\textbf{6 \textit{\textipa{e}3}}}

6 \textit{\textipa{g}5!? is worthy of attention too.

\textbf{6...e5 7 d5}

7 \textit{\textipa{g}e2}, without making a decision in the centre, is equally playable.

\textbf{7...\textit{\textipa{h}5 8 \textit{\textipa{d}2 \textit{\textipa{h}4+}}}

The main alternative for Black is to play 8...f5 at once.

\textbf{9 g3 \textit{\textipa{e}7 10 0-0-0 f5 11 exf5 gxf5} (D)}

This is a theoretical position of the Sämische King’s Indian, with many interesting possibilities for White. One of them proves to be very effective, revealing the shortcomings in Black’s position.

\textit{White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:}

\textbf{Option A:} Develop the knight to h3, with the idea of moving it to f2, supporting the advance g4.
Option B: Play 12 \( \text{d}3 \), with the idea of developing the g1-knight to e2.

Option C: Play the prophylactic 12 \( \text{b}1 \) first.

**Test 29**

**Uhlmann – Gligorić**  
*Hastings 1970/1*  
King's Indian Defence,  
Averbakh System [E75]

1 \( d4 \) \( f6 \) 2 \( c4 \) \( g6 \) 3 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{g}7 \) 4 \( e4 \) \( d6 \) 5 \( \text{e}2 \) 0-0 6 \( \text{g}5 \)

The Averbakh System was systematically employed by the strong Soviet grandmaster whose name it bears. The main idea behind this set-up is to hinder Black's central advance \( \ldots \text{e}5 \), which is now bad on account of 7 \( \text{dxe}5 \) \( \text{dxe}5 \) 8 \( \text{xd}8 \) \( \text{xd}8 \) 9 \( \text{xf}6 \) \( \text{xf}6 \) 10 \( \text{d}5 \).

6...\( \text{e}5 \)

Adopting a Benoni-type approach, a frequent choice in the King's Indian.

7 \( \text{d}5 \) \( \text{e}6 \) 8 \( \text{d}2 \) \( \text{exd}5 \) 9 \( \text{exd}5 \) 9 \( \text{cxd}5 \) leads to a sharp game.

9...\( \text{e}8 \) 10 \( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{g}4 \) 11 0-0 \( \text{a}6 \) 12 \( \text{h}3 \) \( \text{xf}3 \) 13 \( \text{xf}3 \) \( \text{bd}7 \) 14 \( \text{a}4 \) \( \text{e}7 \) (\( D \))

The main line is 14...\( \text{wc}7 \), although 14...\( \text{a}5 \) and 14...\( \text{wb}6 \) have also been tried successfully.

---

**Test 30**

**Piket – Smirin**  
*Biel IZ 1993*  
King's Indian Defence,  
Classical Variation [E94]

1 \( d4 \) \( f6 \) 2 \( c4 \) \( g6 \) 3 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{g}7 \) 4 \( e4 \) \( d6 \) 5 \( \text{f}3 \) 0-0 6 \( \text{e}2 \) \( e5 \) 7 0-0 \( \text{a}6 \) (\( D \))

7...\( \text{bd}7 \) and 7...\( \text{c}6 \) used to be the predominant choices here, but today this move has gained popularity thanks to its flexibility.

---

8 \( \text{e}3 \) \( \text{g}4 \) 9 \( \text{g}5 \) \( \text{we}8 \) 10 \( \text{dxe}5 \)

The other possibility is to close the centre with 10 \( \text{d}5 \).

10...\( \text{dxe}5 \) 11 \( \text{h}3 \) \( \text{h}6 \)

11...\( \text{f}6 \) also deserves attention.

12 \( \text{d}2 \)
12 c1 usually comes to the same thing.
12...f6 13 e3 d7 14 a3 f5 15 b4 c6 16 c5 f4 17 c1 h7 (D)

9 f1 is an alternative.
9...c5
9...c5 is another possibility.
10 a3 e8 (D)

As often happens in the King’s Indian, White has an advantage on the queenside and the centre (in this position, a strong point on d6 – well supported by a c5-pawn, where White could place a knight), while Black bases his hopes on getting kingside counterplay capable of disturbing the opponent’s king.

Often the game turns into a crazy race to see who strikes first, where the ability to combine attack and defence is decisive for the outcome of the battle.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

**Option A:** 18 d2 with the idea of c4-d6.
**Option B:** 18 b2 with the idea of b1-d2-c4.
**Option C:** Take on a6, weakening Black’s pawn-structure.

---

**Test 31**

**Bronstein – Petrosian**

*Amsterdam Cht 1956*

King’s Indian Defence, Classical Variation [E95]

1 c4 g6 2 c3 g7 3 f3 d6 4 d4 f6 5 e4 0-0 6 e2 e5 7 0-0 bd7

The main line is 7...c6.

8 e1 c6 9 d5

11 g5

The natural 11 b4 has been played too.
11...f6 12 d2 f5 13 g5 x7 14 exf5 gxf5 15 f4 e4 16 e3 h6 17 h3 (D)

White has two main plans at his disposal in this King’s Indian set-up:

1. Move a knight to f2 and later undermine Black’s centre by h3 and g4.
2. Play on the queenside by preparing the advance b4.

There are many ways for Black to counter these plans, but only one of them allows him to level the game completely.

**Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:**
Option A: Play 17...\(\text{c}f6\), strengthening the e-pawn as well as hindering a future undermining of Black's centre by the break g4.

Option B: Play 17...\(\text{x}c3\) and after this exchange, transfer the knight to \(f6\).

Option C: Play 17...a6 preparing the break at b5, with counterplay on the queenside as well as weakening White's d5-pawn.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 13 f3, with the idea of closing the kingside with g4.

Option B: Play 13 b4 first, driving back the c5-knight before Black can reinforce it with ...a5. Later on White will close the kingside.

Test 32

Alburt – Rizzitano

New York 1984
King's Indian Defence,
Averbakh System [E73]

1 d4 \(\text{d}6\) 2 c4 \(\text{g}6\) 3 \(\text{c}3\) \(\text{g}7\) 4 e4 \(\text{d}6\) 5 \(\text{e}2\) 0-0 6 \(\text{g}5\) \(\text{h}6\)

The main alternatives are 6...c5 and 6...\(\text{bd}7\) in order to play ...e5.

7 \(\text{e}3\) e5 8 d5 \(\text{bd}7\) 9 h4

White has tested other plans, but the text-move – aimed at pushing the pawn up to h5 – seems to be the best one.

9...\(\text{c}5\) 10 \(\text{wc}2\) c6 11 h5 cxd5 12 cxd5 g5

(D)

White enjoys the usual advantage in space so common in this opening. Black is ahead in development, and has his pieces actively placed. It is worth mentioning that thanks to the advance of the pawn to h5, White has lessened the effects of the opponent’s break ...f5, and in case of g4 this break could be ruled out completely.

Test 33

Mednis – Lehmann

Berlin 1983

English Opening vs King's Indian [A26]

1 c4 \(\text{f}6\) 2 g3 \(\text{g}6\) 3 \(\text{g}2\) \(\text{g}7\) 4 \(\text{f}3\) 0-0 5 0-0 d6

It is apparent that Black prefers King's Indian set-ups. More in the style of the Grünfeld would be 5...d5 or 5...c6.

6 \(\text{c}3\) e5

6...c5 7 d4! would transpose to a King's Indian line.

7 d3 \(\text{c}6\) (D)

7...c5 leaves the key d5-square in White's hands.

8 \(\text{b}1\)

White is attacking on the queenside, attempting to press on the light squares d5, c6 and b7, and taking advantage of his fianchettoed bishop. Black, on the other hand, will have better chances on the kingside. One of his aims is to play ...f5 with a later advance ...f4 or ...c4.

8...a5
This move has pros and cons. For instance: White will get the subsequent command of the a-file. The b6-square is also weakened. Black’s alternatives are 8...h6, 8...e6, 8...d4 and 8...f5.

9 a3 h6 10 b4 axb4 11 axb4 d6 12 b5 e7 (D)

12...d4?! 13 d2 c8 14 e3.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: 14...h3, trying to get rid of the strong light-squared bishop.

Option B: 14...fb8, transferring the action to the centre and queenside.

Option C: 14...c6, strengthening the centre.

Option D: 14...ab8, defending b7, even though it leaves the a-file in White’s hands.

Test 34

Karpov – Hjartarson
Seattle Ct (2) 1989
English Opening, Reversed Dragon [A29]

1 c4 e5 2 dxe5 d6 3 g3 d5

Black is playing a Sicilian Dragon with reversed colours. Having a tempo less, Black is not able to choose the most aggressive set-up.

4 cxd5 exd5 5 g2 b6 6 f3 c6 7 0-0 d7 8 a3 c6 9 b4 0-0 10 b1 f6 11 d3 d7?

11...d4!.

12 d4! d5 13 c2 b6?! 14 b2 c8

14...a5?! 15 b5 a7 16 d4! xxb5 17 dx e5 c8 18 c3 19 xa3 19 d4 ±.

15 b1!

15 b1?! h8 16 b2 (16 d4 f5 is unclear) 16...dxb4! 17 axb4 d4 18 c3 a2 =.

15...d4 16 xxd4 exd4 (D)

White has given up his dark-squared bishop, and Black is preparing to free himself by the
advance ...c5. White should do something to counter this plan. If Black solves the problem of his unprotected d4-pawn, he might exert pressure on the e-file thereafter.

White to play. Please choose one of the following possibilities:

**Option A:** 17 \( \text{w}c6 \), which physically prevents ...c5.

**Option B:** 17 \( \text{w}b2 \) with the idea of replying to 17...c5 with 18 b5 and placing a strong knight on c4 afterwards.

**Option C:** Entering the complications arising from the move 17 \( \text{d}xd4 \).

**Option D:** 17 \( \text{d}d2 \) with the idea of preventing Black’s advance 17...c5 on account of 18 bxc5 bxc5 19 \( \text{w}a5 \), following with the doubling of rooks on the c-file.

---

**Test 35**

Hübner – Karpov

*Tilburg 1977*

Symmetrical English [A34]

1 c4 c5 2 \( \text{d}f3 \) \( \text{d}f6 \) 3 \( \text{c}3 \) d5 4 cxd5 \( \text{d}xd5 \) 5 g3 (D)

The aggressive line 5 c4!? \( \text{d}b4 \) 6 \( \text{c}c4 \)!? is still a rich field for investigation. 6...\( \text{d}d3+ \) 7 \( \text{e}2 \) \( \text{f}4+ \) 8 \( \text{f}1 \) \( \text{e}6 \) 9 \( \text{b}4 \) and then:

a) 9...\( \text{cxb}4 \) 10 \( \text{e}2 \) (10 \( \text{d}5 \) \( g6 \) 11 \( \text{b}2 \) \( g7 \) 12 \( \text{x}g7 \) \( \text{x}g7 \) 13 \( \text{w}c1 \) \( \text{c}6 \) 14 \( \text{d}4 \) with compensation) 10...\( \text{c}c7 \) 11 \( \text{d}4 \) with compensation.

b) 9...\( g6 \) 10 bxc5 \( g7 \) 11 \( \text{x}e6 \) \( \text{x}e6 \) 12 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{c}6 \) 13 \( \text{e}3 \) and here:

b1) 13...\( \text{w}a5 \) is one possibility.

b2) 13...\( \text{g}4 \) 14 \( \text{e}2 \) f5 15 h3 \( \text{x}e4 \) 16 h\( \text{x}g4 \) exf3 17 \( \text{g}f3 \) \( \text{d}7 \) (17...\( \text{d}5 \) 18 \( \text{f}4 \) \( \text{c}4+ \) 19 \( \text{g}2 \) 0-0-0?! is unclear) 18 \( \text{b}1 \) 0-0 19 \( \text{b}3 \) ± Seirawan-Miles, London 1982.

b3) 13...\( \text{c}4+ \) 14 \( \text{g}1 \) \( \text{w}a5 \) 15 \( \text{c}1 \) 0-0-0 16 \( \text{b}1 \)! (16 h3 f5! 17 \( \text{ex}f5 \) \( \text{gf}5 \) with unclear play) 16...\( \text{w}a6 \) (16...\( \text{w}a2 \) 17 \( \text{b}d2 \) ±) 17 d5 ± f5 (17...\( \text{e}2 \) 18 \( \text{b}3 \) \( \text{x}f3 \) 19 \( \text{g}f3 \) \( \text{d}4 \) 20 \( \text{d}xd4 \) \( \text{d}xd4 \) 21 \( \text{c}6 \) ± 17...\( \text{e}6 \) 18 \( \text{xc}4 \) \( \text{xc}4 \) 19 \( \text{b}d2 \) ±) and instead of 18 \( \text{xc}4 \)?! (as played in Vallejo-Leko, Linares 2003), both 18 \( \text{fd}2 \) \( \text{e}5 \) 19 \( \text{xc}4 \) (19 c6 with an attack) 19...\( \text{xc}4 \) 20 \( \text{w}c2 \) \( \text{xe}3 \) 21 \( \text{xe}3 \) with the initiative, and 18 \( \text{d}d2 \) ± were better moves.

5...\( g6 \) 6 d3 \( \text{g}7 \) 7 \( \text{d}2 \) b6 8 \( \text{a}4+ \) \( \text{d}7 \) 9 \( \text{h}4 \) \( \text{c}6 \) 10 \( \text{g}2 \) e6 11 \( \text{xd}8+ \) \( \text{xd}8 \) 12 \( \text{c}1 \) \( \text{a}6 \) 13 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) 14 \( \text{c}3 \) f6 15 a3?! Better is 15 0-0 intending to continue with 16 \( \text{d}d2 \).

15...\( \text{e}7 \) 16 0-0 \( \text{h}c8 \) 17 \( \text{d}2 \) \( \text{c}7 \) (D)

---

The ending that now follows seems to offer little for either side. This is a dry position, although Black controls more space. However, Hübner has the floor...

White to play. Choose one of the following options:

**Option A:** 18 \( \text{c}4 \), placing the knight on a good post.

**Option B:** 18 e4, followed by 19 d4, attempting to exploit the unsafe position of the black king.
Option C: 18 b4 – White seeks to free himself from the straitjacket represented by the c5-pawn.

Test 36

Bisguier – Petrosian
New York (USA-USSR) 1954
Symmetrical English [A33]

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e5 3 ♜f3 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜c6 5

6 e4 can be met by 6...♗b4 7 f3 d5.

6...♗e5 7 ♜b3

Or 7 ♜e3 ♘b6 8 ♘a4 ♘b4+.

7...♗g4 8 0-0 9 ♘e2 0-0 10 ♘c7 11 ♘d7 12 ♘e5 (D)

10...♗e5 11 ♘e2 ♘c7 12 ♘d2

A Hedgehog structure has been enlivened by the thematic ...b5 advance, by which Black exploited the fact that White was still busy developing his queenside. But now what?

*Choose the right plan: open the game, close it, or maintain the tension.*

**Option A:** 15...♗b7, keeping options on the queenside open.

**Option B:** 15...bxc4, so Black gets more pawns in the centre in case of 16 ♘xc4.

**Option C:** 15...b4 – Black closes the queenside in order to open it later, when the opportunity arises, and gets the c5-square for a strong knight. White’s kingside attack is the only open question.

12...a6

12...♗d7? 13 ♗f4 ♘g6 14 b3 a6 15 ♘b2 ♘ac8 16 ♘ac1 ♘fd8 17 ♗h1 ♘b8, Moggi-Muehlebach, Bad Ragaz 1991.

13 b3?!

White should prefer 13 a4 intending b3 and ♘a3, or 13 f4 ♘c6 14 ♘b3 b6 15 ♘e3 ♘d7 16 ♘ac1 ♘c5 17 ♘d4 ♘b7 18 ♘xc6 ♘xc6 19 b4 ♘d7 20 ♘fd1 ♘c7 with unclear play, Fernandez Garcia-Adams, Dos Hermanas 1993.

13...♗b5! 14 ♘f4 ♘c6 15 ♘b2 (D)

The alternatives were no better:

a) 15 cxb5 axb5 (15...♘d4?! 16 ♘d3? {16 ♘c4} 16...♘xc3 ++) 16 ♘xb5 ♘b6+ 17 ♗h1

Test 37

Petrosian – Spassky
Amsterdam Ct 1956
English Opening vs King’s Indian [A16]

1 ♘f3 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘g3 ♘g7 4 ♘g2 0-0 0-0

Black is playing a sort of Panno Variation with the white pawn at d3 instead of d4. 7...e5 is more usual, occupying the centre.

8 ♘d2 ♗b8 9 a3 ♘e8
With the idea of delaying White’s initiative on the queenside by b4 and preparing to play in the centre, but this is a somewhat passive choice. A good option was 9...\textit{f}7, in order to strengthen the counterplay by means of \textit{...b5}, and likewise with the possibility of playing \textit{...c8} and \textit{...h3}. 9...\textit{g}4?! is another idea.

10 e3 \textit{d}7 11 \textit{c}2 f5

11...b5 12 cxb5 (12 b4) 12...axb5 13 d4 or 13 b4 and the knight is looking misplaced on e8.

12 b4 e5 13 b2 g5 14 \textit{d}5 \textit{e}7? (D)

14...f4 is consistent with his previous play.

White must now make a difficult decision with the knight. But from a strategic point of view, there is only one correct choice.

White to play. Choose one of the following moves with the knight:

Option A: Transfer the knight to d2. A flexible choice.

Option B: Jump to e5. The most active move, without a doubt.

\textbf{Test 38}

\textbf{Donner – Pomar}

\textit{Brunnen tt 1966}

\textit{Symmetrical English [A38]}

1 c4 e5 2 g3 g6 3 \textit{g}2 \textit{g}7 4 \textit{c}3 \textit{c}6 5 \textit{f}3

5 e3 is another set-up.

5...\textit{f}6

5...e5 seeks a firmer grip on the centre.

6 d4 cxd4 7 \textit{x}d4 \textit{xd}4 8 \textit{wx}d4 0-0 9 0-0 d6 10 \textit{wd}3 \textit{f}5 11 e4 \textit{e}6 12 b3 \textit{wa}5 13 \textit{d}2 \textit{wh}5 14 f3 \textit{h}3

As a result of the lack of manoeuvring space, Black decides to free himself seeking simplifications.

15 \textit{ac}1 \textit{ag}2 16 \textit{ag}2 \textit{fd}8

16...\textit{ac}8 17 \textit{d}5 \textit{xd}5 18 \textit{exd}5.

17 \textit{fd}1

Or: 17 \textit{d}5; 17 g4 \textit{wc}5.

17...\textit{h}6? (D)

Not a good move. The black bishop was strong and should not have been exchanged.
18 $\text{Qxd5}$

18 f4 g5 (18...Qg4 is best met by 19 Qh1! rather than 19 h3 $\text{Qxh3+ 20 Qxh3 Qxf2+ 21 Qg2 Qxd3}) 19 f5 Qg4?! (19...g4!) 20 Qh1 (20 h3) 20...Qe5 21 Qf1 g4 22 Qxh6 $\text{Qxh6 23 Qf4}$ (23 $\text{Qd5 Qd2+}$) 23...Qxf4 24 gxf4 $\text{Qd3}$ 25 Qcf1 ±.

18...Qxd5 19 cxd5!

White prefers to play on the open c-file, which he is going to dominate.

19...Qac8 20 Qc3 Qxd2 21 Qxd2

Since the queen is away from the battlefield, Donner’s decision was excellent.

21...Wf6 22 Qdc2 Qf8 (D)

Option A: The direct 23 Qc7, penetrating on the seventh rank.

Option B: 23 h4 – a prophylactic move, guided towards the black king.

Option C: 23 a4 – another waiting move, that captures more space on the queenside. Useful or not?

Test 39

Kramnik – Lautier

Horgen 1995

English Opening/Semi-Tarrasch [D41]

1 Qf3 c5 2 c4 Qf6 3 Qc3 Qc6 4 g3 d5 5 d4

A modern treatment, instead of the more common 5 cxd5 Qxd5 6 Qg2 Qc7 7 0-0 e5, which gives Black a sound and comfortable game, with a preponderance in the centre. Often Black reaches this set-up via the move-order 3...d5!? 4 cxd5 Qxd5 5 g3.

5...e6

5...cxd4 6 Qxd4 Qxc4 7 Qxc6 Qxd1+ 8 Qxd1 bxc6 9 Qg2 Qd5 10 Qe3 e6 11 Qxc4 Qa6 12 b3 Qb4+ 13 Qd2 Qe7 14 Qc1 Qac8 15 Qxb4+ Qxb4 16 a3 Qd5 17 Qa5 ± Kramnik-Hjartarson, Paris 1995.

6 cxd5 Qxd5 7 Qg2 (D)

White has a clear positional advantage, due to his command of the c-file, the space advantage granted by the pawn-structure, and his more active pieces. Black’s queen is waiting on f8, ready to act at the right moment.

We mention only three possible choices:

7...cxd4

7...Qe7 is an alternative.

8 Qxd4 Qxc3 9 bxc3 Qxd4 10 Qxd4

Not 10 cxd4? Qb4+ 11 Qd2 Qxd4.

10...Qxd4 11 cxd4
White shows his cards: a powerful fianchetted bishop aiming at b7, and a strong centre.

11...d6?!

Exchanging the dark-squared bishops favours the defending side: 11...b4+ 12 d2 xxd2+ 13 xd2 d8 (preventing the rook from entering at c7) 14 h1 e8 15 c5 b8 and White has only a slight advantage.

12 0-0

More flexible than 12 b1 b8 13 f4 e7 14 xd6+ xd6 15 b3 b6 16 a3 b7 17 e4 a6 18 d2 e7 19 b1 b5 = Groszpeter-Karolyi, Hungarian Ch 1986.

12...b8 13 e4!

13 d2 is another possibility: 13...d7 14 f1 0-0 15 f4 xf4 16 gxf4 in order to control dark squares.

13...b6 is met by 14 b2! b7 15 ac1 d7 16 d5!.

14 e5! e7

14...c7 15 a3 d8 16 ac1 d7? fails to 17 xc7 xc7 18 d6 --.

15 c3 c6

15...b6 16 f8 c1 d8 17 d2 intending b4-d6.

16 f8 e8 17 xc8+ xc8 18 c1 f8

(D)

White needs to exploit Black’s delay in development. White commands the open c-file and has pressure against the queenside.

There are three logical options:

Option A: The immediate advance 19 d5 exd5 20 xxd5.

Option B: 19 d5 exd5 and now 20 xa7.

Option C: 19 h3 threatening d5.

Test 40

Hübner – Ljubojević

Tilburg 1978

English Opening, 1...e5 [A21]

1 c4 e5 2 c3 d6 3 g3

3 d4!? is an interesting way to try to take advantage of Black’s slightly passive 2nd move. In case of 3...xd4 4 xd4 c6 White would withdraw the queen and then seek to exploit his better pawn-structure and control of d5, continuing with g3, g2, e4, ge2, b3, b2, etc.

3...e6

3...g6 is another set-up.

4 c2 c6

4...c6 5 d5 intending b4-b5.

5 d3

5 b3 d5!? 6 cxd5 cxd5 7 f3 c6 8 0-0 d4 9 a4 f6 10 g5 g4 = Smyslov-Bronstein, Moscow 1967.

5...f5 (D)

Other possibilities were 5...f6 and 5...g6.

Loyal to his style, Ljubojević produces a quite uncommon and aggressive position from the opening. Black has developed his queen’s bishop early, and wants to gain more ground on the kingside. At the same time, he tries to prevent White’s set-up with e4, ge2, c3, 0-0 and f4, which many players often choose.
White to play. Choose one of the following plans:

**Option A:** 6 ♗f3 – even though this is not a flexible set-up, White develops the knight with a tempo gain, having a latent threat in the centre with the advance c5.

**Option B:** 6 f4, attacking the black centre before deciding how to develop the king’s knight.

**Option C:** 6 e3 followed by ♗ge2 – the ‘English’ set-up *par excellence.*

---

**Test 41**

**Korchnoi – Petrosian**

*Il Ciocco Ct (5) 1977*

English Opening, Four Knights [A29]

1 c4 ♗f6 2 ♗c3 e5 3 ♗f3 ♗c6 4 g3 ♗b4 5 ♗d5 ♗c5 6 d3 h6 7 ♗g2 d6 8 0-0 0-0 9 e3 a5 10 ♗c3 ♗a7

This retreat was unnecessary.

11 a3 ♗h7 12 ♗h1!? (D)

---

**Test 42**

**Romero – Zlotnik**

*Ceuta 1993*

Trompowsky Attack [A45]

1 d4 ♗f6 2 ♗g5

Black is threatening the advance of the f-pawn. Shall White prevent it? How? Prophylaxis or active play?

White to play. *He has the following possibilities:*

**Option A:** White should sacrifice a pawn to liberate his bishops with 17 d4.

**Option B:** 17 ♗b2, deliberately ignoring Black’s threat of ...f4.

**Option C:** 17 ♗g1 – the knight retreats in order to strengthen the weak points on White’s kingside.

---

12...♕g4

12...♕g5 13 ♗g1.

13 ♗c2

13 h3 ♗h5.

13...f5 14 ♗b5 ♗d7

14...♗b6 15 d4.

15 ♗xa7 ♗xa7 16 b3 ♗aa8 (D)

Trying to give play to the queen’s rook. Another possibility was 16...f4 17 exf4 exf4 18 ♗xf4?! g5 19 ♗e3 ♗xf3 20 ♗xf3 ♗xf3 21 ♗xa7 ♗xa7 22 d4 with unclear play.

---
9 f4 dxe5 10 dxe5 ♗xd2+.

9...b4
9...♗c6?! 10 f4 ♗xd4? 11 ♗e4 +--; 9...♗b7
10 f4.

10 ♗e4 ♗c6?!
10...d5!? is better, trying to break with ...c5, reaching a position that is interesting for both sides.

11 ♗f3!
Better than 11 ♗e3 dxe5 12 dxe5 ♗d5! or 11 ♗e2 dxe5 12 dxe5 ♗xe5 13 ♗b5+ ♗d7.

11...d5
11...♗e7 12 h4 ±.

12 ♗g3 g6 13 ♗e2?! (D)
13 h4! h5 14 ♗e2 is better.

Black is trying to hit back in the centre with the ‘French’ break ...c5. This is a critical position, with several plans that come into consideration. Certainly, the style of the player is a major factor when choosing one or another move, but objectively speaking, one choice is better than the others.

White to play. Choose one of the following options:

Option A: 22 c4 – White is taking risks, opening the centre and giving Black new problems.

Option B: 22 ♗d3, hindering ...c5 and preparing the break c3, after the preparatory ♗c1.

Option C: 22 ♗f1 with the idea of pressing against f7 before starting any other action.

Test 43

Petrosian – Liublinsky
USSR Ch (Moscow) 1949
Torre Attack [A46]

1 d4 ♗f6 2 ♗f3 e6 3 ♗g5
The similarity between this set-up and the Trompowsky Attack is obvious, but White has extra options when he has not yet played f3.  
3...e5 4 e3 e7 (D)  
4...b6 5 bd2 is the most critical variation. Theory considers that White gets fair compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

5 bd2 d5 6 c3 bd7 7 d3 0-0?!  
7...c7 is more advisable, because it not only prevents the following move, but also avoids presenting a target for White's kingside play.  
8 e5  
White gains space for his pieces.  
8...e8 9 h4!.  
9 dx5 cd7 (D)

A standard decision: exchange the bishop or to keep it. Please appraise all the elements in this position and make the right choice.

What shall we do with the bishop?  
Option A: 10 f4 – White keeps the bishops, strengthening the strong e5-pawn.  
Option B: 10 xe7 – White leaves Black with the bad bishop, the one acting on the light squares.

Test 44

Botvinnik – Zagoriansky  
Sverdlovsk 1943  
English Opening [A13]

1 f3 d5 2 c4 e6 3 b3  
Irregular, but perfectly safe and playable.  
3...f6 4 b2 c7 5 e3 0-0 6 c3 c5 7 cxd5 cxd5 8 cxd5 exd5 9 d4 cxd4 10 xd4 f6 11 fd2 e6 12 e2 e6 13 0-0 xb2 14 xb2 a5 15 fdl ad8 16 d2 d7 17 ad1 cd8 18 h3 h6 19 c5!  
A very strong move and very difficult to play during a game. It seems that exchanging knights leaves the defender with less chances of successful counterplay, and on the other hand White vacates the f3-square in order to attack the isolated pawn with more determination.  
19...xe5 20 xe5 c5 21 f3 b6 22 b2 c8 23 e5 cd8 24 d4 a5 (D)

After playing the opening in a careless way, Black quickly obtained a position without any sort of counterplay. The difference in activity between the two bishops is obvious and the d5-pawn is like a thorn nailed into Black's
position. White only needs to produce a second weakness.

White to play. How should he increase the pressure on Black’s position?

Option A: 25 h4 with the idea of fixing the kingside advantageously, using the space advantage.

Option B: 25 \( \mathcal{G} \)g4 – the exchange of bishops clears the situation and consolidates the advantage.

Option C: 25 g4 – White attempts to attack the black king.

Test 45

Bronstein – Botvinnik

Moscow Wch (22) 1951
Dutch Defence [A91]

1 d4 e6 2 c4 f5 3 g3

This early fianchetto was popularized by Alekhine. White is able to develop his knight to e2 or h3, without interrupting the long light-square diagonal.

3...\( \mathcal{D} \)f6 4 \( \mathcal{G} \)g2 \( \mathcal{G} \)e7 5 \( \mathcal{C} \)c3 0-0 (D)

6 e3

A very important set-up, introduced by Botvinnik. Usually White tries to advance this pawn to c4 in one move (with the aim of opening the e-file) and if this is not possible, he does not advance the pawn (in order not to weaken the f3-square).

6...d5

Black decides upon the rigid Stonewall formation. Bronstein favoured the more flexible 6...d6; e.g., 7 \( \mathcal{G} \)ge2 c6 8 0-0 e5 9 d5 \( \mathcal{W} \)e8 10 e4 \( \mathcal{W} \)h5 11 exf5 and Black has more initiative, Botvinnik-Bronstein, Moscow Wch (1) 1951.

7 \( \mathcal{G} \)ge2 c6 8 b3 \( \mathcal{B} \)e4

Premature.

9 0-0 \( \mathcal{D} \)d7 10 \( \mathcal{B} \)b2

The white bishops are favourably placed, and when the centre opens up, one or the other will play an important role in the course of the game.

10...\( \mathcal{D} \)d6 11 \( \mathcal{W} \)d3

If 11 f3 then 11...\( \mathcal{G} \)g5! 12 h4 \( \mathcal{D} \)f7 and Black gets counterplay in the centre. Bronstein prefers to concentrate forces in the centre of the board.

11...g5

Active defence.

12 cxd5 exd5 13 f3 \( \mathcal{D} \)xc3

If 13...\( \mathcal{D} \)d6, then 14 \( \mathcal{A} \)a3 and after some exchanges White will threaten the break e4.

14 \( \mathcal{A} \)xc3 g4 (D)

The aim of this move is to divert the f3-pawn from supporting the advance e4, but this is not risk-free. 14...\( \mathcal{D} \)d7 at least lets the bishop become effective via e8 and g6. Now, this bishop will be bad until the end.

15 fxg4 \( \mathcal{D} \)xg4 16 \( \mathcal{H} \)h3 \( \mathcal{H} \)h6

A painful but forced retreat. 16...\( \mathcal{E} \)e6 17 \( \mathcal{F} \)f4 \( \mathcal{D} \)d7 18 \( \mathcal{X} \)xg4 fxg4 19 e4 dxe4 20 \( \mathcal{W} \)xe4 \( \mathcal{A} \)d5 21 \( \mathcal{D} \)xd5 cxd5 22 \( \mathcal{W} \)e5 \( \mathcal{W} \)d6 23 \( \mathcal{W} \)h5! with advantage.

17 \( \mathcal{F} \)f4 \( \mathcal{D} \)d6 18 b4
Black’s initiative on the kingside has been reduced to ashes, and then White transfers the battle to the opposite side. One important feature in Bronstein’s play is his skill for changing the theatre of events – Nimzowitsch’s ‘alternation’, a procedure which requires a high level of accuracy.

18...a6 19 a4 We7 20 ab1 (D)

The pawn-structure has undergone a big change since move 14. The f5-pawn is now isolated but Black has got in return the control of the e4-square – but he cannot take advantage of this immediately – and the weakness at e3. White pursues the usual minority attack.

What shall Black do now?

Option A: 20...d7, connecting his forces.

Option B: 20...f7, directing the knight to g5.

Option C: 20...b5, physically preventing the advance of the white b-pawn to b5.

Thanks to his aggressive assault with the f-pawn, White has opened the game, liquidating the pawn-centre, which should be useful to the bishops. Black must now take a critical decision.

Which is best?

Option A: 13...e8, to establish control over the open e-file.

Option B: 13...g4, to develop all the pieces and press against d4.

Option C: 13...d5, preventing the d5 advance and closing the position for the dark-squared bishop. The e5-square is not valuable.

Test 46

Pliester – Mednis
Amsterdam 1986
Nimzo-Indian Defence, Rubinstein System [E41]

1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 e6 3 Qc3 Qb4 4 e3 c5 5 Qd3 5 Qe2 is an alternative.

5...Qc6 6 Qf3 Qxc3+ 7 bxc3 d6 8 0-0 e5
This is the Hübner Variation. Black puts his pawns on dark squares in order to compensate

Test 47

Wexler – Korchnoi
Buenos Aires 1960
Nimzo-Indian Defence, Rubinstein System [E46]

1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 e6 3 Qc3 Qb4 4 e3 0-0 4...c5 is also very common.

5 Qe2 d5 6 a3 Qe7 7 Qxd5 Qxd5 8 g3?! 8 Qc2!

8...b6
8...\(\texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{xc3} \texttt{9 }\texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{xc3} \texttt{c5 =.}
9 \texttt{\texttt{g}}\texttt{g2} \texttt{\texttt{b7} 10 }\texttt{e4 }\texttt{\texttt{xc3} 11 }\texttt{bxc3?}!
11 \texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{xc3} is more natural.
11...\(\texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{e6} 12 0-0 \texttt{\texttt{a}}\texttt{a5} 13 \texttt{\texttt{f}}\texttt{f4} \texttt{\texttt{e}}\texttt{e8} 14 \texttt{\texttt{e}}\texttt{e1} \texttt{\texttt{f}8} 15 \texttt{\texttt{b}1} \texttt{c5} 16 \texttt{d}5 \texttt{e5} 17 \texttt{\texttt{h}3} \texttt{c4} 18 \texttt{\texttt{f}1}?! 
18 f4!? leads to more active play.
18...\(\texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{c8} 19 \texttt{a}4 \texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{c7} 20 \texttt{f}3 \texttt{\texttt{c}}\texttt{c8} 21 \texttt{\texttt{f}2} \texttt{\texttt{e}7} 22 \texttt{\texttt{c}3} \texttt{\texttt{d}6} 23 \texttt{\texttt{w}c}2 \texttt{\texttt{f}8} 24 \texttt{\texttt{a}1} \texttt{\texttt{w}f6} 25 \texttt{\texttt{d}1} \texttt{\texttt{f}c8} (D) 

Thus White obtains a clear initiative on the queenside.
8...\(\texttt{\texttt{e}4} 9 \texttt{\texttt{b}2} \texttt{\texttt{d}7} 10 \texttt{\texttt{d}3} \texttt{f5} 11 \texttt{\texttt{e}2}! \texttt{\texttt{f}6} 12 0-0 \texttt{\texttt{e}7} 13 \texttt{\texttt{e}5}!
Preventing the black pieces from freeing themselves.
13...\(\texttt{\texttt{x}e5} 14 \texttt{\texttt{d}xe5} \texttt{\texttt{g}5} 15 \texttt{\texttt{d}4} \texttt{\texttt{d}4} \texttt{\texttt{f}3} \texttt{\texttt{g}5} (D)

Black has taken command of the game on the queenside, and firmly blockaded the white passed pawn. How should White react?

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: 26 \texttt{\texttt{h}1}, with the idea of \texttt{g4} and \texttt{\texttt{g}3}.

Option B: 26 \texttt{\texttt{g}4} – White puts the knight on an active square and starts kingside action.

Option C: 26 \texttt{\texttt{a}2} in order to transfer the rook to the kingside when necessary. Besides, this move anticipates ...\texttt{\texttt{b}3}.

Test 48

\begin{center}
\textbf{Petrosian – Fischer}
\end{center}

\emph{Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade Ct 1959}

Nimzo-Indian Defence,

Rubinstein System [E40]

1 d4 \texttt{\texttt{f}6} 2 c4 e6 3 \texttt{\texttt{c}3} \texttt{\texttt{b}4} 4 e3 d5 5 a3 \texttt{\texttt{d}6}?! 
5...\texttt{\texttt{x}c3+?! 6} \texttt{\texttt{b}x}3 \texttt{c5 looks better.}
6 \texttt{\texttt{f}3} 0-0 7 \texttt{c5!} \texttt{\texttt{e}7} 8 \texttt{\texttt{b}4} 

This variation of the Nimzo-Indian Defence is not very common. The dark-squared bishop has taken several moves to reach the h6-square, and the position is similar to a Dutch Defence. Without a doubt, Black’s chances of counterplay and White’s possibilities are clearly defined.

White to play. Choose one of the three following possibilities:

Option A: 17 \texttt{b}5 – the idea is to open the queenside by \texttt{a4} and \texttt{a5}.

Option B: 17 \texttt{c}6 – the black c8-bishop is cut off from play, and his rooks unconnected.

Option C: 17 \texttt{\texttt{f}4}, placing another piece actively before starting actions on the queenside.

Test 49

\begin{center}
\textbf{Taimanov – Petrosian}
\end{center}

\emph{Zurich Ct 1953}

Nimzo-Indian Defence,

Rubinstein System [E58]

1 d4 \texttt{\texttt{f}6} 2 c4 e6 3 \texttt{\texttt{c}3} \texttt{\texttt{b}4} 4 e3 c5 5 \texttt{\texttt{d}3} 0-0 6 \texttt{\texttt{f}3} d5 7 0-0 \texttt{\texttt{c}6} 8 a3 \texttt{\texttt{x}c3} 9 \texttt{\texttt{b}xc3} \texttt{b}6
It is more popular to prevent White from building the centre that results from the text-move, by playing 9...dxc4!.

10 cxd5 exd5 11 Qe5 (D)

11...Wc7
Or:

a) 11...Qxe5 12 dxe5 Qg4 13 f4 f5 14 Qe2 Qh6 15 a2! Qe6 16 Qd2 Wh4 17 Qf3 Qg4 18 g3 Wh5 19 Wh2 a6d8 20 Whd1 Whf7 21 h3 Qh6 22 Whg2 and the d5-pawn falls, Korchnoi-Gurgenidze, USSR Ch (Tbilisi) 1959.

b) Lately Black has been playing 11...b7:

b1) 12 f4?! Qe4 with counterplay.

b2) 12 Qxc6 a6c6 13 a4 (13 f3 Whd7!? intending ...Qac8; 13 dxc5?! bxc5 14 Qc2 (intending c4) Taimanov) 13...Qd7 14 Qc2 Qe4? (14...Qe8 is unclear) 15 f3 Qf6 16 Qf5 ± Najdorf-Sliwa, Leipzig OL 1960.

b3) 12 Qb2!? c4 (12...Qe8 13 Qxc6 Qxc6 14 c4 ±; 12...Qxe5 13 dxe5 Qd7 14 f4 c4 15 Qc2 Qc5 16 a4 ±) 13 Qxc6 (13 Qc2 Qxe5 14 dxe5 Qe4 is unclear) 13...Qxc6 14 Qc2 Qe8 15 a4 a5 (15...Qd7) 16 Qe2 Qe7 (16...Qa7?? 17 Qae1 ±) 17 Qe1 (17 Qae1) 17...Qg6 18 f3 (18 Qa3 Whd7 targets a4) 18...Qh5!? 19 e4 ± Yusupov-Lobron, Munich 1992.

12 Qxc6 Wxc6 13 f3 Qe6

Petrosian later chose 13...a5, threatening to exchange bishops, but this was not very useful after 14 Qe2 c4 15 Qc2 b5 16 d4 Qe6 17 Qel Qd7 18 Qg3 f6 19 Qf4 Whf7 20 Qel Qf8 21 Qd6 Qd8 22 Qc5 ½–½ Rabar-Petrosian, Belgrade 1954. Despite the result, the dark-squared bishop is also here a decisive piece.

14 Qe1 Qd7 15 e4 c4 16 Qc2 f5 17 e5 Qf7 18 a4 a5 (D)

In this closed position, it seems that White’s bishop-pair should have little impact on the outcome of the battle. Is White better?

The next move will decide the further course of actions:

Option A: 19 Qb1 – first White prevents Black from becoming active on the queenside by creating a passed a-pawn.

Option B: 19 Whg3 – White keeps the dark-squared bishop ‘alive’ on the c1–h6 diagonal, and if necessary, he will later push the h-pawn to give it more scope.

Option C: 19 f4 – White anticipates Black’s move ...f4.

Test 50

Tal – Hecht
Varna OL 1962
Nimzow/Queen’s Indian [E13]

1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 e6 3 Qf3 b6 4 Qc3 Qb4 5 Qg5
5 g3!? is another line.

5...Qb7 6 e3 h6 7 Qh4 Qxc3+

Interesting is 7...Qg5 8 Qg3 Qe4.
8 Qxc3 Qd6 9 Qd2 e5 10 f3 Qe7 11 e4 Qbd7 12 Qd3 Qf8 (D)

Trying to drive the white bishop out by means of ...Qg6. If 12...g5 13 a2 Qh5, then 14 Qf1! with advantage.
Black played this odd-looking retreat in order to attack d4 and give scope to the c8-bishop, instead of the passive and useless ...\( \mathcal{Q}b6 \).

In this sort of structure the masters think that time is not too important and what counts is how we arrange our pieces.

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

Is White able to take advantage of his temporary space advantage? We have a sort of fixed centre. The pawns on d4 and d5 are mutually blocking and there are no other pawns on the open c- and e-files that can modify this situation.

Choose one of the following plans:

Option A: 13 \( \mathcal{A}c2 \) with the idea of replying to 13...\( \mathcal{Q}c6 \) with 14 \( \mathcal{Q}d3 \). The move threatens Black’s kingside, forcing him to weaken it.

Option B: 13 g4, winning space and exerting pressure on d5.

Option C: 13 \( \mathcal{B}b3 \), pressing on d5.

\section*{Test 52}

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

The point of this check is to obstruct the queen’s bishop’s diagonal, and thus obliging Black to play a quick ...c5.
8...c6 9 d3 c5 10 cxd5 wxd5?!
Smyslov wants to keep a symmetrical structure, but the queen will lose several tempi in the middlegame. 10...exd5! would have led to the usual struggle with hanging pawns, and plenty of possibilities for both sides.

11 dxc5 wxc5?
Very optimistic again, but this is a major mistake. Better were both 11...xc5 and 11...bxc5.

12 d2 c6 13 c1 d6 14 c2 c8 15 0-0!
Endorsed by fine calculations. This is a key moment to question the dubious adventure of the black queen.

15...h6
A sad necessity, since 15...e5 fails on account of 16 a4+ c6 17 b5 xf3+ 18 gxf3 ±.

16 xd1 0-0 17 c3 b8 (D)
A further move with the queen, which finally finds a secure position. However, better was 17...c5 intending 18...h5.

We have reached a symmetric pawn-formation where the white pieces are temporarily displaying more energy than those of the opponent.

We should find the best plan for developing the initiative.

Option A: Transfer the queen to the kingside by way of a4.

Option B: Transfer the bishop to the active square c4, therefore vacating the d-file for the rook, and playing h7+ first in order to take the black king away from the centre given the forthcoming ending.

Option C: Play b4 to give the white queen more space and a good location on b2, thus weakening Black’s kingside.

Option D: Push the e-pawn by e4 and e5, winning more space.

Test 53

Kramnik – Vaganian
Horgen 1995
Queen’s Indian Defence,
Petrosian System [E12]

1 f3 f6 2 d4 e6 3 c4 b6 4 a3 b7 5 c3
d4
Not the most usual move; 5...d5 is more common.

6 dxe4 dxe4 7 e3
Or: 7 f4 c5 8 d5 exd5 9 cxd5 e7 10 b3 0-0 11 d2 g6 12 e3 d6 13 e2 ± Vaganian-Browne. Buenos Aires OL 1978; 7 d2!?.

7...e7
There are many possible moves at this point; for example, 7...c5 8 d3 cxd3 9 wxd3 c6 10 d4 c6 11 d3 e7 12 c4 c7 13 0-0 0-0 14 b3 a6 15 d1 a7 16 g3 ± Gheorghiu-Andersson, London 1980. Or 7...g6!?, 7...f5 and 7...c6?!

8 d3 (D)
8 d2 a5 9 c3 0-0 10 d3 is another line.

We need 8...xd3 9 wxd3 d5 10 d2! 0-0 11 0-0 c6 12 c1 d6 13 e4 e8 14 d5 cxd5
15 exd5 exd5 16 Qg5 g6 17 Wh3 h5 18 Wf3 Wd7 19 xf4 xf4 20 xf4 a6 ± Andersson-Petursson, Reykjavik 1988. 8...f5 can be met by 9 xe4 fx4 10 d2 d5 11 h5+ g6 12 g4 intending f3 with an attack.

9 xe4 dxe4 10 d2 f5 11 f3! (D)

Theoretically speaking, Black did a good job in the opening; his dark-squared bishop solves his structural problems. As a result, e6 is weak and with his last move White is trying to clear the way in order to use the weaknesses along the a8-h1 diagonal. If 11 0-0, then 11...0-0 (or 11...c5) 12 f3 c5! with counterplay.

14 g3 xg3 =.

14...0-0 (D)

It seems like Black has seized the initiative and is preparing a dangerous attack by means of ...f6. His only problem is the sad role played by the queen’s knight.

How should White continue?

Option A: 15 c5 – a positional sacrifice in order to press along the c-file.

Option B: 15 b4 – White quietly strengthens the threat of c5, since Black has no real counterplay.

Test 54

Romero – Morales
Lanzarote 1990
Old Indian Defence [A55]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e5 3 c3 c5 4 e4 dxc4 5 dxc4 d6 6 e5 e4 7 0-0 a6 8 a4

White has some other possible plans, delaying the development of the c1-bishop; for instance, 8 c2, or even 8 d5.

8...0-0 9 a3 b5 (D)

A typical Old Indian position has arisen. Compared to the King’s Indian, Black is playing with his bishop inside the pawn-chain d6-e5, instead of fianchettoing it, which looks somewhat passive. The idea is to press against the centre while expanding on the queenside by means of ...b5, ...b7 and later against e4, after the moves ...e8 and ...f8. It is a sound
set-up, difficult to crack in practice but offering Black very limited active prospects.

White to play. Choose one of the following plans:

Option A: 10 a3, preventing problems against the white centre in face of the latent threat of ...b4 and the ensuing pressure on e4. White will follow up with \textit{W}c2, \textit{W}ad1, etc.

Option B: 10 cxb5 followed by b4, with a favourable release of the tension in the centre.

Option C: 10 c5?!?, playing to break up Black’s central pawn-chain.

Test 55

\textbf{Milev – Petrosian}

\textit{Bucharest 1953}

Modern Benoni, Fianchetto Variation [A60]

\begin{center}
  \begin{tabular}{c}
    1 d4 \textit{W}f6 2 c4 e6 3 g3 c5 4 d5 exd5 5 cxd5 d6 6 \textit{B}g2 g6 7 e4 \textit{B}g7 8 \textit{W}e2 \\
    The knight is poorly placed on this square; it is far away from the theatre of events and does not support the advance e5, which is one of White’s main aims in this type of position. \\
    8...0-0 9 0-0 \textit{B}e8 10 f3?! \\
    10 \textit{B}bc3 b5 11 \textit{B}xb5 \textit{W}xe4 12 \textit{W}e1 would have been better. \\
    10...b5 11 a4 b4 (D)
  \end{tabular}
\end{center}

Black has expanded on the queenside – increasing the scope of the g7-bishop – while White has not been able to play in the centre. The opening has been more than satisfactory for Black.

\begin{center}
  \begin{tabular}{c}
    12 \textit{B}e1 \\
    12 \textit{B}d2 \textit{a}6. \\
    12...\textit{B}d7 13 \textit{f}4 \\
    The opening problems now force White to protect the d3-square. \\
    13...\textit{B}e5 14 \textit{B}d3 \textit{B}fd7 \\
    14...\textit{B}xd3?? 15 \textit{W}xd3 \textit{B}d7 was worth of attention. \\
    15 \textit{B}f2 (D)
  \end{tabular}
\end{center}

White is ready to expel the powerful black knight from e5, beginning to play in the centre. His main aim is to play e5 under good conditions.

\textit{Black has three interesting possibilities at his disposal. Choose the best:}

Option A: 15...a5, securing the b6-square for the knight, being able to continue the development with ...\textit{B}a6.

Option B: 15...c4, trying to ‘justify’ the superfluous piece at d7. This knight will go to c5.
Option C: 15...\(\text{\textit{f}}\)c4 – foreseeing the intentions of the opponent, the knight attacks b2, having the possibility of moving to a5 or b6 later.

Test 56

Donner – Petrosian  
*Gothenburg* IZ 1955  
Modern Benoni, Fianchetto Variation [A62]

1 d4 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 e6 4 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c3 exd5 5 cxd5 d6 6 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f3 g6 7 \(\text{\textit{d}}\)d2 \(\text{\textit{b}}\)d7 8 g3 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g7 9 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g2 0-0 10 0-0 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e7  
10...a6 and 10...\(\text{\textit{e}}\)e8 are the most popular choices in this position.  
11 h3  
11 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c4 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e5 12 \(\text{\textit{d}}\)xe5 \(\text{\textit{w}}\)xe5 13 a4 a6 14 a5 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e8 15 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f4 \(\text{\textit{w}}\)e7 16 \(\text{\textit{b}}\)b3 \(\text{\textit{d}}\)d7 17 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)fe1 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c5 18 \(\text{\textit{a}}\)a4 ± Gligorić-Petrosian, Zurich Ct 1953.  
11...b6 12 a4 \(\text{\textit{a}}\)a6 13 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e1  
Donner often played these sort of prophylactic moves (11 h3, 12 a4, 13 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e1) in his games, waiting for the opponent to show his intentions.  
13...\(\text{\textit{e}}\)e8 14 \(\text{\textit{b}}\)b5  
14 \(\text{\textit{d}}\)de4 deserves serious attention. After the possible continuation 14...\(\text{\textit{c}}\)c7 15 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g5 f6 16 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f4 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e5 White has the better prospects in a complex struggle.  
14...\(\text{\textit{x}}\)xb5 15 axb5 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c7 16 \(\text{\textit{b}}\)b3 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f6 *(D)*

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:  
Option A: 17 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c4, improving the position of his knight now that ...\(\text{\textit{x}}\)xd5 fails.  
Option B: 17 e4.  
Option C: 17 \(\text{\textit{b}}\)b1 – the knight wants to move to c3, where it will restrict Black’s queenside counterplay.

Test 57

Gligorić – Ivkov  
*Novi Sad* 1975  
Old Benoni [A56]

1 d4 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 e6 4 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c3 g6 5 e4 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g7 6 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f3 0-0 7 h3 e5?!  
This reduces the scope of his fianchettoed bishop for nothing.  
8 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g5!  
Pinning the f6-knight in order to hold the f-file thus avoiding a quick ...f5.  
8...\(\text{\textit{x}}\)bd7 *(D)*  
The problem of playing ...h6 – sooner or later necessary – is that White is going to win another tempo attacking this pawn by \(\text{\textit{w}}\)d2. Gligorić-Ljubojević, Manila 1974 continued 8...h6 9 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e3 \(\text{\textit{a}}\)a6 10 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e2 \(\text{\textit{c}}\)c7 11 0-0 \(\text{\textit{h}}\)h7 12 \(\text{\textit{w}}\)d2 h5 13 \(\text{\textit{d}}\)d2 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e8 14 f4 \(\text{\textit{x}}\)xf4 15 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)xf4 a6 16 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f3 f6 17 \(\text{\textit{d}}\)d3 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f7 18 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g3 \(\text{\textit{f}}\)f8 19 \(\text{\textit{h}}\)h4 with advantage.  
9 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e2 a6 10 0-0 h6 11 \(\text{\textit{e}}\)e3 \(\text{\textit{h}}\)h7 12 \(\text{\textit{w}}\)d2 h5 13 \(\text{\textit{g}}\)g5! *(D)*
White wants to prevent the break ...f5 at any cost. If 13 a3, then 13...f5 14 exf5 gxf5, and in case of 13  e1 f5 14 exf5 gxf5 15 f4  e8 (15...h6 16 fxe5  xe5 17 f3) 16 fxe5  xe5 17 f3 b6 Black will follow with the standard manoeuvre ...a7 and the later transfer of the rook to the kingside, with counterplay.

You should now choose the plan with the best prospects of getting the advantage.

**Option A:** 17 h1 – White puts his king into safety before playing the break f4.

**Option B:** 17 b4 – this thematic break on the queenside transfers the struggle from the kingside.

**Option C:** 17 f4 – the g5-knight will later move to f3 in order to fight for the blockading square e5.

**Test 58**

**Szabo – Evans**

*Buenos Aires 1960*

King’s Indian Defence,

Petrosian System [E92]

1  f3 f6 2 d4 g6 3 c4 g7 4 c3 0-0 5 e4
d6 6 e2 e5 7 d5  e8

This is not the most usual move against the Petrosian System, but it quickly prepares the thematic break ...f5. However, 7...a5 followed by ...a6 is more logical.

8 h3 f5 9 exf5 xf5 (D)

This is an important type of position to understand, where Black has taken on f5 with a piece after carrying out the typical ...f5 advance.

White to play. Choose one of the following plans:

**Option A:** 10 g5 – White attacks the weakened square e6.

White has several plans at his disposal, thanks to his space advantage and the restriction of the opponent’s counterplay with ...f5.
Option B: 10 0-0, connecting all his pieces once White has checked that the usual attack on the kingside won’t happen.

Option C: 10 g4, chasing the bishop in order to place a knight on e4.

Test 59

Petrosian – Simagin
Moscow Ch (5) 1956
King’s Indian Defence,
Classical Variation [E91]

1 .df3 6f6 2 c4 e6 3 6c3 d6?!
3...d5 is less compromising.
4 d4 g6 5 e4 6g7 6 6e2 0-0 7 0-0 6g4 8
6e3 6bd7 9 6d2
9 h3 is also possible.
9...6xe2 10 6xe2 e5 11 d5 c5 12 6ab1 6e8
13 f3 f5 14 b4!? cxb4 15 6xb4 b6 16 a4
White temporarily concedes control of the c5-square, but with the advance of his a-pawn he retains the advantage on this side of the board.
16...6f6 17 6h1 6g5 18 6g1 6c7 19 6bb1
6a6 20 6h3 6dc5 21 6xc5 bxc5 (D)
21...6xc5 22 a5?!.

Black has adopted a somewhat passive set-up, but now his situation on the queenside has seemingly become more stable.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: 22 6e3, trying to get rid of the strong black dark-squared bishop, thus taking advantage of the lack of defenders of the black king.

Option B: 22 exf5 – White releases the tension, believing he has the advantage in the centre.

Option C: 22 6a2, preventing the black knight from jumping to b4 before starting action on the b-file and later in the centre.

Test 60

Pachman – Gligorić
Buenos Aires 1960
King’s Indian Defence,
Sämisch Variation [E89]

1 d4 6f6 2 c4 g6 3 6c3 6g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0
6 6e3 e5
The classical reply, instead of 6...c5 or the ‘modern’ system with 6...6c6.
7 d5 c6 8 6ge2 cxd5 9 cxd5 a6 10 6d2
6bd7 11 g4 h5 12 6g5
A sacrifice with unpredictable results, instead of 12 g5.
12...hxg4 13 fxg4 6c5 14 6g3 6xg4 (D)

White has been trying to refute Black’s aggressive 11...h5 by sacrificing a pawn and opening lines. Apparently, the pressure on f6 and the threat of the assault h4-h5 look like enough compensation for the pawn.

White to play. Choose one of the three following possibilities in order to maintain the initiative:
Option A: 15 \textit{g}2, strengthening e4 and the f3-square, avoiding the entry of the black bishop before playing h3.

Option B: 15 h3 – White must proceed speedily.

Option C: 15 b4 – attacking the knight before making a demonstration on the kingside. The weakness of the queenside is not so important; what counts is time.

Test 61

M. Gomez – Romero
\textit{Paz de Ziganda} 1994
King’s Indian Defence, 5 h3 [E71]

1 d4 \textit{f}6 2 c4 g6 3 \textit{c}3 \textit{g}7 4 e4 d6 5 h3 0-0 6 \textit{e}3 e5 7 d5 \textit{a}6

7...a5 is more flexible; the problem with this move is that sometimes the knight might be out of play.

8 g4!?

An aggressive attempt, but suitable to oppose Black’s counterplay based on the break ...f5. White keeps in reserve the manoeuvre \textit{g}e2-g3, strengthening the kingside pressure, until the conditions are more appropriate. 8 \textit{f}3 is the usual move.

8...\textit{c}5 9 f3 e6 10 \textit{d}2 cxd5 11 cxd5 \textit{d}7 12 b4!? \textit{a}6 13 a3 \textit{e}8 (D)

White has played on the whole board, quite a normal thing in the 5 h3 line, risking the safety of his king in return for the bad situation of the black a6-knight. White’s concept is interesting, since he made almost all his moves with pawns therefore disregarding development. Now he must pay attention to the safety of his king.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: 14 \textit{d}3 – White opposes Black’s planned break on f5.

Option B: 14 \textit{x}a6 – White, behind in development, is seeking safety for his king by playing \textit{g}e2 and 0-0 immediately. He thinks the king will be safe on the kingside.

Option C: 14 h4 – White wants to close the kingside and meet ...f5 with g5.

Test 62

Zielinska – Romero
\textit{Merida rpd} 2000
King’s Indian Defence, Classical Variation [E91]

1 d4 \textit{f}6 2 c4 g6 3 \textit{c}3 \textit{g}7 4 e4 d6 5 \textit{f}3 0-0 6 \textit{e}2 \textit{g}4 7 \textit{e}3 \textit{df}7 8 \textit{c}1 (D)

8...\textit{e}6!?

Black’s idea is to play ...c5 at once. The problem of playing 8...c5 right now is that after 9 d5 Black could barely free himself with the break ...e6, due to d6 not being well defended. Other possibilities are 8...\textit{a}6 and the classical 8...\textit{e}5 9 d5 f5.

9 0-0 c5 10 d5 exd5 11 exd5 \textit{xf}3 12 \textit{xf}3 f5
Black should win more space for his knights so they can develop some prospects in the future.

13 \( \text{Wd2} \) \( \text{Ee5?!} \)
Surely 13... \( \text{Ef6} \) was preferable.
14 \( \text{Ee2} \) \( \text{Ebd7} \) 15 \( \text{f4} \) \( \text{Ef7} \) \( (D) \)

A good alternative to the better-known move 7 \( \text{Ee3} \).
7... \( \text{Ebd7} \) 8 \( \text{d5} \) \( \text{Eb6} \) \( (D) \)
If 8... \( \text{cx}d5 \), then 9 \( \text{E xd5} \) taking advantage of the fact that the knight can no longer move to c6.

This situation is more characteristic of the Averbakh System, where Black has a strong dark-squared bishop, but is short of space to manoeuvre.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: 16 \( g4 \) – White tries to open the game at any price, activating his light-squared bishop. Besides, he wants to use the weakness of the e6-square quickly.

Option B: 16 \( \text{Eh1} \), attempting to penetrate on the e-file in the medium term and use the e6-square.

Option C: 16 \( a3 \), with the aim of opening a gap in the queenside, since that is the side of the board where it is most natural to launch an attack.

Test 63

Petrosian – Najdorf

\( \text{Bled 1961} \)
King’s Indian Defence,
Sämisch Variation [E80]

1 \( d4 \) \( \text{Ef6} \) 2 \( c4 \) \( g6 \) 3 \( \text{Ec3} \) \( \text{Eg7} \) 4 \( e4 \) \( d6 \) 5 \( f3 \) \( e5 \) 6 \( \text{Ege2} \) \( c6 \) 7 \( \text{Eg5} \)

The King’s Indian is noted for the flexibility of the plans for both sides. Shortly, the
manoeuvres that both sides are carrying out on the queenside will lead to action on both flanks.

*It is time to make a decision, because we are facing a critical position, where further delay could be fatal.*

**Option A:** 16 g4 – White takes prophylactic measures on the kingside.

**Option B:** 16 0-0 in order to prepare the break f4 in a suitable manner.

**Option C:** 16 0-0, following the idea started with the previous move, and planning to control the c6-square in the future.

---

**Test 64**

*Karpov – Kasparov*

*New York/Lyons Wch (19) 1990*

King’s Indian Defence,
Classical Variation [E92]

1 d4 0-0 2 c4 g6 3 0-0 0-0 4 e4 d6 5 f3 c6 6 d3 c5 7 e3 e5 8 d5 g4 9 g5 f6 10 h4 a6 11 d2 h6

11...h5!?.

12 a3 f7 13 f3 b6!?

With the idea of moving the bishop to c3. The positions now appearing on the board have many similarities with those derived from the Petrosonian System, 7 d5.

14 f2 f5 15 c2 (D)

---

[Diagram](image)

---

White is behind in development. With his last move he is trying to exchange on f5 and then attack it by h3.

*Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:*

**Option A:** 18...g5, attacking g2 immediately.

**Option B:** 18...f4 – Black does not fear the reply g3 and threatens to place his pieces behind the bishop, using the g5-square as a base.

**Option C:** 18...c7 is a useful move in order to start action on the queenside.

**Option D:** 18...g5 – Black’s pieces begin to become active and are exerting pressure on e4.

---

**Test 65**

*A. Petrosian – A.N. Panchenko*

*USSR U-26 Ch (Vilnius) 1978*

Queen’s Gambit, Tarrasch Defence [D34]

1 f3 d5 2 g3 f6 3 g2 c5 4 0-0 c6 5 d4 e6
Of course it was possible to play 5...cxd4, but White will be playing a Grünfeld Defence with an extra tempo.

Of course, Black can delay this move.

6 \text{x} f 6
6 \text{h} 4 leads to the main lines.

6...\text{x} f 6 7 e 3
7 e 4 is deemed unfavourable after 7...d x e 4 8
\text{d} x e 4 \text{c} 6 9 \text{x} f 6+ \text{x} f 6.
7...0-0 8 \text{c} 1 c 6 9 \text{d} 3 \text{d} 7 10 0-0 d x c 4 11
\text{x} c 4 e 5 (D)

With this customary procedure in the centre
we get a typical QGD position. In order to
achieve some advantage, White must allow
the creation of an isolated pawn, and rely on his
greater space and piece activity.

12 \text{h} 3
The prophylactic move 12 h 3 was adopted
by Kasparov and became popular for several
years, but it doesn’t achieve a great deal either;
the same goes for 12 \text{e} 4 e x d 4 13 \text{x} f 6+.

12...e x d 4 13 e x d 4 \text{e} 8 14 \text{d} 2 \text{b} 6
The alternative is 14...\text{f} 8 to oppose the
pressure along the a2-g8 diagonal. After 15 d 5!
\text{c} x c 3 16 \text{x} c 3 e x d 5 17 \text{x} d 5 \text{f} 6 (17...\text{b} 8?
18 \text{x} f 7+ followed by \text{f} 4+) 18 \text{d} 1 \text{b} 8 19
\text{d} 4 \text{xd} 4 20 \text{xd} 4 \text{x} 8 and 21...\text{e} 6 Black
equalized in the game Andersson-Wedberg,
Haining 1989.

15 \text{e} 1 e x e 1+ 16 \text{x} e 1 \text{g} 4 17 \text{e} 5 \text{x} e 5
18 \text{x} e 5
Seemingly, all these exchanges are profitless
for White in a grandmaster duel, but White’s
initiative is enduring.

18...\text{d} 7 19 \text{e} 3 \text{f} 6 20 \text{h} 3 \text{d} 7 (D)
\text{White has a slight edge, thanks to his strong
bishop pointing at f7. But is this enough? We

need to add a second problem for the black
army.}

\textbf{Option A:} 21 \text{e} 4 – White believes that in
this way he gets rid of Black’s strongest defensive piece.

\textbf{Option B:} 21 \text{e} 2 – White prefers to double
on the e-file. The threat of \text{e} 7 looks strong.

\textbf{Option C:} 21 d 5, trying to open lines and diagonals where White is better arranged.

\textbf{Test 67}

\textbf{Bronstein – Botvinnik}
\textit{Moscow Wch (18) 1951}
Queen’s Gambit, Semi-Slav [D15]

1 d 4 d 5 2 c 4 c 6 3 \text{c} 3 \text{f} 6 4 \text{f} 3 e 6 5 e 3
Avoiding the complications of the Botvinnik System that follows after 5 \text{g} 5 d x c 4.

5...a 6
A nowadays very topical move, by which
Black fights for the initiative at an early stage.
Black also avoids the Meran, which arises after
5...\text{bd} 7 6 \text{d} 3 d x c 4 7 \text{x} c 4 b 5.

6 \text{d} 3 b 5 7 b 3
According to Botvinnik, 7 c 5 is premature in
this position on account of 7...\text{bd} 7 followed by 8...e 5.

7...\text{bd} 7
7...b x c 4 8 b x c 4 d x c 4 9 \text{x} c 4 c 5 is another possibility.

8 0-0 \text{b} 7 9 c 5!
With the bishop on b7, White decides to
close the centre. Now 9...e 5 will be dubious due
to 10 dxe5 \( \heartsuit \)g4 11 e6 fxe6 12 \( \heartsuit \)d4 \( \heartsuit \)xc5 13 \( \heartsuit \)xg4 \( \heartsuit \)xd3 14 \( \heartsuit \)xe6+ \( \heartsuit \)e7 15 \( \heartsuit \)f5.

9...\( \heartsuit \)e7
Botvinnik proposed fianchettoing this bishop.
10 a3 a5
Preventing 11 e4.
11 \( \heartsuit \)b2 0-0 12 \( \heartsuit \)c2 (D)

White has a space advantage, even though there are few possible breaks in the present position.

There are two ideas in order to force actions. Please consider the pros and cons of both carefully:

**Option A:** 27 \( \heartsuit \)xb5 – a sacrifice in order to open a rip in Black’s ‘rock solid’ position.

**Option B:** 27 g4, keeping every possibility open on the kingside.

**Test 68**

**Petrosian – Sorokin**
*Tbilisi Ch 1945*  
Queen’s Gambit, Slav [D14]

1 c4 \( \heartsuit \)f6 2 \( \heartsuit \)c3 c6 3 d4 d5 4 cxd5 cxd5 5 \( \heartsuit \)f3 \( \heartsuit \)c6 6 \( \heartsuit \)f4 \( \heartsuit \)f5 7 e3 \( \heartsuit \)b6?!

This aggressive and optimistic move is not good since it disregards the development of the black pieces, though according to the state of opening theory in 1945 it was very playable.

8 a3! e6

8...\( \heartsuit \)xb2 is bad due to 9 \( \heartsuit \)a4 \( \heartsuit \)c2 10 \( \heartsuit \)xc2 \( \heartsuit \)xc2 11 \( \heartsuit \)c5 (Makogonov-Ravinsky, USSR Ch (Moscow) 1944); e.g., 11...b6? 12 \( \heartsuit \)b5!.

9 \( \heartsuit \)d3
Petrosian perfectly understands that in this kind of pawn-formation the exchange of these bishops favours Black, but the plan is to take advantage of the situation of the queen at b6 and play a quick b4 and \( \heartsuit \)a4.

9...\( \heartsuit \)xd3 10 \( \heartsuit \)xd3 \( \heartsuit \)c8 11 0-0 \( \heartsuit \)a5 (D)
Black anticipates 12 b4.

An uncompromising battle will start after 10...\(\text{\textordfiddle d7}\) (intending ...f5 and ...\(\text{\textordfiddle e6-e4}\)); however, Black had a quiet soul.

11 \(\text{\textordfiddle e5}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle xe2}\) 12 \(\text{\textordfiddle xe2}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle e7}\) 13 \(\text{\textordfiddle ad1}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle e8}\) 14 \(\text{\textordfiddle g4}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle d6}\)? (D)

Black neglects his development. If he did not want to venture the risky 14...\(\text{\textordfiddle xc3}\)?? 15 bxc3 \(\text{\textordfiddle a3}\) 16 \(\text{\textordfiddle d3}\)! (intending e4 and \(\text{\textordfiddle g3}\)), at least he could have tried an immediate development of the knight to d7, by means of 14...\(\text{\textordfiddle e6}\).

While White organized his forces accurately, Black has been playing in an optimistic and superficial way. The knight is still at b8!

White must evaluate which plan to follow, whether to sharpen the position or to keep the advantages of his position.

Option A: 15 f4, giving the white pieces new possibilities on the kingside.

Option B: 15 e4 – White sacrifices a pawn in order to give his pieces new important squares.

Option C: 15 \(\text{\textordfiddle d3}\), keeping the positional advantages.

\[\text{Test 69}\]

Petrosian – Pachman
Saltsjöbaden IZ 1952
Queen’s Gambit,
Ragozin Defence [D38]

1 \(\text{d4}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle f6}\) 2 \(\text{c4}\) \(\text{e6}\) 3 \(\text{\textordfiddle f3}\) \(\text{d5}\) 4 \(\text{cx}\text{d5}\) \(\text{exd5}\) 5 \(\text{\textordfiddle c3}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle b4}\)

Introducing the Ragozin Variation.

6 \(\text{\textordfiddle g5}\) \(\text{h6}\) 7 \(\text{\textordfiddle xf6}\)

This exchange does not give White real prospects of an advantage. Stronger is 7 \(\text{\textordfiddle h4}\) c5 8 \(\text{\textordfiddle c1}\).

7...\(\text{\textordfiddle xf6}\) 8 \(\text{e3}\) 0-0 9 \(\text{\textordfiddle e2}\) \(\text{c6}\) 10 0-0 \(\text{\textordfiddle g4}\)

\[\text{Test 70}\]

Petrosian – Taimanov
USSR Ch (Moscow) 1955
Queen’s Gambit, Semi-Slav [D46]

1 \(\text{d4}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle f6}\) 2 \(\text{c4}\) \(\text{e6}\) 3 \(\text{\textordfiddle f3}\) \(\text{d5}\) 4 \(\text{\textordfiddle c3}\) \(\text{c6}\) 5 \(\text{e3}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle bd7}\) 6 \(\text{\textordfiddle d3}\) \(\text{\textordfiddle b4}\)?!

This development is considered dubious in the Semi-Slav, because Black needs this bishop
in the middlegame, but in those years the move was quite normal.

7 0-0
7 a3?! is strong, forcing the bishop to decide its destiny.

7...0-0 8 w.c2 6.d6?
Starting a plan already suggested by Chigorin, but it is better to play first 8...dx.c4 9 6.xc4 6.d6 intending ...e5, as later pointed out by Petrosian.

9 b3!
After this move Black is unable to react in the centre as he wished.

9...dx.c4
9...e5?! 10 cxd5 cxd5 11 6.b5! ±.

10 bxc4 e5 11 6.b2 6.e8 12 6.e4! ±
A good move, removing Black’s best defensive piece and establishing dangerous threats against the king.

12...6.xe4 13 6.xe4 h6
After 13...g6 Black would have more defensive chances, according to Petrosian. 14 6.ad1 (14 6.d3?! 6.e7 15 c5 6.c7 16 6.c4 was suggested by Novotelnov) 14...6.e7 15 6.f6e1 f5 16 dxe5 6.b4 (Petrosian) – probably White has compensation for the exchange.

14 6.ad1 ex.d4 (D)

White is facing a difficult decision. How to recapture on d4? If he takes with the pawn, then he gets hanging pawns, with all their dynamic power. If he takes with a piece, the c4-pawn will be obviously abandoned to its fate.

What do you choose?

Option A: 15 6.xd4 in order to jump to f5.

Option B: 15 exd4, creating a powerful pawn-formation in the centre.

Option C: 15 6.h7+ – White wants to retake on d4 with the rook, but he does not want to do it immediately on account of the sound reply 15...6.f6!.

Test 71

Kasparov – H. Olafsson
Dubai OL 1986
Queen’s Gambit Declined [D55]

1 d4 6.f6 2 c4 e6 3 6.f3 d5 4 6.c3 6.e7 5 6.g5 h6 6 6.xf6 6.xf6 7 e3 0-0 8 6.c1 c6 9 6.d3 6.d7 10 0-0 dx.c4 11 6.xc4 c5
Not the main line, since theory considers that the centralized white knights will create problems for Black.

12 6.e2
The hasty 12 d5 allows the freeing 12...6.b6.

12...6.a6
Another line which deserves attention is 12...cx.d4 13 ex.d4 6.b6 14 6.d3 6.g6! 15 6.e4 6.b8. Even though White has a space advantage, Black is solid.

13 6.fd1 cx.d4 14 6.xd4 6.e7 15 6.e4 (D)

15...6.e5

16 6.h5!
An improvement over the game Kasparov-Karpov, London/Leningrad (12) Wch 1986, where there followed 16 ♖f3 ♕b8 17 ♕d2 b5 18 ♖e2 ♖f6 and Black fully equalized.

16...♕d8 17 ♖f1

17 ♖b3 is another good retreat.

17...♕b8 (D)

Kasparov gathered a lot of experience in the Queen’s Gambit thanks to his encounters for the world championship and his preparations to face Karpov. Although Black has the bishop-pair, there are several reasons for White to be optimistic: his space advantage, strong centralized pieces and Black’s problems with piece communication.

How do you continue?

Option A: 18 ♖d2, in order to double rooks on the d-file.

Option B: 18 g3 to put pressure on the light-squared diagonal with the bishop.

Option C: 18 ♕a5, creating problems on the queenside.

1970s, proving that Black could equalize with active development on the queenside. The alternative is to keep the position closed by means of 6...c6.

7 ♕c2

The main line. 7 ♖a3 ♖xa3! and 7 ♕e5 are less promising for White.

7...a6 8 ♖xc4 (D)

8 a4 is an interesting alternative, in order to prevent ...b5, but has a negative side: the weakening of b4.

8...b5 9 ♕c2 ♕b7

Black’s plan is to prepare the break on c5 and White’s is to impede this break, keeping his space advantage and control of the centre.

10 ♕g5

Other options are 10 ♖d2 (threatening ♕a5!) and 10 ♕f4. With this latter move Ribli won a pretty model game against Karpov, with a beautiful ending.

10...♕bd7

Here 10...♕e4 does not work: 11 ♕c1 ♕c8 12 ♕bd2 ♕b7 13 e4! with advantage to White in Mednis-Burger, Brighton 1983.

11 ♕xf6 ♕xf6

White cedes the bishop in order to win a tempo for controlling the important square c5. If Black gets to play the ...c5 break, then he would free himself completely. 11...♕xf6?! is strongly met by 12 ♕g5!.

12 ♕bd2 ♕e8 13 ♕b3

Another thematic move in this type of position.

13...♕e4 (D)
13...c5?! 14 dxc5 a5 15 a4 e4 16 c3 b4 17 c3 d5 (Andersson-Petursson, Reggio Emilia 1989/90) is an interesting idea, but White is better after 18 fd1 e7 19 fd4.

14 c3 d5 15 d2 b4
15...c5 led to a nice advantage for White in the ending after 16 xc5 xc5 17 dxc5 xc5 18 ac1 xc1 19 xc1 f6 20 xd8 xd8 21 e5! in Larsen-Tal, Naestved 1985.

16 fc1 d5 17 d1 a5?
Weakening his position yet more! Necessary was 17...xb3! 18 xb3 c5 with practical equality.

18 a3 a4 19 c5 c6 (D)

White has prevented Black’s freeing move (...c5), which is typical in this line of the Catalan. However, Black has actively developed his pieces on the queenside.

What must White do now?

Option A: 20 e3 – White strengthens his centre before undertaking decisive action.

Option B: 20 e4, speculating on the unstable position of the d5-bishop.

Option C: 20 b7 – little by little, White strangles Black on the queenside.

Test 73

Adianto – Seirawan
Jakarta 1994
Queen’s Gambit Declined, Exchange Variation [D36]

1 d4 f6 2 c4 e6 3 c3 d5 4 cxd5 exd5 5 g5 c6 6 e3 e7 7 c2 g4?!
With the idea of ...h5-g6 exchanging the bad bishop, but this plan is not feasible.

8 h3! e6
8...h5? 9 f4! + intending 10 g4 g6 11 f5.

9 d3 h5 10 xe7 xe7
Attempting to follow with ...g6, ...g7 and ...

11 g4!
Seizing more space on the kingside, together with the idea of 0-0-0.

11...f6 12 ge2 bd7 13 0-0-0 0-0-0 (D)

A position of the Queen’s Gambit where White (and also Black as a logical result) castled queenside in order to keep the initiative. The plans are different from the positions with opposite castling.

How do you play?
Option A: 14 \( \text{Q}g3 \) and carefully preparing the e4 break with f3.
Option B: 14 f4, in order to push back the black pieces, thus seizing more space.
Option C: 14 \( \text{Qa}4 \), with the idea of \( \text{Qc}5 \).

Test 74

Karpov – Korneev
Spanish Chl (Lanzarote) 2003
Queen’s Gambit Declined [D30]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 \( \text{Qf3} \) \( \text{Qf6} \) 4 e3 \( \text{Qe7} \)
If Black is going to play \(...c5\) maybe it is better to play it immediately.
5 \( \text{Qbd}2?! \)
This development is a speciality of Anatoly Karpov.
5...0-0 6 b3 c5
Another possibility is to play 6...b6 7 \( \text{Qd}3 \) \( \text{Qb}7 \) 8 \( \text{Qc}2 \) \( \text{Qbd}7 \) 9 cxd5 exd5 10 0-0 c5 11 \( \text{Qb}2 \) ±.
7 dxc5
In a game against Morović, Karpov played 7 \( \text{Qb}2 \), which is probably less accurate.
7...\( \text{Qxe}5 \) 8 a3! (\( D \))
It is very important to play this move now. If 8 \( \text{Qb}2 \) \( \text{Qc}6 \) 9 a3 (9 cxd5 exd5 10 a3 d4), then 9...d4.

8...a5
After 8...b6!??, with the idea of taking with the knight, we would get a different kind of position.
9 \( \text{Qb}2 \) \( \text{Qc}6 \) 10 cxd5 exd5

10...\( \text{Qxd}5 \) 11 \( \text{Qc}2 \) and \( \text{Qd}3 \) gives White good development.
11 \( \text{Qd}3 \) \( \text{Qe}7 \)
If 11...d4 12 e4 \( \text{Qg}4 \), then 13 \( \text{Qc}2 \)! (or 13 \( \text{Qc}1 \)) is an important move in order to break the pin, followed by h3 and preventing \(...\text{Qe}5\), with a comfortable game.
12 0-0
Creating a subtle tactical threat.
12...\( \text{Qd}6 \)
12...\( \text{Qe}4 \) 13 \( \text{Qc}2 \) f5 ± was another possibility, seeking active play, but weakening many dark squares, including the long diagonal. Bad is 12...\( \text{Qg}4 \)? 13 \( \text{Qxf}6 \) \( \text{Qxf}6 \) 14 \( \text{Qxh}7+)\).
13 \( \text{Qb}1 \) (\( D \))

This is better than moving the queen to c2 because there it will waste time.

13...\( \text{Qe}5 \)
After this move, the complications subside and White has a comfortable and lasting advantage. As a rule, it is good for the attacker to keep the bishops of the same colour as the isolated pawn, and exchange the others (i.e. the dark-squared ones here). The exchange of pieces increases the advantage, since it avoids possible counterplay. After 13...h6 14 h3, one idea for White is \( \text{Qa}2 \), \( \text{Qac}1 \) and \( \text{Qa}1 \), though not right now due to \(...\text{Qe}4\).
14 \( \text{Qxe}5 \) \( \text{Qxe}5 \) 15 \( \text{Qf}3 \)
If 15 \( \text{Qxe}5 \) \( \text{Qxe}5 \) 16 \( \text{Qf}3 \), then 16...\( \text{Qd}6 \), a square where the queen is better placed than on e7.
15...\( \text{Qxb}2 \) 16 \( \text{Qxb}2 \) \( \text{Qg}4 \) 17 \( \text{Qd}4 \) \( \text{Qfc}8 \) 18 \( \text{Qfc}1 \)
White should play 18 h3 right now and then see what happens, due to the additional possibility of moving the rook to d1. Of course, generally speaking, it is good to exchange a pair of rooks, on account of the weaknesses on the c-file.

18...h6 19 h3 d7 (D)

White has exchanged the dark-squared bishops in his battle against the isolated pawn, which is always desirable.

But now what?

Option A: 20 b4 – White needs to create trouble on the queenside.

Option B: 20 c2 – the knight walks away from its superb position in order to help in the attack against the isolated pawn.

Option C: 20 c3 – White prepares to double rooks on the c-file.

Test 75

Korchnoi – Karpov
Merano Wch (9) 1981
Queen’s Gambit Declined [D53]

1 c4 e6 2 c3 d5 3 d4 e7

Using this sequence of moves, Black avoids some lines where White’s king’s knight is developed to e2; for example, 3...f6 4 cxd5 exd5 5 g5 c6 6 c2 e7 7 e3 bd7 8 d3 0-0 9 ge2 followed by the typical advance f3 and e4.

4 f3

4 cxd5 exd5 5 f4 is another possibility.

4...f6 5 g5 h6 6 h4 0-0 7 c1

7 e3 is the usual continuation.

7 dxc4 8 e3

Interesting is 8 e4!? since 8 xe4? does not work on account of 9 xe7 xc3 10 xd8 xd1 11 e7 xb2 (not, of course, 11 e8?? since 12 a3 wins a piece) 12 xf8 with a large advantage for White.

8...c5 9 xc4 exd4 10 exd4 c6 11 0-0 (D)

We have a Isolated Queen’s Pawn structure. This arrangement appears regularly in the Queen’s Gambit, and other openings too. As a rule, simplifications favour the side fighting against the isolated pawn, since in this way the opponent’s dynamic possibilities are diminished. Black to play.

Choose one of these four possibilities for Black:

Option A: Exchange pieces by 11 h5.

Option B: Exchange pieces by 11 d5.

Option C: Continue development by 11 b6 and b7.

Option D: Put pressure on d4 by playing 11 b6 followed by xd8.

Test 76

Karpov – Kasparov
Moscow Wch (4) 1985
Queen’s Gambit Declined [D55]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 c3 e7 4 f3 f6 5 g5 h6 6 xf6
The main alternative is 6 \( \text{h}4 0-0 7 \text{e}3 \text{b}6 \) entering Tartakower’s Defence (or else 7...\( \text{d}44 \), the Lasker Defence).

6...\( \text{x}f6 \) 7 \( \text{e}3 \) 0-0 8 \( \text{c}2 \)
8 \( \text{c}1 \) c6 9 \( \text{d}3 \) dxc4 10 \( \text{x}c4 \) \( \text{d}7 \) 11 0-0 \( \text{e}5 \) 12 \( \text{h}3 \) is the most tested line.

8...\( \text{a}6 \)
8...\( \text{c}5 \) 9 dxc5 \( \text{a}5 \) (9...dxc4) is another possibility.

9 \( \text{d}1 \)
9 a3!? looks very interesting, since it restricts the black knight.

9...\( \text{c}5 \) 10 dxc5 \( \text{a}5 \) 11 cxd5 \( \text{c}5 \) 12 \( \text{d}2 \)
Both with 12 dxe6 \( \text{xe}6 \), and 12 d6 \( \text{d}7 \) followed by ...\( \text{ac}8 \) Black would have enormous compensation for the lost pawn.

12...\( \text{d}8 \) 13 \( \text{d}4 \)!
If 13 \( \text{e}2 \), then 13...\( \text{x}c3 \) 14 \( \text{xc}3 \) \( \text{xc}3+ \) 15 \( \text{xc}3 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) with complete equality.

13...\( \text{d}5 \) 14 \( \text{e}2 \) \( \text{b}6 \)
14...\( \text{e}6 \)?? 15 \( \text{b}3 \) \( \text{xc}3 \) 16 \( \text{xc}3 \) with some advantage for White.

15 0-0 \( \text{e}4 \)
White is better after 15...\( \text{e}6 \) 16 \( \text{f}3 \) d4 17 \( \text{e}4 \).

16 \( \text{c}2 \) \( \text{c}3 \) 17 \( \text{xc}3 \) \( \text{e}6 \) 18 \( \text{c}2 \)\!
19 \( \text{b}1 \) \( \text{c}7 \) 20 \( \text{d}2 \) \( \text{dc}8 \) (D)

Option A: Taking on e6, freeing Black of the weakness of the isolated queen’s pawn, but weakening the light squares on the kingside.

Option B: Play 21 \( \text{fd}1 \), reinforcing the position and leaving Black with the theoretical weakness of his isolated queen’s pawn.

---

**Test 77**

**Karpov – Kasparov**

*Moscow Wch (27) 1984/5*

Queen’s Gambit Declined [D55]

1 \( \text{f}3 \) d5 2 d4 \( \text{f}6 \) 3 c4 e6 4 \( \text{c}3 \) \( \text{e}7 \) 5 \( \text{g}5 \) h6 6 \( \text{xf}6 \)
6 h4 is played more often.

6...\( \text{xf}6 \) 7 \( \text{e}3 \) 0-0 8 \( \text{c}2 \)
The most usual move is 8 \( \text{c}1 \) c6 9 \( \text{d}3 \) dxc4 10 \( \text{xc}4 \) \( \text{d}7 \) 11 0-0 \( \text{e}5 \) 12 \( \text{h}3 \). Both 8 \( \text{b}3 \) and 8 \( \text{d}2 \) are also played frequently.

8...\( \text{c}5 \)
8...\( \text{a}6 \) is an interesting alternative.

9 dxc5 dxc4
Also 9...\( \text{a}5 \) and 9...\( \text{c}6 \) have been tested.

10 \( \text{xc}4 \) \( \text{a}5 \)
10...\( \text{d}7 \)?? looks interesting here.

11 0-0 \( \text{xc}3 \) 12 \( \text{xc}3 \) \( \text{xc}3 \) 13 bxc3 \( \text{d}7 \)
14 c6 bxc6 15 \( \text{ab}1 \) \( \text{b}6 \) 16 \( \text{e}2 \) c5 (D)

---

Black has good counterplay thanks to the activity of the rooks along the c-file. White now faces a dilemma: he must continue playing against the isolated pawn; or he must investigate the possibilities offered by the exchange on e6.

Choose one of the following two possibilities:

---

Here we have an almost symmetrical position, with weaknesses in the a- and c-pawns. White’s pieces are more actively arranged but it is not clear if this fact is enough for a substantial advantage.
Choose one of the following possibilities:

**Option A:** Play 17 \( \text{Qd}1 \) controlling the open file.

**Option B:** Play 17 \( \text{Qe}5 \) with the idea of replying to \( ...\text{Qb}7 \) with \( \text{Qd}7 \).

**Option C:** Play the mysterious rook move 17 \( \text{Qc}1 \), strengthening the c3-pawn and enabling the centralization of the white king.

---

**Test 78**

**Karpov – Lautier**

*Biel 1992*

Queen’s Gambit, Semi-Slav [D45]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 \( \text{Qc}3 \) \( \text{Qf}6 \) 4 e3 e6 5 \( \text{Qf}3 \) \( \text{Qbd}7 \) 6 \( \text{Qc}2 \)

Another possibility is 6 \( \text{Qd}3 \) dxc4 7 \( \text{Qxc}4 \) b5, the famous Meran Variation.

6...\( \text{Qd}6 \) 7 \( \text{Qe}2 \)

7 \( \text{Qd}3 \) has been extensively tested in this position.

7...0-0 8 0-0 \( \text{Qe}8 \)

The alternative is 8...dxc4 9 \( \text{Qxc}4 \) b5 10 \( \text{Qe}2 \) \( \text{Qb}7 \) (10...a6?).

9 \( \text{Qd}1 \) \( \text{Qe}7 \) 10 h3 \( \text{b}6 \) (D)

10...h6 is the most usual move.

---

15 \( \text{Qxd}6 \) \( \text{Qxd}6 \) 16 \( \text{Qe}5 \) \( \text{Qxe}5 \) 17 dxe5 \( \text{Qc}7 \)

18 \( \text{Qf}3 \) \( \text{Qa}8 \) (D)

White has some spatial advantage in this position, but the real question is whether Black is able to push his c-pawn to c5 under favourable conditions. If so, then the game will be balanced.

Choose one of the following possibilities:

**Option A:** Take on d8 followed by playing \( \text{Qd}1 \).

**Option B:** Play 19 \( \text{Qh}4 \) since Black is threatening to play \( ...\text{c}5 \).

**Option C:** Sacrifice a pawn by means of 19 \( \text{c}5 \), preventing the freeing of the a8-bishop.

---

**Test 79**

**Karpov – Kasparov**

*Moscow Wch (9) 1984/5*

Queen’s Gambit, Tarrasch Defence [D34]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 \( \text{Qf}3 \) c5 4 cxd5 exd5 5 g3

This is Schlechter’s idea against the Tarrasch Defence.

5...\( \text{Qf}6 \) 6 \( \text{Qg}2 \) \( \text{Qe}7 \) 0-0 0-0 8 \( \text{Qc}3 \) \( \text{Qc}6 \) 9 \( \text{Qg}5 \)

Another possibility is 9 dxc5 \( \text{Qxc}5 \) 10 \( \text{Qg}5 \)

11 \( \text{Qxf}6 \) \( \text{Qxf}6 \) 12 \( \text{Qd}5 \) \( \text{Qd}8 \) 13 \( \text{Qd}2 \), played many times.

9...\( \text{c}xd4 \) 10 \( \text{Qxd}4 \) h6 11 \( \text{Qe}3 \) \( \text{Qe}8 \)

11...\( \text{Qg}4 \) is the main alternative to the text-move.

12 \( \text{Qb}3 \) (D)
One of the many ideas tested in this position. The idea is to put pressure on the d5-pawn while freeing d1 for a rook.

12...\(\text{Qa}5\) 13 \(\text{Wc}2\) \(\text{g4}\) 14 \(\text{f5}\) \(\text{c8}\)

The sharp 14...\(\text{b4}\) is interesting even though after 15 \(\text{d4}\) \(\text{xc3}\) 16 \(\text{xc3}\) \(\text{xe2}\) 17 \(\text{d3}\) White has compensation for the pawn.

15 \(\text{d4}\)?

Freeing e3 for the knight, with pressure on d5.

15...\(\text{c5}\) 16 \(\text{xc5}\) \(\text{xc5}\) 17 \(\text{e3!}\) \(\text{e6}\)

Of course, 17...d4 does not work on account of 18 \(\text{ad1}\).

18 \(\text{ad1}\) \(\text{c8}\) 19 \(\text{a4}\)

19 \(\text{b1?!}\).

19...\(\text{d8}\) 20 \(\text{d3}\) a6 21 \(\text{f1}\) \(\text{c4}\) 22 \(\text{xc4}\) \(\text{xc4}\) 23 \(\text{a5}\) \(\text{(D)}\)

23 \(\text{b3?!}\).

We are now in a characteristic ending of bishop versus knight. In this position the knight is superior to the bishop. This kind of ending appears with some frequency in the Queen’s Gambit.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 46...\(\text{g6}\), maintaining the tension.

Option B: Take on h4 and then follow with \(\text{g6}\).

Option C: In both cases White keeps a minimal theoretical advantage, although Black should draw without trouble.

Test 80

Korchnoi – Gheorghiu

Bucharest-Leningrad match 1968

Slav/Grünfeld [D94]

1 \(\text{d4}\) d5 2 c4 \(\text{c6}\) 3 \(\text{\textit{c3}}\) \(\text{\textit{f6}}\) 4 e3 \(\text{g6}\)

Entering Schlechter’s Variation, which is a hybrid of the Slav and Grünfeld.

5 \(\text{f3}\) \(\text{g7}\) 6 \(\text{e2}\) \(0-0\) 7 0-0 \(\text{bd7}\)

More appealing is 7...\(\text{dxc4}\) 8 \(\text{xc4}\) \(\text{bd7}\) with the idea of \(\text{...e5}\).

8 \(\text{d2}\)
8 b4!? is interesting.

8...dxc4 9 ∆xc4 c5

Now, if 9...b6 White would get a distinct advantage by playing the simple 10 e4.

10 ∆e2 cxd4 11 exd4 ∆b6 12 ∆b3 ∆g4 13 ∆ad1 e6

Taking the pawn would give White a dangerous initiative: 13...∆xf3 14 ∆xf3 ∆xd4 15 ∆fe1 with several threats.

14 ∆g5 ∆d7 15 h3 ∆xf3 16 ∆xf3 ∆bd5

16...∆fd5? is very dubious because of 17 ∆e4!.

17 ∆fe1! ∆ac8 (D)

4 ∆c3 leads to the main lines of the Slav or Semi-Slav.

4...∆f5

Another possibility is 4...e6 with a Semi-Slav.

5 cxd5 cxd5 6 ∆b3

Trying to take advantage of the early development of Black’s light-squared bishop.

6...∆c7

6...∆c8 is also possible. While 6...b6 would mean a serious weakening of the queenside.

7 ∆d2!? e6 8 ∆b5+ ∆c6 9 ∆b4

This was the idea behind 7 ∆d2: White is exchanging off the ‘good’ black bishop.

9...∆xb4+ 10 ∆xb4 ∆e7 11 ∆xc6+ bxc6 12 ∆xe7+ ∆xe7 13 ∆c3 ∆d7 14 ∆a4 f6

Black has tried 14...∆hc8 here, although after 15 ∆c1 ∆ab8 16 b3 ∆b5 17 ∆h4 ∆g4 (17...∆e4!?) 18 h3 ∆h5 19 f4 f6 20 g4 ∆e8 21 ∆h2! followed by ∆hc2 White obtains some edge.

15 ∆c1 ∆b6 16 ∆c5 (D)

In spite of the seeming solidity of Black’s position, there are some details that let White secure a definite advantage.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 18 ∆xd5 and after the corresponding captures, take the seventh rank with the rook.

Option B: Capture on f6 and immediately thereafter play the break on d5.

Option C: Play 18 ∆h4 with the idea of ∆g3 followed by ∆e5.

Test 81

Salov – Bareev
Dortmund 1992
Queen’s Gambit, Slav [D12]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ∆f3 ∆f6 4 e3

White has a strong knight on c5, besides the weakness of the c6-pawn. In return for this, Black has the b-file to look for counterplay, and after the forced move b3, there would follow ...a5-a4.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 16...g5 preventing ∆h4.

Option B: Start counterplay on the queenside by playing 16...∆hb8 followed by ...a5.

Option C: The same idea as in ‘B’ but playing first 16...a5.
Test 82

Larsen – Rubli

Las Palmas IZ 1982

Queen’s Gambit, Semi-Tarrasch [D41]

1 c4 c5 2 d3 f3 d6 3 c3 e6 4 e3 c6 5 d4
d5 6 exd5

Releasing the tension in the centre.

6...\(d5\)

The Semi-Tarrasch. The alternative is 6...exd5,

reaching a Tarrasch.

7 \(c4\)

This move puts pressure on the d5-knight,

thus forcing Black to make a decision in the

centre. Another very tested line is 7 d3 e7 8

0-0 exd4 9 exd4 0-0 10 e1 f6 11 e4 \(ce7\).

7...exd4 8 \(e7\) 9 0-0 0-0 10 e1 \(xe3\)

10...b6?! is a positional mistake on account

of 11 \(xd5\) exd5 12 b5 with advantage to

White thanks to the better coordination of his

pieces and the weakness produced by the move

...b6, Botvinnik-Alekhine, Amsterdam (AVRO)

1938.

11 bxc3 b6 12 \(e2\)

An interesting possibility is 12 d3 b7 13

\(c2\).

12...b7 13 d3 \(a5!\)

An ideal move: it frees the c-file for the rook,

points to the c4-square and prevents \(e4\).

14 \(c5\) e8 15 b2 d6 16 \(h5\) \((D)\)

Black has started thematic action on the

queenside with pressure against c3 and a glance

at the important square c4. At the same time,

White is pointing his forces towards Black’s

kingside.

Black to play. How to avoid the mating

threat?

Option A: 16...f5.

Option B: 16...g6.

Option C: 16...h6.

Test 83

Capablanca – Alekhine

Buenos Aires Wch (21) 1927

Queen’s Gambit Declined [D63]

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 c3 f6 4 g5 \(bd7\) 5
e3 \(e7\) 6 \(f3\) 0-0

Black plays the Orthodox Variation of the

Queen’s Gambit Declined.

7 \(c1\)

Both 7 w c2 and 7 d3 are the main choices to

the text-move.

7...a6?! \((D)\)

Until the date of this game, the most used

line in this position was 7...c6 8 d3 dxc4 9

\(x\) 10 \(xe7\) \(x\) 11 0-0 x3 12

\(xc3\) e5. Nowadays there is also 7...dxc4 8

\(xc4\) c5 (8...a6!?) 9 0-a6.

8 a3?! 8 exd5 and 8 c5 are better choices.

8...b6 9 h4 dxc4 10 \(xc4\) b5 11 \(e2?!\)

11 a2, followed by \(b1\) and \(c2\), is better.

11...b7?!
11...c5!? is more sensible.

12 0-0?! According to Kasparov, with 12 b4! White keeps a clear positional advantage, since after the logical 12...a5 White replies 13 \text{\textit{W}}b3 axb4 14 axb4 g5 15 \text{\textit{g}}g3 \text{\textit{Q}}d5 16 0-0 with a crushing advantage.

12...c5 13 dxc5 \text{\textit{Q}}xc5 14 \text{\textit{Q}}d4 e8 15 b4 (D)

Here we have a symmetrical pawn-structure, distinctive of the Queen’s Gambit, where the strategy of both sides hinges on the key squares c4 and c5. The present game is a perfect model of the strategy to follow in this kind of position.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: 15...\text{\textit{Q}}cd7.
Option B: 15...\text{\textit{Q}}ce4.

\textbf{Test 84}

\textbf{Kramnik – Yusupov}

Dortmund 1998
Queen’s Gambit, Tartakower Defence [D58]

1 \text{\textit{Q}}f3 d5 2 d4 \text{\textit{Q}}f6 3 c4 e6 4 \text{\textit{Q}}c3 \text{\textit{Q}}e7 5 \text{\textit{Q}}g5 h6 6 \text{\textit{Q}}h4

The exchange on f6 was a fashionable choice after the world championship matches between Kasparov and Karpov.

6...0-0 7 e3 b6 (D)

Another well-explored possibility is 7...\text{\textit{Q}}e4, known as Lasker’s Defence.

13 \text{\textit{Q}}ad1!?! The natural move seems to be 13 \text{\textit{Q}}fd1, saving the c-file for the other rook, where it would press against the hanging pawns. But White
has outlined a plan based on a quick transfer of the bishop to b1, so if he had the king’s rook on d1, then the a-rook would have been badly placed.

13...\textit{c}xg3 14 h\textit{x}g3 a6 (D)

Black prevents \textit{a}a6, exchanging bishops, since after this exchange the d5-pawn would become very weak.

\textbf{15 dxc5 bxc5 16 \textit{b}b1!}

An excellent move, not only threatening the opponent’s kingside but also the transfer of the bishop to the a2-g8 diagonal, where it would press against the hanging pawns.

16...\textit{b}b6 (D)

Black’s castled position by lining up his queen and bishop.

\textit{White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:}

\textbf{Option A}: Play 17 a3 followed by \textit{a}a2 with pressure against the hanging pawns.

\textbf{Option B}: Play 17 a4 with a similar idea.

\textbf{Option C}: Play 17 \textit{w}c2 with threats against the king and a latent possibility of \textit{d}xd5 followed by e4.

\textbf{Test 85}

\textit{Botvinnik – Vidmar}

\textit{Nottingham 1936}

Queen’s Gambit Declined [D60]

1 c4 e6 2 \textit{f}f3 d5 3 d4 \textit{f}f6 4 \textit{c}c3 \textit{e}7 5 \textit{g}g5 0-0 6 e3 \textit{b}d7

Introducing the Orthodox Variation of the Queen’s Gambit.

7 \textit{d}3

More customary is 7 \textit{c}c1 c6 8 \textit{d}d3 dxc4 9 \textit{xc}4 \textit{d}5 10 \textit{xe}7 \textit{exe}7 11 0-0 \textit{xc}3 12 \textit{xc}3 e5 13 \textit{w}c2 exd4 14 exd4; or else 7 \textit{w}c2 c5 8 cxd5 \textit{xd}5 9 \textit{exe}7 \textit{exe}7 10 \textit{xd}5 exd5 11 \textit{d}3 with a slight advantage to White in both cases, although Black’s position is very sound.

7...c5 8 0-0 \textit{xd}4 9 ex\textit{d}4 \textit{xc}4 10 \textit{xc}4 (D)

We have now a typical structure with hanging pawns. This set-up happens very often in queen’s pawn openings. Here the pawns appear somewhat exposed. We should also point the possibility for White to create threats against

A typical position with an isolated queen’s pawn, where White enjoys a space advantage and piece activity in return for the weakness of the d-pawn. Although we are still in the initial
phase of the game, Black must play precisely if he does not wish to get a disadvantage.

Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 10...b6 in order to complete development with ...\textit{b}7.

Option B: Play 10...\textit{b}6 followed by ...\textit{d}7-c6 blockading the isolated pawn.

Option C: Play 10...a6 with the idea of ...b5 and ...\textit{b}7, and if White plays a4 preventing such a plan, then follow with ...\textit{b}6 carrying out Plan B.

In this position with an isolated queen’s pawn, White’s possibilities of establishing threats against the opponent’s king look serious.

White to play. Choose one of the following:

Option A: Play 14 \textit{e}3 strengthening the d-pawn.

Option B: Play 14 \textit{g}5 with threats against Black’s king.

Option C: Carry out the break immediately with 14 d5.

Test 87

Yermolinsky – Christiansen
USA Ch (Salt Lake City) 1999
Queen’s Gambit Declined,
Exchange Variation [D36]

1 d4 \textit{f}6 2 \textit{f}3 e6 3 c4 d5 4 \textit{c}3 \textit{bd}7 5
cxd5

Introducing the Exchange Variation and the interesting ‘Karlsbad’ structure.

5...cxd5 6 \textit{g}5 c6 7 e3 \textit{e}7 8 \textit{c}2 0-0 9
\textit{d}3 \textit{e}8 10 0-0 \textit{f}8 11 h3!?

An interesting idea. With this move, White not only controls the g4-square (preventing ...	extit{g}4 and ...\textit{g}4), but also gives the dark-squared bishop a comfortable retreat. Besides, this is a very flexible move that leaves Black in a difficult situation, since White has not decided upon his plan yet, and some useful moves against a specific plan would be a mistake when facing another set-up.

11...\textit{e}6!? 12 \textit{f}e1 (D)
We have a typical position of the Karlsbad structure. Black has several logical continuations, but only one is able to oppose White’s usual plans (a minority attack or a break at e4).

**Black to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:**

**Option A:** Play 12...\(\text{\textit{c}}8\) with the idea of ...\(\text{c}5\) when White plays \(\text{b}4-\text{b}5\).

**Option B:** Play 12...\(\text{\textit{d}}6\text{d}7\), seeking exchanges and planning the transfer of the knight to \(\text{b}6\).

**Option C:** Play 12...\(\text{\textit{h}}5\), also seeking exchanges.

**Option D:** Play 12...\(\text{\textit{g}}6\).

---

**Test 88**

_Alekhine – Bogoljubow_  
_Bad Nauheim 1937_  
_Queen’s Gambit, Tartakower Defence [D58]_

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. c3 \(\text{\textit{c}}3\) f6 4. \(\text{\textit{g}}5\) \(\text{e}7\) 5. \(\text{\textit{f}}3\) \(\text{h}6\) 6. \(\text{\textit{h}}4\) 0-0 7. e3 \(\text{b}6\)

Introducing the sound Tartakower Variation of the Queen’s Gambit.

8. \(\text{\textit{c}}1\)

8. \(\text{\textit{e}}2\) \(\text{b}7\) 9. \(\text{\textit{f}}x\text{f}6\) \(\text{\textit{f}}x\text{f}6\) 10. \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{c}5\) \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{c}5\) 11. \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{b}4\) (or 11 0-0) has been more fashionable recently.

8...\(\text{\textit{b}}7\) 9. \(\text{\textit{e}}2\) \(\text{dxc}4\) 10. \(\text{\textit{e}}\text{c}4\) \(\text{c}5\) 11 0-0  
\(\text{\textit{d}}\text{bd}7\) 12. \(\text{\textit{w}}\text{e}2\) (D)

---

**Test 89**

_Em. Lasker – Capablanca_  
_Havana Wch (10) 1921_  
_Queen’s Gambit Declined [D61]_

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. c3 \(\text{\textit{c}}3\) f6 4. \(\text{\textit{g}}5\) \(\text{e}7\) 5. \(\text{\textit{e}}3\) 0-0 6. \(\text{\textit{f}}3\) \(\text{\textit{b}}6\) 7. \(\text{\textit{c}}2\) \(\text{c}5\) 8. \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}1\) (D)

This move enjoys very little popularity nowadays. The usual moves are 8 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xd}5\) \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xd}5\) 9 \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{e}7\) \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{e}7\) 10. \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{c}5\) \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{c}5\) 11. \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}3\) and the sharp 8 0-0-0.

8...\(\text{\textit{e}}\text{a}5\) 9. \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}3\)

In a later game between the same players there followed 9 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xd}5\) \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xd}5\) 10 \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{e}7\) \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{e}7\) 11 \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}3\) \(\text{\textit{f}}6\) 12 0-0 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xd}4\) 13 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xd}4\) \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}7\) 14 \(\text{\textit{e}}\text{e}4\) \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{ed}5\) 15 \(\text{\textit{b}}\text{b}3\) \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}8\) 16 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{f}6+\) \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{xf}6\) with equality, and the game ended in a draw several moves later.

9...\(\text{\textit{h}}6\) 10. \(\text{\textit{h}}\text{h}4\) \(\text{\textit{x}}\text{d}4\)

Alekhine’s suggestion 10...\(\text{\textit{b}}\text{b}6?!\) deserves serious attention.

11. \(\text{\textit{e}}\text{xc}4\) \(\text{\textit{e}}\text{c}4\) 12. \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{c}6\) 13 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{b}3\) \(\text{\textit{d}}\text{d}7\) 14 0-0-0 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{ac}8\) 15 \(\text{\textit{e}}\text{e}5\)

Some annotators pointed out the move 15 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{e}2\) as being more precise, immediately removing the queen from the annoying pin.

15...\(\text{\textit{b}}\text{b}5\) 16 \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{fe}1\) \(\text{\textit{c}}\text{bd}5\) (D)

We have now a position rich in complications, where White can get the advantage if he plays precisely. However, if he does not make the right decision then he could land in a much inferior position, as in fact happened in the game.
White wishes to play the Exchange Variation of the Queen’s Gambit with his king’s knight on e2. This move was used by Alekhine, but Botvinnik deepened his ideas.

4...exd5 5 ⍺g5 c6 6 e3 ⍺e7 7 ⍺d3 0-0 8 ⍺c2 h6?!)

This is a hasty move as we shall appreciate when studying this example. 8...⍺bd7 is more sound.

9 ⍺h4 ⍺e8 10 ⍺g2

10 ⍺f3 is also possible here, but that was not White’s intention.

10...⍺bd7 (D)

Test 90

Gufeld – Zamikhovsky

Ukrainian Ch (Kiev) 1963

Queen’s Gambit Declined,
Exchange Variation [D35]

1 c4 ⍺f6 2 d4 e6 3 ⍺c3 d5 (D)

Here we have a Karlsbad structure with some peculiarities:

1. The knight was developed to e2, thus easing eventual central action by means of f3 and e4.
2. The move ...h6 gains in importance, since White has yet not defined a position for his king.

White to play. Choose one of the following possibilities:

Option A: Play 11 0-0-0, leading a battle with opposite-side castling.

Option B: 11 0-0 and play for the typical minority attack.

Option C: Play 11 f3 and after castling, take the necessary steps in order to prepare the advance e4.
Solutions

Test 1 [Level 1]

Themes: Transition into the Endgame; The Art of Exchanging

17 \( \text{\#d4!} \) (D)

The other choices are also advantageous for White, but this is the strongest continuation. After the exchange of queens and thanks to the threat of trapping the knight, White gains a crucial tempo to penetrate with the rook on the seventh rank. If this was your choice (Option A), you have earned 5 points.

The move in Option B, 17 \( \text{\#d4} \), while being a natural move, does not threaten to win the piece due to the pin on the g1-a7 diagonal: 17...\( \text{\#bc8} \) 18 f4? \( \text{\#f3+!} \) 19 \( \text{\#xf3} \) \( \text{\#xc1} \) 20 \( \text{\#xc1} \) \( \text{\#xd4+} \). You gain 1 point for this choice. The move suggested under Option C, 17 \( \text{\#h1} \), threatening to win a piece by 18 f4, also gives White a clear advantage, although it is more difficult to realize than the one resulting from choosing Option A: 17...f6 18 f4 \( \text{\#f7} \) 19 \( \text{\#d4} \). If this was your choice, award yourself 3 points.

Directed against 21 f4 winning a piece.
21 \( \text{\#h2} \) h6 22 \( \text{\#e4!} \) (D)

Threatening to exchange the light-squared bishops.
22...\( \text{\#f8} \) 23 f4! \( \text{\#f7} \) 24 \( \text{\#f3} \) \( \text{\#bb8} \) 25 \( \text{\#e6+!} \)?

The black knight will be forced to move to the corner.
25...\( \text{\#xe6} \) 26 dxe6 \( \text{\#h8} \) 27 f5! b4 28 \( \text{\#b7} \) a5 29 e4!

And although material is level, Black is forced to resign.

1-0
Option A: 5 points
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 3 points

Test 2 [Level 1]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Unfortunate Exchange

In this position with an isolated queen’s pawn, Black has a comfortable game, preparing to play ...\( \text{\#fd8} \) with pressure against the white d-pawn.
Option B, consisting of 14 a3, preventing the manoeuvre ...\(\mathcal{Q}b4-d5\) as well as threatening b4, fails against 14...\(\mathcal{Q}b3\) taking advantage of the weakening of this square. Therefore 0 points if you chose Option B.

14 \(\mathcal{Q}h6?!\)

The move suggested under Option A. The idea is to exchange the dark-squared bishops, weakening Black’s kingside. However, as the game will show, all this exchange achieves is the removal of his queen’s pawn’s best defender, allowing Black to anchor himself firmly on the dark squares. You get no points if you chose this plan.

White’s best plan is to maintain the tension with 14 \(\mathcal{Q}fd1\), as suggested in Option C (5 points for this choice).

14...\(\mathcal{Q}fd8\) 15 \(\mathcal{Q}xg7 \mathcal{Q}xg7\) 16 \(\mathcal{Q}fd1 \mathcal{Q}d6\)! (D)

A necessary weakening on account of the threat of 22...\(\mathcal{Q}f5\). If 22 \(\mathcal{Q}d3 \mathcal{Q}f6\) 23 \(\mathcal{Q}e3\), the exchange sacrifice 23...\(\mathcal{Q}xf3\) is very strong: 24 \(\mathcal{Q}xf3 \mathcal{Q}xd4\) with more than enough compensation for the exchange.

22...\(g5\)!

A good move stressing the weakness of the dark squares. A rook is going to settle on f4.

23 \(\mathcal{Q}g3 \mathcal{Q}f6\)! (D)

The lack of a dark-squared bishop starts to be felt.

17 \(\mathcal{Q}e3 \mathcal{Q}cd8\) 18 a3?!

This move weakens b3, though it is difficult to suggest a good line for White: 18 \(\mathcal{Q}b5 \mathcal{Q}d5\) 19 \(\mathcal{Q}c3 \mathcal{Q}5d7\) 20 \(\mathcal{Q}e5\)? loses to 20...\(\mathcal{Q}xd4\) 21 \(\mathcal{Q}xc6 \mathcal{Q}xd1+\).

18...\(\mathcal{Q}b3\)!

This bishop will prove to be very annoying for White.

19 \(\mathcal{Q}d2\)

If 19 \(\mathcal{Q}b5\), then 19...\(\mathcal{Q}xd1\) 20 \(\mathcal{Q}xd6 \mathcal{Q}xe2\) 21 \(\mathcal{Q}xb7 \mathcal{Q}b6\) with a clear advantage.

19...\(\mathcal{Q}e6\) 20 \(\mathcal{Q}f4 \mathcal{Q}d5\) 21 \(\mathcal{Q}xd5 \mathcal{Q}xd5!\) (D)

The rooks will prove to be very active.

22 \(g4\)

Black continues manoeuvring on the dark squares, and now threatens to settle this rook at f4, exerting pressure on the d-pawn.

24 \(\mathcal{Q}d1\)

White should be alert against a possible exchange sacrifice on f3. The following line gives us a sample: 24 \(\mathcal{Q}d3 \mathcal{Q}c4!\) 25 \(\mathcal{Q}e3 \mathcal{Q}xe2\) 26 \(\mathcal{Q}xe2 \mathcal{Q}xf3!\) 27 \(\mathcal{Q}xf3 \mathcal{Q}xd4\) winning.

24...\(\mathcal{Q}c4\)

Now 24...\(\mathcal{Q}xf3\)? does not work: 25 \(\mathcal{Q}xf3 \mathcal{Q}xd2\) 26 \(\mathcal{Q}xb3!\) with counterplay against f7.
25 b3 a6
25...xf3? is bad on account of 26 xf3 exd2 27 bxc4 exd4 28 xc6 bxc6 29 e5+ and White survives.
26 b4 d8
26...xb4!? is also sufficient: 27 b3 d3 28 xd5 xd5 with a clear advantage.
27 b3 (D)

27...xd4! 28 xd4
If 28 xd5 then 28...xf3+ 29 xf3 xd2 30 d1 c3, etc.
28...xd4 29 xg5
29 xd4 also loses: 29...xd4 30 d1 e4.
29...d3 30 h4 h6 31 xf7 wd4 32 e1 xh3! 0-1

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points

Test 3 [Level 3]

Themes: Weak Pawns; Weakness at d6

There is no doubt that Option C is worthy of the highest score here (5 points). The move 10 a4, on the one hand, prevents...b5, and on the other hand, gives the white bishop the a3-square (if 10 a3 at once, then 10...a5), where it will press on d6, the true Achilles’ Heel of Black’s position.

Furthermore, if we go deeply into the position, the true understanding of 10 a4 will be clear, since this move frees the a2-square for the rook manoeuvre from a2 to d2, which, together with a bishop on a3, will make the d6-pawn hard to defend.

10 a4!

Option A proves somewhat artificial, inasmuch as the pressure on d6 by f4 would appear ineffective. Moreover, if that pressure fails, it will be obvious that the bishop should be better placed on the long diagonal, and we would have lost a valuable tempo in removing the knight from its good post at d4. Thus, we give only 1 point to this plan. 10 f3 0-0 11 f4 a5! 12 c1 fd8 (with precise moves Black has neutralized the pressure on d6) 13 d2 (13 xd6 e8 14 c5 xd6 15 cxd6 b4 regaining the pawn with a good game) 13...c7 (as we can see Black is OK; let’s see the rest of the game without comments) 14 e3 ac8 15 wc2 b8 16 fd1 d7 17 d4 b5! 18 cxb5 axb5 19 b4 e5! 20 b3 g4 21 f3 e6 22 e4 c4 23 xf6+ xf6 24 e1 d5 ½-½ Smyslov-Lein, USSR 1971.

Option B is a natural and logical way of dealing with this position, and except for Option C, which casts doubts on Black’s set-up, it would be worthy of the top score. Thus we give it 3 points. Here both plans, that of reaching a Maroczy Bind sooner or later, or of playing soundly with e3, give White a small edge. 10 b2 0-0 11 c1 (11 e3 followed by we2, fd1 and ac1 also leads to a small edge for White) 11...a5 12 d3?! (12 xc6 xc6 13 e4 is better as 13...b5? is met by 14 e5!) 12...xd4 13 xd4 c6 14 e4 e5! 15 wd2 b5! with counterplay, Möhring-Bönisch, Halle 1981.

10...0-0 11 a3 wb8 12 a2! wd8 13 xd2 (D)

White has completed the plan started on move 10, and he is exerting strong pressure on d6.

13...xd4 14 xd4 xc6 15 wd2!
Threatening d1.

15...e8
If 15...xg2, then 16 xg2 wc7 17 d1 wc6+ 18 f3 with a clear advantage for White.

16 d3 wc7 17 d1 d7
If 17...ac8, then 18 e4 f6 19 e2 b5 20 cxb5 axb5 21 a5, also with a clear plus. A standard theme in the realization of the advantage:
White, thanks to the strong pressure on d6, forced Black to put his pieces in passive locations. However, d6 still withstands and White needs to use the bad placement of the black pieces to turn the weakness at d6 into another advantage.

18 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{d}}5! exd5}
18...\texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{d}}xd5} 19 cxd5 with a clear plus, since if ...e5 White would take the c-file after \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{h}}3}.

19 cxd5
The bishop is trapped.

19...\texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{a}}4} 20 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{b}}xa4}
We can now make an assessment of 18 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{d}}5}. White has got the bishop-pair and will press on b7.

20...\texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{f}}6} 21 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{b}}4!} (D)

38 a5!
An elegant finish. Black is helpless against the transfer of the light-squared bishop to the a4-e8 diagonal.

38...\texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{h}}5} 39 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{f}}3} \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{h}}6} 40 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{d}}1} f5 41 exf5 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{f}}7}
42 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{a}}4} \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{f}}6} 43 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{f}}8!}
The quickest way.

43...\texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{g}}7} 44 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{h}}8+} \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{h}}7} 45 \texttt{\textipa{\textgreek{g}}8} 1-0
Option A: 1 point
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 5 points

\textbf{Test 4 [Level 3]}

\textit{Themes: Dynamic vs Static Elements; Hidden Features}

11...dxc4! (D)
This is Option C and certainly the best one, because besides solving Black's problems, it
causes serious problems to White. Seemingly Black tears his pawn-structure apart, but there are some concrete features in the position that justify it. If you noted all the subtleties concerning this move, you have earned 5 points.

Option B does not get full equality, although it leaves White with just a slight advantage and is very logical and therefore deserves 2 points. 11...\( \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}d8}} \text{cxd5} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}e5}}} (12...\text{cxd5} 13 \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{d}b5}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{a}6}}}} \quad 14 \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{d}d4}}} \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{xe2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{xe2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e5}}}}}} 16 \text{g3} \text{is in White’s favour}) 13 \text{g3} \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{h}3}}} 14 \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}e1}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{b4}}} 15 \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}c2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{f5}}} 16 \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}c1}}} \text{cxd5} 17 \text{\underline{\text{\text{f3}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e7}}} 18 \text{a3} \text{\underline{\text{\text{a5}}} 19 \text{b4} \text{\underline{\text{\text{b6}}} 20 \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}xd5!}}} with advantage for White, Keene-Jansson, Haifa OL 1976.

Option A doesn’t solve Black’s problems, so we shall grant it no points. After 11...\text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}d8}}} 12 \text{cxd5} \text{cxd5} 13 \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}b5}}}! White’s advantage is obvious.

12 \text{bxc4?!}

If White takes with the bishop (the natural capture), he leaves the g4-square defenceless, allowing Black to start an attack in various ways. 12 \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}c4}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}e5}}}! seems to be the best line (even though 12...\text{\underline{\text{\text{g}g4}}} 13 \text{g3} \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}x}h2}} is interesting, or even 12...\text{\underline{\text{\text{d}x}h2+!?}}): 13 \text{g3} \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{h}3}}}.

12...\text{\underline{\text{\text{b}b8!}}} 13 \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}c1}}}

The natural 13 \text{\text{\underline{\text{\text{b}b1?}}} doesn’t work on account of 13...\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}b2}} 14 \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}b2}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}e5}}}.

13...\text{\underline{\text{\text{g}g4!}}} (D)

This blow is based on the idea that Black started on move 11. With the white queen forced to leave d1, the g4-square remains without adequate protection.

14 \text{g3}

Not 14 \text{h3}? \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}e5}}} 15 \text{g3} \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}xe3!}}} winning, while the capture of the annoying knight would leave a weak pawn at c4: 14 \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}g4}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}g4}} 15 \text{\underline{\text{\text{h}e1}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{b4}}}.

14...\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}e8!}}}

Threatening to take on h2.

15 \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}d1?}}}

15 \text{\underline{\text{\text{f}f3}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}f6}}} 16 \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}g4}} (16 \text{\underline{\text{\text{g}g2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}h}6}} 17 \text{h3} \text{\underline{\text{d}d5!}}) 16...\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}g4}} 17 \text{f3} \text{\underline{\text{\text{h}3}}} 18 \text{\underline{\text{\text{f}f2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{g}6}}} would leave Black a strong initiative.

15...\text{\underline{\text{\text{d}d}x}h2!} 16 \text{c5} (D)

16 \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}h2}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}h4+}}} 17 \text{\underline{\text{\text{g}g2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}h}3+}} 18 \text{\underline{\text{\text{g}g1}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}g3}} 19 \text{\underline{\text{f}xg3}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}x}g3+}} 20 \text{\underline{\text{h}h1}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}4!}}} (20...\text{\underline{\text{\text{e}e6?}}} 21 \text{\underline{\text{\text{f}f6!}}}) 21 \text{\underline{\text{f}f4}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{h}3}}} and White is helpless.

16...\text{\underline{\text{\text{d}d}x}f1!} 17 \text{\underline{\text{\text{c}c}x}d6} \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}d}x}g3!} 18 \text{\underline{\text{f}xg3}}

Of course 18 \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}x}e7}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}x}e2+}} 19 \text{\underline{\text{\text{f}f1}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{d}x}c1}} doesn’t work and White will be helpless.

18...\text{\underline{\text{\text{d}d}x}d6} 19 \text{\underline{\text{\text{f}f2}}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{w}h}6}} 20 \text{\underline{\text{d}d}d4}

If 20 \text{\underline{\text{\text{c}c}3}} \text{\underline{\text{\text{e}e6}}} Black’s attack would also be unstoppable.
20...\textit{W}h2+ 21 \textit{Q}e1 \textit{W}xg3+ 22 \textit{Q}d2 \textit{W}g2 23
\textit{Q}b2 \textit{Q}a6 24 \textit{Q}d3 \textit{Q}xd3 25 \textit{Q}xd3 \textit{R}bd8 26
\textit{R}f1 \textit{W}e4+ 27 \textit{Q}c3 c5!

The quickest road to victory.

28 \textit{Q}xc5 \textit{Q}c6 29 \textit{Q}b3 \textit{R}b8+ 30 \textit{Q}a3 \textit{Q}e5 31
\textit{Q}b4 \textit{R}b6 0-1

**Option A:** 0 points

**Option B:** 2 points

**Option C:** 5 points

**Test 5 [Level 3]**

\textit{Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Blockade}

13 \textit{Q}d2

The idea suggested under Option B, consisting of the transfer of the bishop to c3 in order to blockade the isolated queen’s pawn, proves quite effective in the game we are going to see.

The idea mentioned in Option A, 13 \textit{Q}e3?! is dubious on account of the reply 13...d4! since taking on d4 is not possible: 14 \textit{Q}xc6+ bxc6 15 \textit{Q}xd4? c5 16 \textit{W}a4+ \textit{Q}d7 (D) and Black wins.

Thus, we give no points to this plan.

But the idea suggested in Option C is interesting, and consists of the development of the bishop to f4, to follow then with \textit{W}d3 and \textit{R}fd1 with pressure against the d-pawn. Let’s examine a possible continuation: 13 \textit{Q}f4?! \textit{Q}e7 14 \textit{W}d3 0-0 15 \textit{R}fd1 g5? 16 \textit{W}e3! \textit{W}xe3 17 \textit{Q}xe3 and Black would have to concede more weaknesses besides the isolated queen’s pawn, with nothing in return. We give 5 points to this choice.

13...\textit{Q}e7

After 13...a5?! then 14 \textit{Q}e3! is good since the black queen is not guarded by the a-pawn. 14...d4 15 \textit{Q}xc6+ bxc6 16 \textit{Q}xd4! c5 17 \textit{W}a4+ \textit{Q}d7 18 \textit{W}b3!.

14 \textit{Q}c3! 0-0

If 14...d4?! 15 \textit{Q}xc6+!? bxc6?! (better is 15...\textit{W}xc6 even though after 16 \textit{Q}xd4 \textit{W}c4 17 e3 the activity of the light-squared bishop cannot compensate for the loss of a pawn), then 16 \textit{Q}a5 with a big advantage.

15 \textit{Q}d4

Completing the blockade of the isolated queen’s pawn that began with 13 \textit{Q}d2. If you chose the plan suggested in B, then you have earned 5 points.

15...\textit{Q}xd4 16 \textit{Q}xd4 \textit{Q}c5 (D)

17 \textit{W}d2!

Everything has been calculated very precisely. White threatens 18 \textit{Q}a5, thus hindering the advance of the d-pawn.

17...\textit{Q}d6 18 b4!

A clever \textit{zwischenzug} before continuing with the blockade of the d-pawn, thus restricting the bishop. If 18 \textit{Q}d4 at once, then 18...\textit{Q}b4.

18...\textit{Q}b6 19 \textit{Q}d4

And finally the blockading plan is completed. Now it is a permanent blockade, and Black is forced into a passive defence, though he is not without resources.

19...\textit{Q}f5!?

With the idea of moving the bishop to e4, strengthening the d-pawn.

20 \textit{Q}ac1 \textit{Q}e4 21 \textit{Q}h3!
Refusing to exchange bishops for the time being, since it would weaken White’s castled position. Besides this, White keeps control of the c-file.

21...\textit{ffe8} 22 \textit{fd1} \textit{e7!} (D)

\textbf{W}

\begin{center}
\setlength{boxrule}{0.15mm} \setlength{boxsep}{1mm} \fbox{egin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
21 & 22 \hline
\textit{ffe8} & \textit{fd1} \\
\textit{e7} & \textit{e7} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}}
\end{center}

\textbf{W}

The battle for command of the c-file continues. With the text-move Black wants to exchange at least a rook on this file.

23 a3 \textit{f8} 24 \textit{b2} \textit{c7} 25 \textit{xc7} \textit{xc7} 26 \textit{d2} \textit{d6}!

Black is defending in a quite ingenious way. He now wants to play ...\textit{c6}.

27 \textit{g2}

The bishop has accomplished its job on h3. White is no longer able to reinforce the pressure without this exchange.

27...\textit{e6}

Worthy of attention was 27...\textit{c6} 28 \textit{xe4} dxe4 29 \textit{xb6} \textit{xb6} 30 \textit{d4} with a slight advantage for White.

28 e3 \textit{e7} 29 h4 a6

Better is 29...\textit{xg2} 30 \textit{xg2} \textit{e4} 31 \textit{c2} \textit{d6} even though White is somewhat better.

30 \textit{xb6} \textit{xb6} 31 \textit{d1} \textit{c7} 32 \textit{d4} \textit{e4} 33 \textit{a7!} \textit{c7} 34 \textit{d4} \textit{f7}?

A serious error. After 34...\textit{xg2} 35 \textit{xg2} \textit{d6} Black might still be able to put up stubborn resistance.

35 \textit{xd5}!

Winning a pawn.

35...\textit{yg2} 36 \textit{yg2} \textit{c6} 37 \textit{c5}!

But not 37 \textit{e4?} \textit{xe4} 38 \textit{c5} \textit{d7} 39 \textit{b8} \textit{e7} with equality.

37...\textit{xc5} 38 \textit{xc5} \textit{e7} (D)

White gets an ending with an extra pawn, but still he needs to overcome some difficulties in order to win.

39 \textit{f3} \textit{e6} 40 \textit{e4} \textit{d6}+ 41 \textit{d4} \textit{d7} 42 \textit{g4!} \textit{e8} 43 \textit{e4} \textit{b6} 44 \textit{d5}+ \textit{e7} 45 \textit{e5!} \textit{f8} 46 \textit{d6} \textit{b5}

The most stubborn line. If 46...\textit{xe5}+ then 47 \textit{xe5} \textit{xf2} 48 \textit{xb6} \textit{e2}+ (48...\textit{g2} 49 \textit{f4} 49 \textit{f4} \textit{f2}+ 50 \textit{e4} \textit{e2}+ 51 \textit{f3}, etc.

47 \textit{xa6} \textit{xe5} 48 \textit{xe5} \textit{xf2} 49 \textit{a7}+!

50 \textit{h5} \textit{f3} 51 \textit{d4}!

The king marches towards the b5-pawn, deciding the game.

51...\textit{f4}+ 52 \textit{c5} \textit{yg4} 53 \textit{xb5} \textit{g5}+ 54 \textit{c6} \textit{xb5} 55 \textit{b5} \textit{h6}+ 56 \textit{c7} \textit{h3} 57 \textit{b6} \textit{e7} 58 \textit{b7} \textit{c3}+ 59 \textit{b6} \textit{b3}+ 60 \textit{c6} 1-0

\textbf{Option A:} 0 points

\textbf{Option B:} 5 points

\textbf{Option C:} 5 points

\textbf{Test 6 [Level 3]}

\textit{Themes: Move-Orders; Right Idea, Bad Timing}

There is no question that \textit{e5} one of White’s main ideas. However, as we are going to see, making this move right away is a serious mistake that changes the assessment of the position.

15 \textit{e5}?

This was suggested in Option B. However, it is a serious positional mistake that allows Black to take command of the game.

15...\textit{xe5}!
This excellent move refutes White’s idea. Black exchanges his important bishop but in return gets good counterplay along the c-file.

16 \textit{\&xe5} (D)

16...f6!

Strengthening the dark squares and driving the bishop out, which is forced to occupy a passive position. Of course, if the white queen were on d2, this plan would be impossible. Thus, if you chose the direct jump to e5 (Option B) you got no points. But if you preferred to move the queen to d2 first (Option A) foreseeing the effects of the other continuation, you won 5 points.

17 \textit{\&f4} \textit{\&ac8}

The position has done a full turn, and from a clearly advantageous position for White, we now have a position somewhat better for Black. The queen is not going to find a good place.

18 \textit{\&a4}

The natural move 18 \textit{\&d2}? loses a piece after 18...g5.

18...g5!

Continuing the harassment to the bishop, which will be forced to return to c1. Not, of course, 18...\textit{\&xb2} 19 \textit{\&ab1}, when White is doing well.

19 \textit{\&c1} \textit{\&e2}

Foreseeing that f3 would leave the bishop out of play. 19...\textit{\&b4} was interesting too.

20 \textit{\&e1} d3 21 \textit{\&f1} \textit{\&xf1}!

The best move. The other possibility is somewhat unclear: 21...\textit{\&b4} 22 \textit{\&xe2} \textit{\&c2} 23 \textit{\&xd3} \textit{\&xe1} 24 \textit{\&e2}; e.g., 24...\textit{\&e2}?! 25 \textit{\&e3} \textit{\&xb2} 26 \textit{\&d4}.

22 \textit{\&xf1} \textit{\&c2} 23 \textit{\&e3} \textit{\&c5}

Again, it is not advisable to take on b2:

23...\textit{\&xb2} 24 \textit{\&ab1} \textit{\&xa2} 25 \textit{\&xa2} \textit{\&xa2} 26 \textit{\&xb7} and White is fine.

24 \textit{\&d4}

24 \textit{\&a3} is also interesting, although after 24...\textit{\&c8} Black retains some advantage.

24...e5!? 25 dxe6 \textit{\&xe6} (D)

26 \textit{\&ac1}??

A serious mistake that leaves White in a hopeless position. Correct was 26 b4! \textit{\&xe4} 27 \textit{\&xd3}, when Black’s advantage is minimal.

26...\textit{\&c8}! 27 b4 \textit{\&xe4} 28 \textit{\&xc2}

Taking on d3 does not work: 28 \textit{\&xd3} \textit{\&xf2}! 29 \textit{\&xc2} \textit{\&xc2} 30 \textit{\&xc2} \textit{\&h3}+! 31 \textit{\&g2} \textit{\&e4}+ 32 \textit{\&h3} \textit{\&xc2}.

28...dxc2 29 \textit{\&c1} b6 30 f3 \textit{\&d6} 31 \textit{\&d3} \textit{\&c6}

Defending the knight and thus freeing the queen.

32 a4 \textit{\&c4}! 33 \textit{\&d2} \textit{\&f7}! 34 f4 (D)
Weakening the light squares, but there is no other way of preventing \( \text{\textacuten} \text{e}5 \).

34...g4 35 b5 \text{\textacuten}c8 36 \text{\textacuten}d7 h5 37 \text{\textacuten}f2 \text{\textacuten}c3 38 \text{\textacuten}f5 \text{\textacuten}e8 0-1

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points

**Test 7 [Level 3]**

*Theme: Transition into the Endgame*

12 \text{\textacuten}d3

As we shall see, this seemingly good move is harmless. White should play 12 e4!, the idea suggested in Option A. With this, and by means of a series of accurate moves, White retains a slight opening advantage: 12...\text{\textacuten}c7 13 f4! \text{\textacuten}c6 14 \text{\textacuten}f3! (the logical sequel to the previous move; White avoids the exchange of knights, which would relieve Black’s position) 14...\text{\textacuten}b7 15 \text{\textacuten}e2 \text{\textacuten}e8 16 \text{\textacuten}d1! b5 17 e5! (D) and White is better, Bronstein-Kalinichev, Moscow 1982.

B

16 \text{\textacuten}xb7 \text{\textacuten}xb7

Finally everything clears up, and Black’s position looks more pleasant, since he has a break on b5.

17 f3 \text{\textacuten}c6!

The knight goes to a7 to support ...b5.

18 \text{\textacuten}a3

18 a4, preventing the aforementioned break, would leave White’s pawn-formation rather weak (especially the b3-pawn).

18...\text{\textacuten}a7!

Continuing with the plan.

19 \text{\textacuten}c2

Preventing ...b5 but allowing the other pawn-break.

19...d5! 20 \text{\textacuten}xe7 \text{\textacuten}xe7 21 \text{\textacuten}e3 \text{\textacuten}ec7 22 \text{\textacuten}a4 \text{\textacuten}c6

22...b5? is wrong due to 23 \text{\textacuten}b6!! \text{\textacuten}b8 24 cxd5! with advantage to White.

23 \text{\textacuten}b1 \text{\textacuten}xc4 24 \text{\textacuten}xc4 b5 25 \text{\textacuten}xb5 \text{\textacuten}xb5 26 \text{\textacuten}f2 g5!? (D)

If you chose this plan (more or less up to this position) then you have earned 5 points.

12...\text{\textacuten}c7! 13 \text{\textacuten}f3

White fully enters into Option C and as we are going to prove, this will leave him with a somewhat worse ending. It would be better to play 13 e4 (Option B) with ideas similar to Option A, though White has worse prospects due to the bad placing of the queen at d3. Both choices B and C get 2 points.

13...\text{\textacuten}a7 14 \text{\textacuten}fd1 \text{\textacuten}c8 15 \text{\textacuten}ac1 \text{\textacuten}b7! (D)
Gaining more ground. Black, in spite of the exchanges, remains slightly better thanks to his more active and well-arranged pieces. Anyway, White has no weaknesses and with careful play he should not lose.

27 \textit{b}4 \textit{g}7 28 \textit{h}4 \textit{h}6 29 \textit{h}1 \textit{c}8\textit{c}7 30 \textit{hxg}5 \textit{hxg}5 31 \textit{a}1 \textit{d}6 32 \textit{b}2 \textit{d}5 33 \textit{xd}5 \textit{xd}5 34 \textit{c}4 \textit{xc}4 35 \textit{xc}4 \textit{c}3 36 \textit{e}1

Practically forced on account of ...\textit{d}d4 followed by ...\textit{d}d2.
36...\textit{d}d4! (D)

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

Black increases the advantage step by step, and the difference in activity between the black and white pieces is becoming more noticeable.

37 \textit{c}3 \textit{a}4! 38 \textit{a}3 \textit{b}5 39 \textit{c}2 (D)

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

39...\textit{g}4!

The manner in which Black combines actions on both flanks is very instructive.

40 \textit{fxg}4?!

Maintaining the tension with 40 \textit{d}2 or 40 \textit{f}2 is better.

40...\textit{xg}4 41 \textit{f}2 \textit{f}5 42 \textit{f}3 \textit{f}6
42...\textit{c}4?.

43 \textit{d}1 \textit{c}4 44 \textit{e}3 \textit{a}4 45 \textit{c}2 \textit{e}5

Not, of course, 45...\textit{xa}3? since it loses material after 46 \textit{a}1.

46 \textit{f}2 \textit{e}6 47 \textit{d}3 \textit{c}4 48 \textit{c}3 \textit{c}3 49 \textit{g}4

Allowing Black to put his pawns on the fifth rank, leaving White with a hopeless ending. Better and more stubborn was 49 a4, as pointed out by some annotators.

49...\textit{f}4 50 \textit{xc}3 \textit{xc}3 51 \textit{c}2 \textit{e}4 52 \textit{a}4?

Losing a pawn, but White’s position was desperate.

52...\textit{xa}4 53 \textit{e}3 \textit{f}3 54 \textit{d}4+ \textit{e}5 55 \textit{c}6+ 0-1

White resigned without waiting for Black’s reply.

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 2 points

Test 8 [Level 5]

Theme: Rearranging Pieces

White seems to have a healthy position. His pieces are actively placed, and the e5-pawn allows him to control more ground and is far from being weak. Besides, he is threatening to put some pressure on the f-file. Nonetheless, Black has a continuation that disputes the relevance of these elements.

14...\textit{b}8!!

An excellent regrouping of the pieces. The knight releases c6 for the bishop, where it will prove very active, giving the knight the d7-square for pressing on e5 and defending f6 at the same time. This is Option B, and if it was your choice, then you have earned 5 points.

0 points for Option C, since it fails tactically: 14...\textit{b}4? 15 \textit{d}6+! cxd6 16 \textit{xb}4 with a great advantage.

Option A is an interesting idea: 14...\textit{hf}8!?, attempting to react with ...\textit{f}6. After 15 \textit{d}3 (if 15 \textit{f}6 then 15...\textit{xe}5!) 15...\textit{f}6 16 \textit{exf}6 \textit{xf}6
17 \( \text{\textit{W}} \text{xh6} \) Black gets activity in return for the pawn. This choice deserves 2 points.

15 \( \text{\textit{Qf6}} \)

After 15 \( \text{\textit{Qd4 c6}} 16 \text{\textit{Qf6 c5}} \) Black’s game is more pleasant. 15 g4 instead, with the idea of playing g5, is an interesting possibility.

15...\( \text{\textit{c6}} 16 \text{\textit{c2 d7}}! \) (D)

Continuing with the plan started on move 14.

17 \( \text{\textit{Nh5}} \)

In case of 17 \( \text{\textit{Qd4 xg2}} 18 \text{\textit{Qxd7}} \) (if 18 \( \text{\textit{Qhg1}} \), then 18...\( \text{\textit{Qxe5}}! 19 \text{\textit{Qh5 g6} winning} \) 18...\( \text{\textit{Qxh1}} 19 \text{\textit{Qc6?? c6}} \) with a clear advantage for Black. And after 17 \( \text{\textit{Qxd7}} \) Black will be a bit better too.

17...\( \text{\textit{xf3}} 18 \text{\textit{xf3 xe5}}! \)

White gets two minor pieces in exchange for a rook; however, Black is going to win a second pawn, leaving the white king in a somewhat exposed situation.

19 \( \text{\textit{Re4 c6 20 xd7 xb2+! 21 xb2 xd7}} \)

Finally the position has clarified and Black’s advantage is obvious.

22 \( \text{\textit{Re3 hd8 23 a3}} \)

Not 23 \( \text{\textit{xa7?? b4+ 24 c1 c3}} \) with a decisive advantage.

23...\( \text{\textit{d4}} 24 \text{\textit{g3 c5}} \)

Threatening ...\( \text{\textit{b4+}} \).

25 \( \text{\textit{c1 c4}}! \) (D)

The simplest way. Black is going to enter an ending where the advantage of two pawns, the activity of the rooks and the bad coordination of the white pieces will give him victory.

26 \( \text{\textit{wc5 xc5}} \)

Threatening ...\( \text{\textit{d2}} \).

27 \( \text{\textit{e2 d1!}} 28 \text{\textit{f4}} \)

Not 28 \( \text{\textit{xe6}} \) on account of 28...\( \text{\textit{xd2}}, \) winning.

28...\( \text{\textit{b5}}+ 29 \text{\textit{a2 bb1 30 h5 a1+ 31 b3 db1+ 32 c4 xa3 33 xf7 xg3 34 xe6+}} \)

34 \( \text{\textit{xe6 g4+ 35 c3 xh4 36 dd2 b5}} \) is hopeless for White.

34...\( \text{\textit{c7}} 35 \text{\textit{d3 a5 36 f2 e3! 37 f7+ b8! 38 e7 e4+ 39 c3}} \)

39 \( \text{\textit{xc5 b5+ 40 dd6 d4+}}. \)

39...\( \text{\textit{b5 0-1}} \)

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 9 [Level 1]

Theme: Positional Sacrifice of a Pawn

In this position, coming from the Nimzo-Indian Defence, Black has got nearly equal chances. There are several ways of proceeding, all of them quite acceptable.

17...\( \text{\textit{c4}}! \)

Undoubtedly, this is the most incisive way of treating the position. With this move Black takes the initiative and prevents the advance c4, which would have freed White’s game. This is Option B, and if it was your choice, award yourself 5 points.

Option A is a natural continuation. The idea is to proceed with ...\( \text{\textit{xc8}} \) pressing against the hanging pawns. With this move, the game would
be more or less equal, though White’s position would be easier and more pleasant than in Option B. Thus we give only 2 points for this choice. Let us see a natural follow-up: 17...\texttt{Wb7} 18 \texttt{c4} (18 \texttt{\textsc{f4} b5!}) 18...\texttt{\textsc{f6}} 19 \texttt{\textsc{f4}}, etc.

17...\texttt{Dxe4}, the move suggested under Option C, is sharper than the one in Option A though White will play 18 \texttt{c4} getting a more comfortable game than after 17...\texttt{\textsc{c4}}! We give 3 points for this choice.

18 \texttt{\textsc{wxa7}}

There is no choice but to take the offered pawn.

Now Black is going to increase the pressure little by little, while White will lose several moves bringing his queen back.

18...\texttt{\textsc{w6}}!

Threatening ...\texttt{\textsc{xa8}}.

19 \texttt{\textsc{w3} \textsc{c8}} 20 \texttt{h3} \texttt{h6}

There is no hurry, and it is a good policy to take prophylactic measures before starting decisive actions. The game is more or less balanced although White’s position is more unpleasant since he is doomed to passivity.

21 \texttt{\textsc{b1} \textsc{a4}}

Black is pressing both on \texttt{c3} and \texttt{a2}.

22 \texttt{\textsc{w3} \textsc{d5}} 23 \texttt{\textsc{d1} \textsc{c4} (D)}

24 \texttt{\textsc{b2}}

24 \texttt{\textsc{w5}} looks better.

24...\texttt{\textsc{f6}}!?

An interesting move. Black controls the \texttt{e5}\texttt{-}\texttt{square}, thus hindering the mobility of the white knight. On the other hand, Black need not worry about the \texttt{e6}\texttt{-}\texttt{pawn}, since it is easy to protect. If

24...\texttt{\textsc{x3}}\texttt{c3}, then 25 \texttt{\textsc{x3} \textsc{x3}} \texttt{26 \textsc{x3} \textsc{wxc3}} 27 \texttt{\textsc{wxc3} \textsc{x3}} \texttt{28 \textsc{e5}! with equality.}

25 \texttt{\textsc{e1} \textsc{f7}} 26 \texttt{\textsc{w1} \textsc{f8}} 27 \texttt{\textsc{b3} \textsc{g6}} 28 \texttt{\textsc{b1} \textsc{a8} (D)}

29 \texttt{\textsc{e4}?!}

29 \texttt{\textsc{w3}} is better; then 29...\texttt{\textsc{xa2} 30 \textsc{x6}! leads to complications that are difficult to assess.}

29...\texttt{\textsc{ca4} 30 \textsc{b2} \textsc{f8} 31 \textsc{w3} \textsc{c4} 32 \textsc{e1} \textsc{a3}}

Black has improved the position of his pieces to the utmost. The major pieces are not only pressing against the \texttt{c3}\texttt{-}\texttt{pawn} (as was the case when they were on the \texttt{c}-\texttt{file}) but with a rook on \texttt{a3} he is pressing on the \texttt{a2}\texttt{-}\texttt{pawn}, making White’s defence difficult. But turning this pressure into something more real is not easy.

33 \texttt{\textsc{w1} \textsc{g6} (D)}

34 \texttt{\textsc{c1}?!}
A typical mistake. White is getting tired after an unpleasant defence and lowers his guard. 34...\textit{Wd3!} would retain the extra pawn, since 34...\textit{Qxc3?} does not work on account of 35...\textit{Wxb3!!} winning material.

34...\textit{Qxc3} 35...\textit{Wd3} \textit{Qe2+!} 36...\textit{Wxe2} \textit{Wxc1+} 37...\textit{Wxc1} \textit{Wxc1+} 38...\textit{Wh2} (D)

Allowing the following exchange sacrifice. 38...\textit{Qe1} is a better choice, although Black’s advantage is clear anyway.

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{image}
\end{center}

38...\textit{Qxf3!}

A powerful exchange sacrifice that causes serious problems to White, all the more if we consider his heavy time-trouble.

39...\textit{gxf3} \textit{Qh4} 0-1

White lost on time. The main threat is ...\textit{Wg5}, though after 40...\textit{d5!} the road to victory would be long and difficult.

\textbf{Option A:} 2 points
\textbf{Option B:} 5 points
\textbf{Option C:} 0 points

\section*{Test 10 [Level 1]}

\textit{Theme: Development Advantage}

11...\textit{e5!}

Without a doubt the strongest continuation. Black opens the game, trying to take advantage of his lead in development and the exposed situation of the white king, which is still unsafe in the centre. Thus, we give 5 points for Option D.

The logical move 11...\textit{b6}, with the idea of completing development, gives Black no more than full equality, even though it is a quite acceptable continuation. We give 2 points if your choice was A. Let us examine some possible follow-ups: not, of course, 12...\textit{Qxe6? \textit{Qxe6}} 13...\textit{Wxc6 \textit{Qc8}!} (13...\textit{Qd5}) 14...\textit{Wxa4 \textit{Qc4}} and White stands on the brink of ruin; 12 0-0 \textit{Qb7}!! (12...\textit{Qe7}??) 13...\textit{g5 \textit{Qc8}} 14...\textit{Wd3 \textit{Qa5}} 15...\textit{Qa2} with a slight advantage for White.

The continuation suggested under Option B is also interesting: 11...\textit{Qe7}!! helping in the blockade of the isolated queen’s pawn and getting ready to follow with the development of the bishop by ...\textit{b6}. Let us see a possible continuation: 12 0-0 \textit{b6} 13...\textit{Wf3 \textit{Qfd5}} 14...\textit{g5 \textit{Qb7}} and the game is about equal. 3 points for this choice.

The direct blockade by 11...\textit{xd5}, pointed out in Option C, would leave White with very good prospects after 12...\textit{Wg3}!, where the bishops (particularly the dark-squared one) display a lot of activity. Therefore, this choice gets no points.

12...\textit{Qe3}

If 12...\textit{Qxe4!?} 13...\textit{Wxe3 \textit{Qa5+}} 14...\textit{Qc3 \textit{Qxc3}} 15...\textit{bxc3 \textit{Qxe5}} with advantage for Black.

12...\textit{Qe4} 13...\textit{Wb3 \textit{Qa5+??}} (D)

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{image}
\end{center}

Black’s advantage is decisive. Thus we confirm the accuracy of the plan Black started with 11...\textit{e5}.

14...\textit{Wf1 \textit{Qxd4}} 15...\textit{Qxd4 \textit{Qxd4}} 16...\textit{Qf3 \textit{dxe3}} 17...\textit{fxe4 \textit{Wd2}} 0-1
Let us see a possible outcome: 18 ◇c2 ◇g4! 19 ◇e1 ◇ac8 20 ◇d1 ◇c1!! 21 ◇xc1 ◇xe2+ 22 ◇g1 ◇f3!.

**Option A:** 2 points  
**Option B:** 3 points  
**Option C:** 0 points  
**Option D:** 5 points

**Test 11 [Level 1]**

*Theme: Positional Exchange Sacrifice*

17 ◇g3?

The move suggested under Option B proves very dubious, as we shall see. White’s best choice is Option A, recognizing he has got no advantage from the opening and following the road to equality: 17 cb6 ◇xb6 18 0-0 (after 18 ◇g3 ◇c6 19 ◇b5 ◇c8 20 ◇a6 ◇c6 21 ◇b5 White will be able to force a draw) 18...◇c4 with an equal game. If this was your plan, foreseeing the consequences of playing 17 ◇g3 at once, award yourself 5 points.

17...bxc5! (D)

This excellent sacrifice casts doubt over White’s whole idea. Black is going to take advantage of his lead in development and the unfortunate placement of White’s pieces. Hence we give no points to Option B.

18 ◇xc7 ◇xc7 19 ◇c3

19 ◇d3 is met with 19...e5!, while after 19 0-0 c4 20 ◇a4 ◇b8 Black has enough compensation for the exchange, since in return he gets an extra pawn, White’s b- and d-pawns are both somewhat weak and we should add the bad placing of the white bishop.

19...e5! (D)

20 ◇d3

If 20 dxe5, then 20...d4 21 ◇d2 (21 ◇xd4 ◇d5!) 21...◇xe5 22 0-0 ◇b6! 23 ◇d3 c4!. Or 20 dxc5 d4 21 ◇d2 ◇xc5 with advantage to Black.

20...exd4 21 ◇xd4 ◇e8+ 22 ◇f1

After the natural 22 ◇e2 there would follow 22...d4 23 ◇c2 ◇e5, with threats that are difficult to neutralize.

22...◇b6 23 ◇f5 d4!

Simple and good. The following line also deserved attention: 23...g6!? 24 ◇xh6+ ◇g7 25 ◇g4 d4! 26 ◇d2 ◇xg4 27 fxg4 ◇e5 28 ◇e1 ◇f6+ 29 ◇g1 ◇f3+!! 30 gxf3 ◇xe1+ 31 ◇xe1 ◇xf3 32 ◇e5+ ◇h7 33 ◇xg6+ ◇xg6 34 ◇h5+ ◇f6 35 g5+ ◇e5 and Black wins.

24 ◇d2 ◇e5 25 ◇e1 ◇e6!?

We could think about other choices, like 25...◇b7!? or 25...◇d5!?.

26 ◇b1

The attempt to connect rooks by 26 ◇f2 does not work due to the tactical blow 26...◇xb2! 27 ◇xb2 ◇xd3+.

26...◇b7

If 26...◇c4 then 27 ◇c2 ◇xe1+ 28 ◇xe1 ◇xb2 29 ◇xd4.

27 ◇f2

In case of 27 ◇a2 then 27...◇d5! with a big advantage.

27...d3!
Pursuing the central advance.

28  \text{h}1f1 e4+ 29  \text{g}3
29  \text{e}3  \text{eg}4+!.

29...\text{h}h5+ 30  \text{h}3  \text{g}6! 31  \text{g}3
31 g4??  \text{gf}4+ 32  \text{h}4 g5#.

31...\text{c}8
31...\text{c}5! would be more precise: 32  \text{h}4
(32  \text{c}3  \text{gf}4+! 33  \text{xf}4  \text{xf}4+ 34  \text{g}3  \text{g}5+
35  \text{f}2  \text{h}3#) 32...\text{e}1! 33  \text{xe}1  \text{c}8+ 34
\text{g}2  \text{xh}4+ 35  \text{gx}4  \text{g}4+ etc.

32  \text{e}4  \text{c}5! 33  \text{g}4  \text{gf}4+! 34  \text{xf}4  \text{e}2! 35
\text{c}1  \text{xf}4+!(D)

35...\text{e}5 is wrong: 36  \text{xh}5  \text{xf}5+ 37  \text{g}3
and White can still resist.

36  \text{xf}4  \text{xf}5! 37  \text{gx}f5
The exchange of queens also doesn’t solve
White’s problems: 37  \text{xf}5  \text{xf}5 38  \text{xf}5  \text{xb}2
39  \text{xd}3  \text{cxd}3 40  \text{c}1  \text{f}8 41  \text{c}7  \text{e}8! with a
hopeless ending for White.

37...\text{xb}2 38  \text{e}1
38  \text{g}3  \text{h}2.

38...\text{f}2 39  \text{g}3  \text{xg}3+! 40  \text{hxg}3  \text{xb}1!
0-1
White resigned since he is unable to hold
black pawns after 41  \text{xb}1 c3 42  \text{b}8+  \text{h}7 43
\text{c}8 d2.

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points

Black took the command of this game thanks
to a strong positional exchange sacrifice. Without
a doubt, Petrosian was the world champion
most recognized for playing such sacrifices.
Let us see a sample:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
30...\text{c}4! 31  \text{wd}3
If 31  \text{xc}4, then 31...\text{dxc}4 32  \text{wc}2  \text{e}8 33
\text{c}1  \text{e}6! and Black is clearly better.

31...\text{e}8 32  \text{f}3  \text{b}4
Freening d6 for the knight.

33  \text{a}3  \text{xa}3 34  \text{xa}3  \text{d}6 35  \text{e}1  \text{f}5 36
\text{aa}1  \text{e}4+ 37  \text{xe}4  \text{xe}4 38  \text{wb}1  \text{wd}7!
The queen is beginning to act against the
weakened light squares.

39  \text{a}2  \text{ec}8 40  \text{xc}4  \text{dxc}4 41  \text{d}5
Trying to get some activity.

41...\text{xd}5 42  \text{d}1  \text{c}3 43  \text{c}2  \text{wh}3! 44  \text{g}1
Not, of course, 44  \text{xd}5?  \text{wh}2+ 45  \text{e}1
\text{g}1+ 46  \text{e}2  \text{wb}1.

44...\text{g}4
The black queen roams the light squares
with total freedom.

45  \text{g}2  \text{f}3+ 46  \text{h}2  \text{xe}3 47  \text{f}5
47  \text{d}1  \text{wd}3! 48  \text{g}4  \text{xc}2+! 49  \text{g}2
\text{xe}2+ 50  \text{xe}2  \text{e}3+ 51  \text{h}2  \text{e}8 with a win-
ning position.

47...\text{c}5 48  \text{f}1  \text{b}4 49  \text{f}6  \text{b}3 50  \text{f}2  \text{c}2 51
\text{c}1  \text{e}3 52  \text{f}7+  \text{f}8 53  \text{f}5  \text{b}2 54  \text{xb}2  \text{c}1\text{wb}
55  \text{xb}7+  \text{xb}7 56  \text{g}5+ 0-1
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Test 12 [Level 1]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Strengthening
the Position

17...\text{e}7!
Clearly the right square. From here the queen reinforces the somewhat exposed kingside and does not hinder the development of the queenside by means of ...b6, ...\(b7\) and ...\(ac8\). Therefore, if you chose this plan (Option B), you have earned 5 points. We give 2 points to the other choices.

18 \(\text{We}3\)

18 \(\text{Wac}1\) is better, hindering Black’s queenside development, though after 18...\(\text{Od}5\) Black also has a good game.

18...\(\text{Od}5!\) (D)

```
18 \(\text{We}3\)
18 \(\text{Wac}1\) is better, hindering Black’s queenside development, though after 18...\(\text{Od}5\) Black also has a good game.
18...\(\text{Od}5!\) (D)
```

This excellent move allows Black to take command of the battle, and thus highlights the dubious nature of White’s previous move.

19 \(\text{Xxd}5\)

Almost forced. Let us see some other possibilities:

a) 19 \(\text{We}4?\) \(\text{Oxf}4\) 20 \(\text{Wxf}4\) \(\text{O}h6\) 21 \(h4\) \(f6\) with a decisive advantage.

b) 19 \(\text{Wh}3?\) \(h6\) 20 \(\text{O}f3\) e5 winning.

c) 19 \(\text{Wg}3\) \(\text{Oxf}4\) 20 \(\text{Oxf}4\) \(\text{Oxd}4\).

19...\(\text{Exd}5!\)

The right capture, since it speeds up development. Taking with the rook would be very dubious as the following line proves: 19...\(\text{Xxd}5?\) 20 \(\text{O}c3!\) \(\text{Ad}8\) 21 \(d5!\) and White takes the lead.

20 \(\text{O}f3\)

Exchanging on \(e7\) first seems better.

20...\(\text{Wxe}3\) 21 \(\text{fxe}3\)

The natural 21 \(\text{Xxe}3\) is met by the unpleasant 21...\(\text{O}g4!\).

21...\(f6!\)

Keeping \(e5\) under control.

22 \(\text{Wac}1\) \(\text{O}f5\) 23 \(h3?!\) \(h5\)

Preventing \(g4-g5\), which would weaken the \(e5\)-square.

24 \(\text{Oc}3\) \(g5!\)

Gaining more ground and restricting the white pieces, while fixing the white kingside pawns.

25 \(\text{O}h2\) \(h4!\)

Completing the idea of the previous move.

26 \(\text{Od}2\) \(\text{Of7}\) 27 \(\text{Ob}3\)

The seemingly good 27 \(\text{Oxd}5?\) does not work on account of 27...\(\text{Xxd}5\) 28 \(e4\) \(\text{Xxd}4\) 29 \(\text{exf}5\) \(\text{Ad}8\).

27...\(\text{Wac}8\) 28 \(\text{Ob}5!??\) \(a6\) 29 \(\text{Oc}3\) \(b5!\)

Ruling out the threatened \(\text{O}a4\).

30 \(\text{Oe}2\)

30 \(\text{Oc}5\) seems better, although even in this case Black retains the advantage by 30...\(\text{Oxc}5!\) 31 \(\text{dxc}5\) \(d4\).

30...\(b4!\) 31 \(a4\) \(\text{He}8\) 32 \(\text{Of}2\) \(\text{Og}6\) 33 \(\text{Og}1!?\)

White wants to transfer this knight to d2, play \(\text{Oc}5\) and then move the other knight from d2 to b3. But as we shall see, this plan proves very slow in the face of energetic play by Black.

If 33 \(\text{Oc}5\) at once, then 33...\(\text{Oa}5!\) 34 \(\text{Oxa}6\) \(\text{Oc}4\) with advantage to Black.

33...\(\text{Oa}7!\) (D)

```
22 \(\text{Wac}1\) \(\text{O}f5\) 23 \(h3?!\) \(h5\)
24 \(\text{Oc}3\) \(g5!\)
25 \(\text{O}h2\) \(h4!\)
26 \(\text{Od}2\) \(\text{Of7}\) 27 \(\text{Ob}3\)
27...\(\text{Wac}8\) 28 \(\text{Ob}5!??\) \(a6\) 29 \(\text{Oc}3\) \(b5!\)
30 \(\text{Oe}2\)
30 \(\text{Oc}5\) seems better, although even in this case Black retains the advantage by 30...\(\text{Oxc}5!\) 31 \(\text{dxc}5\) \(d4\).
30...\(b4!\) 31 \(a4\) \(\text{He}8\) 32 \(\text{Of}2\) \(\text{Og}6\) 33 \(\text{Og}1!?\)
White wants to transfer this knight to d2, play \(\text{Oc}5\) and then move the other knight from d2 to b3. But as we shall see, this plan proves very slow in the face of energetic play by Black. If 33 \(\text{Oc}5\) at once, then 33...\(\text{Oa}5!\) 34 \(\text{Oxa}6\) \(\text{Oc}4\) with advantage to Black.
33...\(\text{Oa}7!\) (D)
```

A strong move, threatening not only the unpleasant ...\(\text{c}2\), but also defending the c8-rook.

34 \(\text{Oc}5\)

If 34 \(\text{Xxc}8\) \(\text{Xxc}8\) 35 \(\text{c}1\), then 35...\(\text{c}2\) 36 \(\text{Oa}1\) \(\text{xa}4!\) and the a7-knight begins to be noted.

34...\(\text{Wc}6!\)
Defending a6 and preparing to double rooks on the c-file.

35 \( \text{Qf3} \) \( \text{Qe8} \) 36 \( \text{b3} \)

36 \( \text{Qd2?} \) does not work: 36...\( \text{Qxc5} \) 37 \( \text{dxc5} \) \( \text{Qxc5} \) and if 38 \( \text{Qb3} \) then 38...\( \text{Qc2+} \) 39 \( \text{Qxc2} \) \( \text{Qxc2} \) 40 \( \text{Qc1} \) \( \text{Qxb3} \), again showing the important task fulfilled by the a7-knight.

36...\( \text{a5} \)

36...\( \text{Qxc5} \) would be unclear: 37 \( \text{dxc5} \) \( \text{Qxc5} \) 38 \( \text{Qxc5} \) \( \text{Qxc5} \) 39 \( \text{Qd4} \) threatening \( \text{Qd6} \) with some counterplay.

37 \( \text{Qe2} \) \( \text{Qe4!} \) (D)

A strong move that exerts pressure against the weakened white pawns, hindering the movement of the f3-knight.

38 \( \text{Qd2} \) \( \text{Qxc5} \) 39 \( \text{dxc5} \) \( \text{Qxc5} \) 40 \( \text{Qxc5} \) \( \text{Qxc5} \)

41 \( \text{Qxd4} \)

41 \( \text{Qd4} \) is bad due to 41...\( \text{Qc6!} \), removing the defender of the seventh rank: 42 \( \text{Qd6} \) \( \text{Qxd4!} \) 43 \( \text{exd4} \) \( \text{Qc2+} \) 44 \( \text{Qe1} \) \( \text{Qxg2} \).

41...\( \text{Qxc1} \) 42 \( \text{Qxc1} \) \( \text{Qc6} \) 43 \( \text{Qc7} \) \( \text{f5} \)

43...\( \text{d4} \) is hasty: 44 \( \text{exd4} \) \( \text{Qxf3} \) 45 \( \text{gxf3} \) \( \text{Qxd4} \) 46 \( \text{Qd1!} \) \( \text{Qxb3} \) 47 \( \text{Qxb6} \) \( \text{f5} \) 48 \( \text{Qc2} \) \( \text{g4} \) 49 \( \text{Qxb3!} \) \( \text{gxb3} \) 50 \( \text{Qc7} \).

44 \( \text{Qd2} \) \( \text{d4!} \) (D)

Now is the right moment.

45 \( \text{exd4} \)

After 45 \( \text{Qxd4} \) \( \text{Qxd4} \) 46 \( \text{exd4} \) \( \text{Qxg2} \) 47 \( \text{Qxa5} \) \( \text{g4} \) 48 \( \text{hgx4} \) \( \text{fxg4} \) 49 \( \text{Qxb4} \) \( \text{g3} \) 50 \( \text{Qe3} \) \( \text{Qf5} \) 51 \( \text{Qd6} \) \( \text{Qg4} \) the h-pawn is unstoppable.

45...\( \text{f4!} \) 46 \( \text{Qe2} \)

46 \( \text{Qe5+} \) does not work either: 46...\( \text{Qxe5} \) 47 \( \text{dxe5} \) \( \text{Qxg2} \) 48 \( \text{Qxa5} \) \( \text{Qxh3} \) 49 \( \text{Qxb4} \) \( \text{Qe6} \) 50 \( \text{Qc2} \) \( \text{h3} \), etc.

46...\( \text{d5} \) 47 \( \text{Qf2} \) \( \text{Qxb3} \) 48 \( \text{Qe5+} \) \( \text{Qxe5} \) 49 \( \text{dxe5} \) \( \text{Qxa5} \) 50 \( \text{Qxa5} \) \( \text{b3} \) 51 \( \text{Qc3} \) \( \text{Qf5} \) 52 \( \text{Qb2} \) \( \text{Qc6} \) 53 \( \text{Qf1} \) \( \text{d5} \) 54 \( \text{Qf2} \) \( \text{e4} \) 55 \( \text{Qe2} \) \( \text{Qc4+} \) 56 \( \text{Qd2} \)

If 56 \( \text{Qf2} \), then 56...\( \text{Qd3} \) 57 \( \text{Qf3} \) \( \text{Qe6} \) followed by ...\( \text{Qc2} \).

56...\( \text{f3} \) 57 \( \text{gxf3+} \) \( \text{Qxf3} \) 58 \( \text{e6} \) \( \text{Qxe6} \) 59 \( \text{Qf6} \) \( \text{g4} \) 60 \( \text{hxg4} \) \( \text{h3} \) 61 \( \text{Qe5} \) \( \text{Qxg4} \) 0-1

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 2 points

Test 13 [Level 1]

Themes: Open Files; Counterplay on the c-File

10...\( \text{cx b6} \)!

Despite chess theory teaching us we should take 'towards the centre', in the present case taking with the a-pawn would give Black a passive position where White keeps all the chances. Instead, taking with the c-pawn secures Black good counterplay on the c-file, with a particular focus on the c4-square. Therefore, if you chose the capture with the a-pawn (Option B) you got no points, but instead, if you chose the move (Option A), then you have earned 5 points.

11 \( \text{e3} \)

This seems better than 11 \( \text{e4} \)!, which looks somewhat unsteady after 11...\( \text{fxe4} \) 12 \( \text{fxe4} \) \( \text{Qb7} \) 13 \( \text{Qf2} \) (13 \( \text{Qd3} \)?) \( \text{Qxe4!} \) 13...\( \text{d6} \) 14 \( \text{Qd3} \) \( \text{e5} \) and Black is OK.

11...\( \text{Qc7} \)!
The exchange of bishops by ...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}a6} is one of Black's ideas, but he wants to save time for development, and thus he waits until White moves his bishop to d3 before offering the aforementioned exchange. Meanwhile, Black is making useful moves and the queen at c7 exerts pressure against White's weaknesses.

\textbf{12 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}d2} (D)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{solutions_page_85}
\end{center}

Now it seems like Black has no more useful waiting moves and he is forced to exchange bishops. However, as we are going to see, this is not true.

\textbf{12...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}e8}!}

The knight is going to d6, where it will put pressure on c4.

\textbf{13 c4!}

The only possible way, although White will have to withstand some pressure. Otherwise, Black would plant his knight on c4.

\textbf{13...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}a6}}

Starting the siege against the c-pawn.

\textbf{14 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}c1}}

The beginning of an ingenious idea.

\textbf{14...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}d6} 15 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}a4}!}

The reason for White's previous move. With this, he prevents Black from strengthening the pressure by moving the rook to c8. After the natural 15 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}b3} Black could increase the pressure with 15...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}c8}! 16 c5 bxc5 17 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc5 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}b6}}! offering a favourable simplification that would highlight White's lack of development, as well as the bad placing of the knight on the queenside: 18 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xb6 axb6} 19 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc8\texttt{+} \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc8} 20 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xa6 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xa6}} and Black is somewhat better.

\textbf{15...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}c6}!}

Entering a seemingly painful endgame for Black, but he has everything under control, as we shall see. If 15...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}e8}?! as Tal mentioned, then 16 c5! \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xf1} (16...b5 is necessary) 17 cxd6 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc1}+ 18 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc1 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc1}+ 19 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}d2 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}b5} 20 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xb5 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xh1} 21 d5!} and Black is in a very bad way.

\textbf{16 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc6}?!}

16 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}b3} would give Black more difficulties.

\textbf{16...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc6} 17 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}b4 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xb4}! 18 axb4 (D)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{solutions_page_85}
\end{center}

\textbf{18...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc4}!}

The ace Tal had up his sleeve. After this move, Black enters a somewhat favourable ending, due to the creation of a passed pawn on the queenside.

\textbf{19 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xc4 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}fc8} 20 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}xe6\texttt{+} dxe6} 21 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}d2 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}f7} 22 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash}f4} (D)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{solutions_page_85}
\end{center}

White puts pressure on the weak e6-pawn.

\textbf{22...a5}
And Black pushes his passed pawn.

23 bxa5 bxa5 24 ♘d3 a4 25 ♘xe8 ♘xe8 26 ♘a1 (D)

36 h3
If 36 ♗f7+ ♘f6 37 ♘f7, then 37...e5!, avoiding the mate at f6.

36...e5 37 dxe5?!
37 d5 was the correct continuation.

37...fxg4 38 hxg4 ♘xe5 39 ♘xa3 ♘c2+ 40 ♗f1 ♗f7
Not, of course, 40...♗xf3?? on account of 41 ♘a6+ ♗f7 42 ♘f6+ and the knight is captured.

41 e4 ♘d2
Black has very good drawing chances due to the scarce material on the board.

42 ♗e1 ♗g2!
If instead 42...♗d3? Black loses after 43 ♘a5! ♗e6 44 f4! ♘e3+ 45 ♗f1!.

43 ♘b3 ♘e7 44 ♗g7?! (D)

26...♗c4?!
Now Black is struggling. 26...♗a8 is correct.

27 ♘b1! a3
White is maybe a little better after 27...♘c7
28 d5! exd5 (but not 28...♗e5+? 29 ♘d4! ♗f6
30 ♘h5+) 29 ♘xd5 ♘c6 30 ♘b7+.

28 ♘b7+ ♗f6 29 ♘a7 g5?
As Tal mentioned, 29...♗b2+! was the right move: 30 ♘d2 ♘c4+ 31 ♘e2 ♘b2!, and if 32 ♘xa3 then 32...♗c2+ 33 ♘e1 ♘c4.

30 ♘h5+ ♗g6 31 g4!
Bringing about a mating-net.

31...♗b2+ 32 ♘d2 ♘c4+ 33 ♘d3 ♘b2+ 34 ♘d2 ♘c4+ 35 ♘e2 (D)

35...♗c6
The only move.

44...♗xf3+!
The white pawns are going to fall.

45 ♘xf3 ♘xe4 46 ♘f5+
46 ♘e3 also leads to a draw: 46...♗f6! 47 ♘h5+ ♘e5 48 ♘g3 h5!.

46...♗e6 47 ♘g3 h5 48 ♘xh5 ♘xe4+
The last pawn perishes, and with it every hope of a win for White. The rest of the game is a useless struggle.

49 ♗f2 ♘e5 50 ♘g3 ♘h4 51 ♘g7 ♘f4 52 ♘a3 ♘d4 53 ♘a6 ♘d6 54 ♘a7 ♘d4 55 ♘f7 ♘f4
56 ♘e7+ ♘f6 57 ♘a7 ♘e4 58 ♘h5+ ♘g6 59 ♘f3 ♘d4 60 ♘g3 ♘f4+ 61 ♘e3 ♘f7 62 ♘a5
♘f6 63 ♘e4 ♘f5 64 ♘a6+ ♘g7 65 ♘g3 ♘e5+
66 ♘d4 ♘b5 67 ♘e4 ♘f7 68 ♘f5 ♘b4+ 69 ♘d4 ♘b1 70 ♘f3 ♘b4+ 71 ♘d4 ♘b1 72 ♘c6
award 3 points to this idea. Let us see how a game proceeded with this plan: 18 c3 w3 (18...h5?!) 19 e5! cxe5 20 wx5 d5! (20...wx2 21 g3! threatening to win the queen with 22 a1 b1 23 b1 c3 24 h7+, as well as the strong breakthrough d5) with a level game in Weinstein-Bilek, Leipzig OL 1960.

Option B, seeking exchanges by 17...g4, does not work here, since White has no need to stop the threat of ...xf3 by playing 18 e4. With 18 h3! White simply wins important tempi, since Black has no better move than returning his knight to f6, for if 18...xf3? 19 xf3 h2+??, then 20 f1 gf6 21 f4 winning. So no points for this choice.

18 xf3 e5!

Continuing the plan started with the previous move.

19 g3?

Better was 19 d5 c5 and Black's game is preferable.

19...exd4 20 xe8+ xe8 21 f4 c6 22 f5 d8 (D)

White has sacrificed a centre pawn and we cannot see any compensation for it.

17...xf3!

This was Option C, consisting of taking on f3 in order to disrupt the white pawns by means of ...e5 – thus getting strong points for the knights – and the best line. If this was your choice, award yourself 5 points.

Option A, placing pressure on the hanging pawns by means of 17...w6!?, is a natural follow-up and gives Black quite a good game. We
Test 15 [Level 4]

Themes: Zwischenzug; The Order Changes the Result

In these positions, one of Black’s plans is to exchange bishops and gain counterplay on the c-file. Because of this, both 15...\(\text{\#f5}\) and 15...\(\text{\#xd4}\) (followed by \(\text{\#ac8}\)) are logical continuations. And why not combine both plans? This last plan seems to be ideal for Black, but which is the right order?

15...\(\text{\#xd4}\):

This is the right move-order; we exchange pawns first and then play \(\text{\#f5}\). If you saw the reason why it was necessary to exchange pawns first, then you have earned 5 points (Option B). Instead, trying to follow this plan by exchanging bishops first does not work. 15...\(\text{\#f5}\) 16 \(\text{\#f1}\) (D) and now:

\(\text{\#xb7}\) \(\text{\#a6}\) 38 \(\text{\#b4}\) \(\text{\#f7}\) 39 \(\text{\#e7}\) \(\text{\#e6}\) 40 \(\text{\#b7}\) \(\text{\#a1}\) 41 \(\text{\#h2}\) \(\text{\#xe7}\) 42 \(\text{\#xe7}\) 1-0 Shashin-Osnos, USSR 1980.

b) It is essential to keep the bishop on \(\text{f5}\) by 16...h5 17 \(\text{\#a2}\) \(\text{\#ac8}\) — once the bishop is fortified on \(\text{f5}\), we follow with the thematic counterplay on the c-file. The idea was mentioned in Option C and is quite good, apart from the loss of tempo compared to Option B. Thus we give it 3 points. Let us see a game with this idea: 18 \(\text{a4}\) \(\text{\#xd4}\) 19 \(\text{\#xd4}\) \(\text{\#c7}\) 20 \(\text{\#b5}\) \(\text{\#e6}\) 21 \(\text{\#a3}\) \(\text{\#fc8}\) 22 \(\text{\#f4}\) \(\text{\#xf4}\) 23 \(\text{\#exf4}\) \(\text{\#b6}\) 24 \(\text{\#wd2}\) a6 25 \(\text{\#e2}\) \(\text{\#c2}\) 26 \(\text{\#xc2}\) \(\text{\#xc2}\) 27 \(\text{\#e3}\) \(\text{\#a5}\) 28 \(\text{\#d1}\) \(\text{\#d2}\) 29 \(\text{\#c5}\) \(\text{\#d3}\) 30 \(\text{\#e7}\) \(\text{\#c7}\) 31 \(\text{\#f2}\) \(\text{\#xd1}\) 32 \(\text{\#xd1}\) \(\text{\#e4}\) 33 \(\text{\#b4}\) \(\text{\#xf3}\) 34 \(\text{\#e1}\) \(\text{\#g4}\) 35 \(\text{\#d2}\) \(\text{\#h1+}\) 36 \(\text{\#e2}\) \(\text{\#g2}\) 37 \(\text{\#e1}\) \(\text{\#wg1}\) 38 \(\text{\#e2}\) \(\text{\#f2}\) 39 \(\text{\#d1}\) \(\text{\#f1#}\) (0-1) Lerch-Roizman, corr. Ech 1979-83.

16 \(\text{\#xd4}\) \(\text{\#f5}\) 17 \(\text{\#f1}\)

Of course, the exchange of bishops is not advisable.

17...\(\text{\#ac8}\) 18 \(\text{\#a2}\) \(\text{\#c7}\) (D)

a) 16...\(\text{\#xd4}\)? is answered by the unpleasant zwischenschlag 17 \(g4!!\). After this unpleasant reply the bishop is doomed to passivity. The move-order can indeed change the result in chess! Therefore, Option A gets no points. 17...\(\text{\#e6}\) 18 \(\text{\#xd4}\) \(\text{\#e8}\) 19 \(h4\)! (White is playing with great power, forcing the black pieces to occupy passive positions) 19...\(\text{\#f5}\) 20 \(\text{\#g5}\) \(\text{\#d6}\) 21 \(\text{\#a2}!\) \(\text{\#fc8}\) 22 \(\text{\#h5}\) \(\text{\#f8}\) 23 \(\text{\#d4}\) \(\text{\#c6}\) 24 \(\text{\#g2}\) \(\text{\#c7}\) 25 \(\text{\#d2}\) a5 (25...\(\text{\#xc4}\) 26 \(\text{\#b4}!\)) 26 \(\text{\#h1}\) \(\text{\#c4}\) 27 \(\text{\#d3}\) \(\text{\#b2}\) 28 \(\text{\#b1}\) \(\text{\#xd3}\) 29 \(\text{\#xd3}\) g6 30 \(\text{\#b5}\) \(\text{\#wd6}\) 31 \(\text{\#xa5}\) \(\text{\#xa3}\) 32 \(\text{\#d2}\) \(\text{\#d6}\) 33 \(\text{\#b1}\) \(\text{\#gh5}\) 34 \(\text{\#xh5}\) \(\text{\#c2}\) 35 \(\text{\#f6+}\) \(\text{\#h8}\) 36 \(\text{\#b4}\) \(\text{\#d3}\) 37 \(\text{\#xb7}\) \(\text{\#a6}\) 38 \(\text{\#b4}\) \(\text{\#f7}\) 39 \(\text{\#e7}\) \(\text{\#e6}\) 40 \(\text{\#b7}\) \(\text{\#a1}\) 41 \(\text{\#h2}\) \(\text{\#xe7}\) 42 \(\text{\#xe7}\) 1-0 Shashin-Osnos, USSR 1980.

19 \(\text{\#d2}\)

The idea was tested for the first time in the game Lin Weiguo-Ivanchuk, Adelaide jr Wch 1988: 19 \(g4\) \(\text{\#fc8}\)! (Black’s whole plan is based on this idea — again a zwischenschlag — impeding the white bishop) 20 \(\text{\#d2}\) \(\text{\#c2}\) 21 \(\text{\#wal}\) \(\text{\#b3}\) 22 \(\text{\#b2}\) \(\text{\#c4}\) 23 \(\text{\#d3}\) \(\text{\#xd3}\) 24 \(\text{\#xd3}\)

The exchange of bishops has diminished White’s chances of active play. Besides, Black
is strengthening his grip on the light squares (especially c4).

\[ 24...b6 \ 25. d2 \ \text{Qd}e8 \ 26. b4 \ h6 \ 27. \text{Qf}4?! \]
\[ \text{Qxf}4 \ 28. \text{exf}4 \ (D) \]

The knight is much better than the bishop here.

\[ 28...\text{Ec}1 \ 29. \text{Be}2 \ \text{Exe}1+ \ 30. \text{Exe}1 \ a5 \ 31. \text{d}2 \ \text{Ed}6 \ 32. g4 \ \text{Ee}8! \ 33. \text{Ee}5 \ \text{Ec}4! \ 34. \text{Exe}8+ \ \text{Exe}8 \ 35. \text{Ec}1 \ \text{Ee}1+ \ 36. \text{Wf}1 \ \text{Wf}3 \ 37. \text{Wd}1 \ b5 \ 38. f5 \ b4 \ 39. \text{axb}4 \ \text{axb}4 \ 40. \text{g}2 \ b3 \ 41. \text{g}3 \ b2 \]
\[ 42. \text{f}4 \ \text{Wf}4 0-1 \]

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 3 points

Let us see a classical example that shows very well the risks for Black in these positions when he lacks active counterplay:

**Gheorghiu – Fischer**

*Havana OL 1966*

\[ 1. \text{d}4 \ \text{Qf}6 \ 2. \text{c}4 \ \text{e}6 \ 3. \text{Qc}3 \ \text{b}4 \ 4. \text{f}3 \ \text{d}5 \ 5. \text{a}3 \ \text{xc}3+ \ 6. \text{bxc}3 \ 0-0 \ 7. \text{cx}d5 \ \text{ex}d5 \ 8. \text{e}3 \ \text{Qh}5 \ 9. \text{Wc}2 \ \text{Ee}8 \ 10. \text{g}4! \ \text{Qf}4 \ 11. \text{h}4 \ \text{c}5 \ 12. \text{Qf}2! \]

The logical follow-up. The king is perfectly safe on f2.

\[ 12...\text{Qg}6 \ 13. \text{Qd}3! \]

Better than 13 h5 at once. The advance of the h-pawn will be even more effective later.

\[ 13...\text{Qc}6 \ 14. \text{Qe}2 \ \text{Qe}6?! \ (D) \]

\[ 15. \text{g}5! \]

Launching a decisive pawn-storm against the black kingside.

\[ 15...\text{Ec}8 \ 16. \text{h}5! \ \text{Qf}8 \ 17. \text{g}6! \ \text{fx}g6 \ 18. \text{hx}g6 \ \text{h}6 \]
\[ 19. \text{Wb}1 \ \text{Qa}5 \ 20. \text{Qf}4 \ \text{c}4 \ 21. \text{Qc}2 \ \text{Ec}6 \ 22. \text{Qa}2 \ \text{Qd}7 \ 23. \text{a}4! \ \text{Qf}6 \ 24. \text{Qa}3 \ \text{Wd}7 \ 25. \text{Qb}2 \ \text{b}6 \ 26. \text{Qb}5! \ \text{Qb}7 \ 27. \text{e}4! \ \text{dx}e4 \ 28. \text{Qxe}4 \ \text{Ecc}8 \ 29. \text{Qe}5! \]
\[ \text{Qg}4 \ 30. \text{Qd}5! \]

Ending all Black’s hopes.

\[ 30...\text{Exe}5 \ 31. \text{Qxf}6+ \ \text{gx}f6 \ 32. \text{dxe}5 \ \text{Qe}5 \ 33. \text{Qc}5 \ \text{Wd}2+ \ 34. \text{g}3 \ \text{Qxf}3 \ 35. \text{Qxf}3 \ \text{Qxe}5 \ 36. \text{Qf}4 \ \text{Qg}7 \ 39. \text{Qe}4 \]
\[ \text{h}5 \ 40. \text{Qd}1 \ \text{Qe}7 \ 41. \text{Qd}5 \ \text{Qh}6 \ 42. \text{Qd}6 \ \text{Qg}7 \ 43. \text{Qc}6 \ \text{h}4 \ 44. \text{Qxc}4 \ \text{h}3 \ 45. \text{Qg}3 \ \text{Qh}6 \ 46. \text{Qb}1 \ \text{Qe}3+ \]
\[ 47. \text{Qh}2 \ \text{Qe}1 \ 48. \text{Qh}4+ \ \text{Qg}5 \ 49. \text{g}7 \ 1-0 \]

**Test 16** [Level 5]

*Themes: Dynamic vs Static Elements; Static Elements Prevail*

\[ 18. \text{Qh}6 \]

This is the possibility suggested in Option A. The idea is to play against d6, thus restricting the movements of the f6-knight. However, this plan is ineffective, as the game itself will prove. For this reason we give only 1 point to this line.

Option B is the one causing Black most problems: 18 \text{b}2! (D), and now:

a) The move 18...b6 was met by an interesting rook sacrifice in one game: 19 \text{xb}6!? \text{xb}6 20 \text{Wb}5 and then:

a1) 20...\text{d}7 21 \text{Wxc}5+ \text{b}7 22 \text{Qxd}6 \text{e}8 23.0-0! \text{Wc}8?! (23...\text{Ec}8 is better) 24 \text{Qb}1 \text{Wxc}5 25 \text{Qxc}5 \text{Qa}6 26 \text{Qd}4! followed by c5.

a2) 20...\text{e}8! 21 \text{Wxc}5+ \text{b}7 22 \text{Qxd}6 \text{g}6 23 \text{Wc}7+ \text{a}6 24 \text{Qd}4 gives White enough
compensation for the rook, but probably no more than that.

a3) 20...\(\texttt{a}6\) leads to a very complex position where White has excellent possibilities; e.g., 21 \(\texttt{Wxc5+} \texttt{Ke7} 22 \texttt{Wb5+} \texttt{Ke8} 23 \texttt{Qd4} \texttt{\textit{Qa}8} 24 \texttt{Qc6+} \texttt{Qxc6} 25 \texttt{dx6} \texttt{Qxc7} 26 \texttt{Wxa5} \texttt{Qg6} 27 \texttt{c5!} \texttt{dx5} 28 \texttt{Qxe4}! \texttt{Qg8} 29 \texttt{b1} \texttt{f3} 30 \texttt{b5} \texttt{Qf5} 31 \texttt{Qa2!} \texttt{Qe6} 32 \texttt{Qxd5} \texttt{Qxd5} 33 \texttt{Qxd1} \texttt{f4} 34 \texttt{Qxd5+}! 1-0 Bangiev-Zhugda, corr. 1989.

b) 18...\(\texttt{Qa}6\) 19 \(\texttt{Qb}5\) \(\texttt{Qe}8!\) (19...\(\texttt{Qe}5?!\) 20 \(\texttt{Qxe4!} \texttt{Qxc4} 21 \texttt{Qxc5+!}; 19...\(\texttt{Qb}8\) 20 \(\texttt{Qc}1!\) (the knight goes to b3, where it will press on a5) 20...\(\texttt{Qa}7\) 21 \(\texttt{Qb}3\) b6 and the a6-rook remains excluded from play, with a favourable game for White) 20 \(\texttt{Qc}1\) (Bangiev’s suggestion 20 \(\texttt{Qxd4?!}\) is interesting) 20...\(\texttt{Qg4}\) 21 \(\texttt{Qd}1\) \(\texttt{Qg}6\) 22 \(\texttt{Qc}2\) b6 and although the position is unclear, White’s game looks more pleasant, Bangiev-Ionov, Budapest 1990. If you chose Option B and captured a good part of its spirit, then you have earned 5 points.

The idea mentioned under C is also interesting, since it prevents Black from consolidating the queenside, as happens with A: 18 \(\texttt{Wb}5?!\), and then:

a) 18...\(\texttt{Qa}6\) 19 \(\texttt{Qb}2\)! and now the move \(\texttt{Qh}6\) makes itself felt since the black king cannot be transferred to a7. Black cannot contemplate 19...\(\texttt{Qb}6??\) 20 \(\texttt{Wxa5}\) or 19...\(\texttt{Qb}8??\) 20 \(\texttt{Wxa6}\).

b) 18...\(\texttt{Qg}4!\) and then:

b1) 19 \(\texttt{Qd}4?!\) is an interesting possibility, even though White gets very little if Black plays correctly. For instance: 19...\(\texttt{cxd4}\) 20 \(\texttt{c5} \texttt{Qd}8\) 21 \(\texttt{cx}d6\) \(\texttt{Qf}8\)! (a precise reply; from here Black is planning to push the f-pawn and at the same time ...\(\texttt{Qh}8\)) 22 \(\texttt{cxd4} \texttt{f5}\) followed by ...\(\texttt{Qh}8\) and it seems like White has not enough compensation for the piece.

b2) 19 \(\texttt{Qb}2\) \(\texttt{f5}\) with a good game for Black after ...\(\texttt{Qge}5\), or else ...\(\texttt{Qa}6\) controlling \(\texttt{b6}\) followed by ...\(\texttt{Qde}5\). If you chose Option C, then you have earned 3 points.

18...\(\texttt{Qa}6!\)

Defending \(\texttt{d6}\) and other important queenside squares, while threatening a possible ...\(\texttt{Qb}6\), neutralizing White’s pressure on the b-file.

19 \(\texttt{Qb}5\) (D)

19...\(\texttt{Qb}8!\)

Black wants to put his king on a7, thus escaping the gaze of the g3-bishop.

20 \(\texttt{Qb}2\) \(\texttt{Qa}7\)

Completing the plan; furthermore, Black now threatens ...\(\texttt{Qb}6\) followed by ...\(\texttt{Qd}7\) (this had been impossible with the king at b8, when moving the knight allows \(\texttt{Wxc}5\)), and we see now how important is the role played by the rook on a6.

21 \(\texttt{Wb}3\) \(\texttt{Qg}4!\)

Now that Black has consolidated his position, he launches a pawn-storm on the kingside. White is almost defenceless.

22 \(\texttt{Qh}1\) \(\texttt{f5}\) 23 \(\texttt{Qd}1\)

Transferring the king to a safer place, although this does not prove useful. White’s initiative on the queenside has gone out and Black’s counterplay is overpowering.

23...\(\texttt{Qb}6\) 24 \(\texttt{Wa}2\) \(\texttt{Qxb}2\) 25 \(\texttt{Wxb}2\) \(\texttt{b}6\)

Black is not in a hurry since White lacks any counterplay. Thus, before starting decisive
actions he strengthens the position to the utmost, avoiding unpleasant surprises. With his last move, Black provides the bishop access to a6, where it will press against the c4-pawn.

26 \( \text{b3} \) 26 \( \text{a6} \) 27 \( \text{c1} \) f8!

Transferring the knight to g6. From there it will support the advance of the f-pawn.

28 \( \text{e2} \) g6 (D)

\[ \text{W} \]

29 \( \text{d2} \) f6 30 \( \text{d1} \) f4! 0-1

Option A: 1 point

Option B: 5 points

Option C: 3 points

Test 17 [Level 5]

Themes: Blockade; How to Battle Against Blockade

18 \( \text{d4!} \)

The idea suggested under Option B and the best choice. If you chose this move and your analysis more or less coincided with the following, award yourself 5 points.

The plan of transferring the bishop to f4 in order to interfere with the black blockading pieces, and inducing the advance of his central pawns for a later blockade, proves to be wrong. Thus, if you chose Option A, you win no points: 18 \( \text{c1?!} \) f6! 19 \( \text{f4?} \) (White follows his plan, even though here it was required to play 19 f4) 19...e5 20 \( \text{d2} \) d4 21 \( \text{d5} \) c6! 22 \( \text{xf6+} \) xf6 23 \( \text{xe6} \) \( \text{xc6} \) 24 \( \text{f6} \) f6 25 \( \text{b3+} \) h8 26 \( \text{f1} \) c7 27 \( \text{c4} \) ab5! (D).

White’s plan proves to be a fiasco. His pawns are perfectly blockaded and immobilized, while the black central pawns are far from being blockaded and threaten to advance dangerously. 28 \( \text{be1} \) h6 29 g4! (with the idea of transferring the knight to e4 via g3) 29...\( \text{be8?} \) (a serious mistake allowing White to blockade on e4; he should move the other rook: 29...\( \text{f8} \) 30 fxe5 fxe5 31 \( \text{g3} \) e4!) 30 f5? (returning the favour; after 30 fxe5! fxe5 31 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{xf1+} \) 32 \( \text{xf1} \! \) White will blockade on e4 since 32...e4? does not work on account of 33 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{xe4} \) 34 \( \text{f8+} \) h7 35 \( \text{f5+} \) h8 36 \( \text{xe4} \) 37 \( \text{d5} \! \) 38 \( \text{c1} \) h7! (taking care of every threat) 32 \( \text{g3} \) e4! 33 \( \text{f4} \) e3 34 \( \text{d1} \) \( \text{c4} \) 35 h4 \( \text{d5} \! \) 36 g5 d3 37 \( \text{g4} \) \( \text{g8} \) (White’s threats are very simple and they can be easily neutralized) 38 \( \text{h5} \) \( \text{e4} \) 39 g6+ \( \text{h8} \) 40 \( \text{g3} \) 0-1 (40...d2! follows) Gligorić-Szabo, Helsinki OL 1952.

Option C is somewhat better, though it causes Black no problems either. After 18 \( \text{d3} \), the threat of b5 is easily met by 18...\( \text{b5} \! \) 19 \( \text{b2} \) f6 (19...\( \text{ec7!} \)?) preventing the knight jump to d4. Black has no problems. 1 point for this choice.

18...\( \text{c7} \) 19 f4 \( \text{f6} \) 20 \( \text{d2} \) e8?!

This interesting position deserves some analysis. The natural move is 20...\( \text{ab5} \), but, as we shall see, it does not hold the position. 21 \( \text{cxb5} \! \) (taking with the right knight, since the one at d4 is going to act against b5 and c6 too) 21...\( \text{xd5} \! \) 22 \( \text{b2} \), and then:

a) 22...\( \text{xd4} \) makes things easy for White: 23 \( \text{xd4} \) \( \text{xd4} \! \) 24 \( \text{xd4} \) \( \text{b5} \! \) (Black cannot prevent f5 by playing 24...g6 since it will be
met with 25 \texttt{ec1 \texttt{c6} 26 \texttt{f1! \texttt{d7} 27 \texttt{b5! \texttt{xb5} 28 \texttt{xb5}) 25 \texttt{f5! with a crushing advantage.}}}

b) 22...\texttt{xd4+} (by getting rid of the second knight, Black seems to secure the blockading positions) 23 \texttt{xd4 \texttt{c6} 24 \texttt{e5! \texttt{a8} 25 \texttt{wb2!}}

(in addition to the previous move, this casts doubt over Black's whole idea, forcing the advance of the f-pawn, thus weakening the e-pawn) 25...\texttt{f6 26 \texttt{d4 \texttt{wd7} 27 \texttt{h3! \texttt{fe8} 28 \texttt{e3! followed by \texttt{be1 with advantage.}}}}

We shall pay attention to the direct continuation 20...\texttt{xd4+!}, winning a tempo in comparison with the aforementioned line: 21 \texttt{xd4 \texttt{cb5} 22 \texttt{xb5 \texttt{xb5} 23 \texttt{wd3 \texttt{c6!}} (but not 23...\texttt{a8?!}) 24 \texttt{b2 \texttt{c6} 24...\texttt{a2 25 \texttt{wb3!} 25 \texttt{f5!} 24 \texttt{b2 \texttt{wd7}} and although White is slightly better, Black's position is very sound.

21 \texttt{ce2!}

Strengthening the d4-knight.

21...\texttt{cb5} 22 \texttt{b2 \texttt{c6} 23 \texttt{xb5!}

23 \texttt{xc6?! would be a positional mistake: 23...\texttt{xc6} 24 \texttt{d4 \texttt{xd4+!} 25 \texttt{xd4 \texttt{wd7 and Black holds firm on his blockading squares.}}

23...\texttt{xb5} 24 \texttt{f1! (D)}

The pawn is indirectly defended. The bishop targets the b5-square, thus breaking the blockade.

24 \texttt{xf6 leads to nothing: 24...\texttt{xf6} 25 \texttt{c3 \texttt{xb4} 26 \texttt{xd5 exd5 27 \texttt{xe8+ \texttt{xe8} 28 \texttt{xb4 \texttt{xb4} 29 \texttt{xb4 \texttt{a1+ with full equality.}}}}}

24...\texttt{e7 25 \texttt{xf6 \texttt{xf6} 26 \texttt{c1 \texttt{bb8}}}

26...\texttt{bb7?! is interesting, although after the correct 27 \texttt{a6! (27 \texttt{d3 would let Black press against the b-pawn by 27...\texttt{eb8} 27...\texttt{bb8 28 \texttt{d3 \texttt{c8 White would be better.}})

27 \texttt{d3 \texttt{ec8} 28 \texttt{f2 \texttt{xe8? (D)}}}}

This lets White push his pawns. Without a doubt, it was required to play 28...\texttt{a7.}

29 \texttt{b5! \texttt{d4} 30 \texttt{b6 \texttt{c6} 31 \texttt{ec1 g5 32 \texttt{b4 gxf4 33 \texttt{xf4 \texttt{e7? 34 \texttt{a6 \texttt{d8} 35 \texttt{wc7! \texttt{wg5 36 \texttt{ff4?}})}}}}

As Marin pointed out in his notes to the game, the following continuation wins: 36 \texttt{xc6 \texttt{xc6} 37 \texttt{wc6 \texttt{wc} 38 \texttt{f1 \texttt{wf3+ 39 \texttt{e1 \texttt{e2+ 40 \texttt{g1+ and here 41 \texttt{d2 looks most convincing: 41...\texttt{d4+ 42 \texttt{d3 \texttt{a8} 43 \texttt{wb5, etc.}}}}}}}

36...\texttt{xf4 37 gxf4 \texttt{f8} 38 \texttt{b5 \texttt{dc8} 39 \texttt{a6 \texttt{d8} 40 \texttt{b5 \texttt{dc8} 41 \texttt{a6 \texttt{b7} 42 \texttt{f2 \texttt{e7 43 \texttt{e3 \texttt{d7} 44 \texttt{g1 \texttt{f6 45 \texttt{xc6! \texttt{xc6} 46 \texttt{b4 \texttt{bb8} 47 \texttt{a1 \texttt{b5}} 48 \texttt{d4 \texttt{f5 49 \texttt{a7 f6 50 \texttt{ff7!}}}}}}}}}}

Bringing about a matting-net.

50...\texttt{xb6 51 \texttt{c2! e5+}

51...\texttt{bb8?? 52 \texttt{e3+ \texttt{xf4 53 \texttt{xf6#}.}}

52 \texttt{fxe5 \texttt{xc6} 53 \texttt{e3+ \texttt{f4 54 \texttt{xd5+ \texttt{f5} 55 \texttt{e3+ \texttt{f4 56 \texttt{g4+ \texttt{f3 57 \texttt{xf6+ \texttt{xf6 58 \texttt{g3+ \texttt{f4 59 \texttt{d5+ \texttt{f5 60 \texttt{f3+ \texttt{g4 61 \texttt{xf6 h5 62 \texttt{c6 \texttt{h3 63 \texttt{e7 h4 64 \texttt{f8 \texttt{e8} 65 \texttt{xe8 \texttt{xe8} 66 \texttt{e6 \texttt{c6} 67 \texttt{e8 \texttt{e8} 68 \texttt{xe8 \texttt{xd3 h3 70 \texttt{f6 1-0 Option A: 0 points Option B: 5 points Option C: 1 point}}}}}}}}}

Now we are going to see an interesting game for the theory of this variation:
Salov – M. Gurevich  
Leningrad 1987

1 d4 ∆f6 2 c4 e6 3 ∆c3 ∆b4 4 e3 c5 5 ∆ge2 cxd4 6 exd4 d5 7 a3 ∆e7 8 c5 0-0-9 g3 b6 10 b4 bxc5 11 dxc5 a5 12 ∆b1 ∆c6 13 ∆g2 ∆b8!  
D

An interesting idea. Black is exerting pressure on the white pawns without exchanging by ...axb4. The upshot is that White does not have the a3-square for his bishop.

14 ∆f4
14 b5 ∆xc5! 15 bxc6 ∆xb1 16 ∆xb1 ∆b6! and Black wins many pawns in return for the bishop.

14 ∆a4 leads to complicated play: 14...axb4 15 axb4 (not, of course, 15 ∆xc6? because of the reply 15...∆d7).

Gurevich suggested 14 ∆d4 later, although Black got a good game after 14...∆xd4 15 ∆xd4 ∆d7! 16 0-0 ∆a6 17 ∆d1 ∆f6 18 ∆wd2 axb4 19 axb4 ∆e5 20 ∆c2 ∆c6! in Marin-Portisch, Szirak Iz 1987.

14...axb4!

An excellent positional exchange sacrifice, which reduces the white pawn-mass to ashes. Not, of course, 14...e5? due to 15 ∆xd5!.

15 ∆xb8 ∆xc3 16 ∆a4

After 16 ∆d6 ∆xd6 17 cxd6 ∆a5! 18 0-0 ∆xa3 Black is better too.

16...∆xb8 17 ∆xb8 ∆d7! 18 ∆a8 ∆xc5 19 ∆b5

Other queen moves would not save White from a catastrophe.

19...∆d6! 20 ∆f3 ∆a6 21 ∆xf8+ ∆xf8 22 ∆a5

If 22 ∆b1 there comes 22...∆d3+ 23 ∆f1 ∆c5! with a decisive threat against f2.

22...∆d3+ 23 ∆f1 ∆e5 24 ∆xc3 d4 25 ∆b3 ∆c4 0-1

White resigned in view of 26 ∆b7 ∆xf3 27 ∆xf3 ∆d5.

Test 18 [Level 2]

Themes: Space Advantage; Increasing the Advantage with no Hurry

17 ∆d1!

White enjoys a space advantage, and since Black lacks counterplay, he must keep waiting. For this reason, White should play carefully, without hurrying and giving the opponent no chances for counterplay.

Thus the idea behind Option A, of breaking with f4 at once, is not altogether advisable, as the following variation shows: 17 f4?! exf4 18 gxf4 ∆b6 19 ∆c2 e7 20 ∆e2 ∆e8 21 ∆f1? ∆h5 with good counterplay for Black. So we give no points for this choice.

The text-move begins Option B, and its purpose is to strengthen the position to the utmost before starting action. This is possible because Black is not able to take advantage of this quiet play. White prevents the knight jump to g4 (securing the e3-square for the rook). Then, White is going to double rooks on the e-file, strengthening the e-pawn, in order to play f4 in good conditions. If this was your reasoning, and the basis for choosing this plan, then you have earned 5 points.

17...∆e7 18 ∆e3 ∆a5 19 ∆f1! (D)

Pursuing the policy of consolidation.

19 f4 is somewhat hasty again on account of 19...exf4 20 gxf4 ∆be8 with good counterplay for Black.

19...∆h8!?

Freening g8 for the rook, in order to hinder the advance f4.

20 ∆h3!

White is still in no hurry. Now it is the turn of the bishop, which gets more play along this
This move proves how deep was White's plan when playing 20 h3. Before breaking with f4 or b4, it is necessary to exchange the knight that controls the squares c5 and e5.

25...\(\text{Nxd7} 26 \text{f4! Nge8} 27 \text{b4! cxb4} \)

If 27...\(\text{exf4}, \) then 28 \(\text{Nxf4!} \) is the right recapture. The knight will go to d3, watching the squares e5 and c5.

28 \(\text{Nxb4} f5 29 \text{Nc3} \)

The line suggested by Karpov was indeed better: 29 c5! \(\text{dxc5} 30 \text{Nxc5 exf4} 31 \text{Nxf4} \text{fxe4} 32 \text{Nxe4 Nxe4} 33 \text{Nxe4 Nc8} 34 \text{Nc7 Ng4} 35 \text{Nf2} \) with advantage for White.

29...\(\text{exf4} 30 \text{gxf4 fxe4} 31 \text{Nxe4 Nh5} 32 \text{c5! dxc5} \text{Nc4} \text{Nxf4} 34 \text{d6! Ne5?!} \)

34...Nbd7 is more stubborn.

35 \text{d7 Ne8} 36 \text{Nc3! h5} \)

Better was 36...h6 37 \text{Nf3 Ng4} 38 \text{Nh7 Ne6} 39 Ne1 (39...Nh7?!) 39...Nf5! and not everything is clear.

37 Nh3 Nh4? 38 Nh7! Ng8 39 Nh1! g5

39...Nf5 loses to 40 Nh5!.

40 Ng3 Nh5 41 Nh6 Nd8 42 Nh1 Ng8 43 Ne8+! 1-0

Option A: 0 points

Option B: 5 points

Test 19 [Level 2]

Themes: Space Advantage; Restricting the Opponent’s Position

9 \(\text{Nxd2!} \)

The capture indicated in Option A. 9 \(\text{Nxd2} \) (Option B) leads to a very comfortable game for Black after 9...\(\text{cxd4} 10 \text{Nxd4 Nc6} \) followed by ...\(\text{Nc8} \) with good counterplay. If this was your choice, then you have scored 1 point.

9...\(\text{cxd4} \)

9...d5 looks somewhat better.

10 Nh4!

The reason for taking with the bishop on the previous move. Now the bishop is going to settle firmly on d6, seriously restricting Black's game.

10...\(\text{Nc8} \)

Not, of course, 10...d6? 11 \(\text{Nxd4} \) winning the d-pawn.
11 $\text{d6!} \ (D)$

![Chess Diagram]

The successful outcome of the plan started on move 9. If you chose Option A, foreseeing so far, then you have earned 5 points. The difference between taking on d2 with bishop or queen is evident now. If you preferred Option C, which indicated there was no difference taking with one piece or the other, you get the same score as in B (1 point).

11...$\text{e4?}$

Black is not going to free his game after this move. Some annotators mentioned the capture on f3 as a better choice, though Black’s play is far from being satisfactory. After 11...$\text{xf3}$ we have the same problem again: with which piece should we take?

a) 12 $\text{xf3?! e6} \ 13 \text{xc6} \ (\text{the only move in view of} \ 13...e5) \ 13...\text{xc6} \ 14 \text{xd4 e4!} \ 15 \text{f1} \text{ and White is only slightly better.}$

b) 12 $\text{exf3! e6} \ 13 f4! \ (\text{the reason for taking with the pawn: White prevents the threat of} \ ...e5 \text{ and Black’s position remains very unstable}) \ 13...\text{c8} \ 14 b3?? \ (\text{better is} \ 14 \text{c1! a5} \ 15 \text{d3}) \ 14...\text{e7!} \ 15 g4! \ h6 \ 16 h3 b5 \ 17 c5! \ e6 \ 18 \text{e1 d5} \ 19 \text{d}3 \ 16 \text{xd5 exd5} \ 21 \text{f5 e6} \ 22 \text{xd5 exel+} \ 23 \text{exe1 a5} \ 24 \text{e4 xa3} \ 25 g5 hxg5 \ 26 fxg5 g6 \ 27 \text{f4 d8} \ 28 \text{h4 e6} \ 29 \text{e5 a1+} \ 30 \text{h2 g7} \ 31 \text{xg7} \ 1-0 \text{Polulakhov-Kruszynski, Poland 1991.}$

12 $\text{xd4 a6}$

If 12...$\text{xd6}$, then 13 $\text{xd6 e7} \ 14 \text{fd1}$ and Black is tied up again.

13 $b4 \text{c8} \ 14 \text{ac1 xd6} \ 15 \text{xd6 c7} \ 16 \text{fd1 e7} \ 17 \text{d3! xf3}$

17...h6? would be met by 18 $\text{g5!}$.

18 $\text{xf3 e8} \ (D)$

19 $\text{b7!}$

An original idea. White is going to transfer the bishop to the f1-a6 diagonal, supporting the advance of his queenside pawns.

19...$\text{c7} \ 20 \text{a6! c6}$

One additional feature of having the bishop on a6 is that Black cannot play 20...$\text{d6}$ because of 21 $\text{b5!}$, exchanging the e8-knight and winning the d-pawn.

21 $\text{b3 b8} \ 22 \text{a4!}$

The queen is going to b5, helping in the advance of the queenside pawns.

22...$\text{c7} \ 23 \text{b5 f6} \ 24 \text{f3}$

Restricting the knight.

24...$\text{d5}$

An attempt to free his game. If 24...$\text{e8}$, then 25 $\text{d6!}$ and Black remains tied up.

25 $\text{c5 h5} \ (D)$
26 a4! \e8 27 cxb6 axb6 28 a5! \xc1 29 \xc1 \we5

If 29...bxa5, then 30 \xb8 \xb8 31 bxa5 \a8 32 \c8+ \xc8 33 \d3 \xc8 and Black cannot stop the a-pawn.

30 \xb6 d4 31 \h1 \e3 32 \f1 e5 33 \d3 h4 34 gxh4 \f4 35 \g1 \hxh4 36 a6 g6 37 \a7 \g7 38 \xg6! 1-0

Black resigned since 38...fxg6 is met by 39 \xb7+ followed by the pawn promotion.

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 1 point

The following position is interesting because White carried out an idea similar to the one in the game we have just seen:

Test 20 [Level 5]

Themes: Prophylaxis; Thwarting the Opponent’s Plans

15 \he1!

White is making preparations for advancing the f-pawn. Black’s plan, consisting of the transfer of the knight to e6, replying to f4 with ...f5 blockading the mass of white pawns, will not succeed due to the pressure generated by the queen and the rook on the e-file. If this was your assessment, and you chose Option B, then you have earned 5 points.

With the idea mentioned in Option A, Black is able to carry out his plan, getting a good position: 15 \ac1 \d8 (the knight is going to e6, where it will blockade the e-pawn, put pressure on d4 and support the advance ...c5) 16 \b2 \e6 17 \hd1 \ae8! (Black wants to play ...f5, so he puts the rook on the e-file, in case White takes en passant) 18 \d3 f5! (D).

This was the game Litinskaya-Gurieli, Zel’znovodsk wom IZ 1985, with a very promising position for Black. We give 1 point for this choice.

Another plan is the one mentioned under Option C, consisting of doubling rooks on the d-file, preventing ...c5. White has successfully used this plan in some games although Black can develop his own plan and gets a safe position. We give 3 points to this plan. Let us see a sample: 15 \hd1 \d8 16 \d3 \e6 17 \ad1
\( \text{Solutions} \)

\( \text{B} \)

18...f5 (playing 17...f5?! at once deserves attention too) 18 \( \text{b2 (D)} \) and then:

a) 18...f5 frees Black’s position again. After 19 exf6 \( \text{xf6} \) the game is more or less equal.

b) Black played 18...g6 19 \( \text{c1 f5} \) in another game which has instructional value since it shows how comfortable Black’s position is if White does not take \text{en passant}: 20 \( \text{g1?!} \) (20 exf6) 20...f7 21 \( \text{e1} \) and Black will launch a pawn assault on the kingside. The action of the e6-knight, blockading the e-pawn, pressing against the d4-pawn and supporting actions on both flanks, is noteworthy: 21...g5! 22 \( \text{g2 f4} \) 23 h4 \( \text{ef8} \) 24 \( \text{g4 h8} \) 25 h5 \( \text{e8} \) 26 \( \text{h2 b4} \) 27 a3 \( \text{e7} \) 28 \( \text{b2 a5} \) 29 \( \text{d2 d7} \) 30 \( \text{e1 f5} \) 31 \( \text{d1} \) 32 \( \text{g4} \) 33 \( \text{f3 g8} \) 34 \( \text{xg5} \) 35 \( \text{f3 g8} \) 36 \( \text{xg5} \) 37 \( \text{xf3} \) 38 \( \text{g4} \) 0-1 Neverov-Solozhenkin, St Petersburg 1998.

c) 18...\( \text{h8} \) 19 \( \text{c1} \) was played in Petursson-M. Gurevich, Akureyri 1988. Petursson himself noted that now, instead of the weak 19...c6?! Black could have equalized with the thematic 19...f5. He gives 20 exf6 \( \text{xf6} \) 21 \( \text{e3 g5} \) 22 \( \text{xg5} \) \( \text{xf6} \) 23 \( \text{xe8} \) \( \text{xe8} \) 24 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{xc1} \) 25 \( \text{xc1 h6} \) with equality.

Another plan is the one mentioned under Option D, consisting of playing the bold 15 h4 with the idea of replying to the planned 15...\( \text{d8} \) with 16 \( \text{g5} \), threatening the king by means of \( \text{h5} \) or \( \text{d3} \). But as we shall see this plan is somewhat artificial, since with the simple 16...f6! Black deals with the opponent’s threats. For that reason, we give this choice only 1 point. Let us see a sample from master practice: 17 exf6 \( \text{xf6} \) 18 \( \text{d3 xg5} \) (the knight is going to be clearly superior to the bishop, without fearing the opening of the h-file, since Black will be able to neutralize every threat with ease) 19 hgx5 g6 20 \( \text{a1 f7} \) 21 \( \text{d2 a8} \) (21...\( \text{d6} \)?) 22 \( \text{f4} \) c6 23 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{e1} \) (after the exchanges on the e-file, Black neutralized his opponent ideas, and enters a very favourable endgame) 24 \( \text{xe1} \) \( \text{e8} \) 25 \( \text{xe8} \) \( \text{xe8} \) 26 a4 \( \text{g8} \) 27 f3 \( \text{e6} \) 28 g4 \( \text{e8} \) 29 \( \text{f2} \) \( \text{d8} \) 30 \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 31 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{d7} \) 32 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{c8} \) 33 \( \text{f2} \) \( \text{b7} \) 34 \( \text{c1} \) c5 35 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 36 \( \text{xd4} \) \( \text{c5} \) 37 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{c6} \) 38 \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 39 \( \text{xd4} \) a6 40 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{d6} \) 41 \( \text{f4} \) \( \text{e6} \) 42 \( \text{c3} \) (42 b4!) 42...\( \text{e5} \) 43 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{b5} \) 44 axb5 axb5 45 \( \text{f4} \) \( \text{g4} \) 46 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{f2} \) 47 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{e4} \) 48 \( \text{b2} \) \( \text{d2} \) 49 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{f3} \) 50 \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{d6} \) 51 \( \text{a3} \) \( \text{b6} \) \( \text{h4} \) \( \text{b4} \) \( \text{d6} \) 53 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{i5} \) 54 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{e3} \) 55 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{e2} \) 56 b4 \( \text{e3} \) 57 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{g4} \) 58 \( \text{e6} \) \( \text{h2} \) 59 \( \text{h6} \) \( \text{f3} \) 60 \( \text{b2} \) d4 61 \( \text{g7} \) \( \text{d5} \) 62 \( \text{h3} \) \( \text{h4} \) 63 \( \text{g7} \) d3 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{b6} \) 0-1 Ionov-Solozhenkin, St Petersburg 1998.

\[ \text{15...d8} \text{16 g1 (D)} \]

16...c5

In case of 16...\( \text{e6} \) the effects of the e-rook can be seen after 17 \( \text{f4} \) f5? 18 exf6 \( \text{xf6} \) 19 f5!, etc. This shows how deep was the plan started with 15 \( \text{h1} \), where White prevents Black from realizing the plan initiated with 14...\( \text{c6} \).

If Black instead plays 16...f5 first, White simply replies 17 exf6 \( \text{xf6} \) 18 \( \text{f4} \) followed by \( \text{f3-e5} \), with advantage.
17 f4 cxd4
Black must open the c-file in order to obtain some counterplay.

18 ∝xd4 ♞f5 19 ∝ad1 ∝b4 20 ∝f1 ∝e6 21 ∝d3! (D)

Just in time to destroy the blockade on the light squares. If instead White had played 21 ♝f3?! Black would reply 21...♖ac8 and 22 ∝d3 would met by 22...♖e4!.

21...♖xd3 22 ∝xd3
White has a better ending thanks to his kingside pawn-majority and the weakness of Black’s isolated queen’s pawn. However, realizing the advantage is not so easy. White should pay attention to the counterplay on the c-file.

22...♖ac8 23 ♝f3
23 f5? would be a mistake due to 23...∝xd4
24 ∝xd4 ♝c2+! since 25 ♝f2? is not possible: 25...∝xf2+ 26 ♝xf2 ♝c5.

23...♗c2+ 24 ♝f2 ♝fc8 (D)

25 f5!
Now White is able to make this advance, and gets a clear positional advantage.

25...∝xd4 26 ∝xd4 ♞xf2+ 27 ♝xf2 ♝c1 28 ♝g4 ♝f8 29 ♝f3 ♝f1+ 30 ♝g3 ♝c1

Preventing the jump to c6. 30...♗g1+ does not work on account of 31 ♝f4 ♝f1+ 32 ♝f3 and the d-pawn is lost.

31 ♝f4
31 g5 would be hasty because after 31...♕c3!
32 ♝xc3 ♝xc3 33 ♝c6 a5 34 ♝f4 ♝e8 Black can put up stubborn resistance.

31...h6 32 h4 ♝e8 33 ♝f3 ♝c2 34 a4 ♝b2 35 ♝d4 ♝e7 36 h5!
36 g5 hxg5+ 37 hxg5 also deserved attention, although the move (fixing Black’s kingside) is stronger.

36...a6 37 ♝f3!
Freeing f4 for the knight.

37...♖c5 38 ♝e2 d4 39 ♝f4 ♝d7 40 e6+ ♝e8
40...fxe6? 41 ♝xe6! costs Black the g7-pawn.

41 ♝e4 a5 42 ♝f3! ♝b1 43 ♝d5! (D)
After the logical-looking 43 ♝d5? Black would hold the position by 43...♗g1! 44 ♝d3 ♝xg4 45 ♝xc5 bx5c4 46 ♝xc5 fxe6 47 fxe6 ♝e7 without any trouble.

43...♗g1
43...♖f8 is more stubborn, even though after the study-like follow-up, in which the white king is the main character, White wins: 44 e7+! ♝xe7 45 ♝xd4 ♝g1 46 ♝c4! ♝xg4+ 47 ♝b5! ♝d8 48 ♝c3! ♝h4 49 ♝c6! ♝xh5 50 ♝d7! ♝xf5 51 ♝xb6!.
44 \( \text{d3}! \) \( \text{xg4} \) 45 f6! \( \text{d6} \)

Taking on \( e6 \) loses. Let us see the line given by Karpov: 45...\( \text{fxe6} \) 46 f7+ \( \text{d8} \) (46...\( \text{d7} \) 47 \( \text{xb6}+) \) \( \text{c7} \) 48 \( \text{c4} \) followed by \( \text{e5-g6} \); 46...\( \text{f8} \) 47 \( \text{c7}+ \) followed by \( \text{xe6}+) \) 47 f8\( \text{w} + \) \( \text{xf8} \) 48 \( \text{xf8}+ \) \( \text{d7} \) 49 \( \text{xb6}+ \).

46 \( \text{xb6}! \) \( \text{g5} \)

The \( e6 \)-pawn remains taboo, because in case of 46...\( \text{fxe6} \)? White plays 47 f7+ \( \text{f8} \) 48 \( \text{d7}+ \). 46...\( \text{gx} \) 46 is also inadvisable, because of 47 \( \text{xf6}! \) \( \text{fxe6} \) 48 \( \text{xe6}+ \) \( \text{e7} \) 49 \( \text{d5} \) \( \text{g7} \) 50 \( \text{xc7+} \) \( \text{xe7} \) 51 \( \text{xe7} \) \( \text{xe7} \) 52 \( \text{xd4} \) winning.

47 \( \text{fxg7} \) \( \text{g7} \)

47...\( \text{fxe6} \) looks at first as if it puts up more resistance, but 48 \( \text{xf6}! \) finishes Black off cleanly: 48...\( \text{g3}+ \) 49 \( \text{c4}! \) \( \text{xg7} \) 50 \( \text{xe6}+ \) \( \text{e7} \) 51 \( \text{d5} \).

48 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{b4} \) 49 \( \text{exf7+} \) \( \text{xg7} \) 50 \( \text{xf7} \) \( \text{xf7} \)

51 \( \text{e5+}! \) \( \text{f6} \) 52 \( \text{c6} \) \( \text{e1} \)

If 52...\( \text{c5} \), then 53 \( \text{xa5} \) \( \text{g5} \) 54 \( \text{c6} \) \( \text{xb} \) 5 55 \( \text{b4} \), etc.

53 \( \text{xd4} \) \( \text{b4} \)

53...\( \text{c2} \) doesn’t save Black either: 54 \( \text{c6} \) \( \text{a5} \) 55 \( \text{xa5} \) \( \text{b5} \) 56 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{c5} \) 57 \( \text{h3} \) \( \text{h4} \) 58 \( \text{c6} \) and the white queenside pawns are unstoppable.

54 \( \text{c6} \) \( \text{c1} \) 55 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{c3} \) 56 \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{e1} \) 57 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{g5} \) \((D)\)

\( \text{W} \)

58 \( \text{xa5}! \)

White decides the issue with this beautiful stroke.

58...\( \text{xa5} \) 59 b4 \( \text{d8} \) 60 a5 \( \text{eh5} \) 61 \( \text{b5} \) \( \text{g5} \) 62 a6 \( \text{c3} \) 63 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{c6} \) 1-0

\( \text{B} \)

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 3 points
Option D: 1 point

Test 21 [Level 2]

Themes: Files and Diagonals; Pressing on the Queenside

11 \( \text{xd4}! \)

A strong move, recommended in Option B. This prevents the development of the black knight via \( c6 \) (where it would not only press the white centre but also would interfere with the action of the \( g2 \)-bishop upon the queenside). Besides, White opens the long diagonal for the bishop, which together with a rook on the \( b \)-file is going to exert unpleasant pressure on the queenside. Therefore, the advantages of this capture are greater than its shortcomings (the weakness of the \( c3 \)-pawn). If this was your reasoning, then you have earned 5 points.

Of course the natural 11 \( \text{cxd4} \) – suggested in Option A – is by no means a bad move, but does not pose Black many problems. After 11...\( \text{c6} \) 12 \( e3 \), both 12...\( \text{f5} \) and 12...\( \text{e6} \) give Black a good game. If this was your choice, award yourself 2 points.

11...\( \text{c7} \) 12 \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{f6} \)

Defending \( e7 \), thus allowing the development of the knight via \( d7 \). If 12...\( \text{d6} \) then 13 \( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{bxc6} \) 14 \( \text{c4} \) with advantage.

13 \( \text{fd1} \) \( \text{d7} \) 14 \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{c5} \) 15 \( \text{b4} \) \((D)\)
White’s pressure is going to be felt. The knight must retreat.
15...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc6}}} 16 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{We5}}} 17 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc1}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd8}}} 
If 17...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Wxe2}}}, then 18 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc3}}}! followed by 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd5}}}, with great pressure.
18 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd5}}} 
After 18...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Wxe2}}} 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc3}}}! \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc3}}} (a sad necessity; 19...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg4}}}? 20 h3!) 20 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc3}}} Black’s position is in ruins.
19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qa6}}} 20 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qa7}}}!
An elegant move.
20...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd4}}} 21 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc8+}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc8}}} 22 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc8}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Wxe2}}} 23 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{h4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf5}}} 24 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qe4}}} 1-0

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 5 points

**Test 22 [Level 2]**

Themes: Advantage in the Centre; Pressing against the Queenside

13 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb3}}}!

There are no doubts this line presents Black most problems, as the game will show. This is the idea mentioned in Option A. If you chose it, realizing that Black has no problems after the other moves, then you have earned 5 points.

Option B is not fearsome for Black on account of 13 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}}!, an excellent reply that refutes White’s plan, since, as we shall see, the rook cannot enter at c7: 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd7}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd7}}} 15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qe2}}} (15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc7}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qfc8}}}! – this is the key to Black’s defence) 15...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qfc8}}} 16 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc6}}} with equality. Since this is a quite rational choice, we give it 2 points.

But the idea suggested as Option C, consisting of taking the seventh rank with the rook, is still less fearsome for Black: 13 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc7}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc6}}} 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb3}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd8}}}! gives Black good counterplay against the d4-pawn since 15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg5}}} does not work due to 15...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd4}}} 16 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd4}}} and the c7-rook is trapped. No points for this continuation.

13...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd8}}}

The alternatives are not better:

a) 13...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}} 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc8}}} 15 0-0 followed by \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc5}}} with advantage.

b) 13...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{b6}}} 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb5}}} (supporting the centre by 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{f3}}} is another viable approach, while simple development by 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd3}}} is also interesting: 14...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{a6}}} 15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qe2}}} with a slight advantage for White) 14...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb7}}} 15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{f3}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc8}}} 16 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc8+}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxc8}}} 17 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf2}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}} 18 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc1}}}! \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf8}}} (18...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxb5}}}? 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc8+}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf8}}} 20 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qh6}}}) and now White should settle for a slight edge by 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd7}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxd7}}}, since 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf4}}} e5 20 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxe5}}}? doesn’t work: 20...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qxb5}}} 21 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc8+}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qe7}}} 22 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg8}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf8}}}.

c) 13...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc6}}} 14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}} 15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc5}}}! with advantage too.

14 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg5}}}!

An annoying move forcing Black to weaken himself.

14...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf6}}} 15 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qe3}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{f5}}}

Activating the bishop but producing new weaknesses.

16 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{exf5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{gxf5}}} 17 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb5}}}! (D)

Threatening 18 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg5}}}.

17...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}}

If 17...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{a6}}}, then 18 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg5}}}, and if 17...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}}, 18 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc4}}}, followed by 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc5}}}.

18 0-0 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf6}}} 19 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd7}}} 20 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{b6}}}

Controlling c5. The drawback, however, is the weakening of the queenside light squares, and thanks to this White will take the control of the c-file.

21 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd2}}}

The knight has no prospects on b3 and therefore goes to the weakened square e5.

21...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc8}}} 22 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf3}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc6}}} 23 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd5}}} 24 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb5}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qec8}}} 25 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{a4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qe4}}} 26 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf4}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf8}}} 27 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{f3}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qf6}}}

27...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc3}}}? 28 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qa6}}} \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qc7}}} 29 \textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qg4}}} leaves White much better. However, 27...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qd6}}}? deserves attention, with the idea of replying with ...\textit{\textcolor{blue}{\textbf{Qb7}}} in
case White puts the bishop on a6, although White is clearly better after 28 ạ.d7! ạ.xc1 29 ạ.xc1.

28 ạ.g5! ạ.g7 29 ạ.a6! (D)

The consequences of ...b6 are now clearly visible. White takes the open file.

29...ạ.xc1 30 ạ.xc1 ạ.d6 31 ạ.c4!
The knight goes to e3, where it will exert strong pressure.

31...ạ.b4 32 ạ.e3 ạ.e8
If 32...ạ.d6, then 33 ạ.xd5 ạ.xd5 34 ạ.c6!.

33 ạ.b5!
The moves with this bishop are proving very annoying for Black.

33...ạ.f8 34 ạ.f4 ạ.g6 35 ạ.f2 ạ.b7 (D)

With the idea of ...ạ.c8.

36 ạ.c7!
Preventing the black rook from reaching c8. If 36 ạ.c4 at once, then 36...ạ.c8! and in case of 37 ạ.b1?! ạ.d2! 38 ạ.xe6 ạ.xe3+ 39 ạ.xe3 ạ.c2+ 40 ạ.e1 ạ.xg2 Black will be better.

36...ạ.f7 37 ạ.c2!
This is the idea: now the c2-rook will be protected.

37...ạ.f8
Again planning ...ạ.c8.

38 ạ.c4! ạ.e8
38...ạ.d5 doesn’t solve the problems either: 39 ạ.xd5 exd5 (39...ạ.xd5 40 ạ.b5 with a clear advantage) 40 ạ.d3 and White is much better.

39 ạ.b3!
Opening the way for the rook.

39...ạ.e7 40 ạ.h4 ạ.h6 41 ạ.g3 (D)

41...ạ.a3?  
This move leads to serious problems for Black. 41...ạ.g7? doesn’t work either: 42 ạ.xe6 ạ.xe6 43 ạ.c7+. However, 41...ạ.h7 is more stubborn.

42 ạ.c4!
White wins the bishop-pair, which together with Black’s weak pawn-formation, as well as the command of the c-file, will make Black’s position untenable.

42...ạ.d5
White also gets the bishop-pair after 42...ạ.b4 43 ạ.e5+ ạ.g7 44 ạ.c6 ạ.xc6 45 ạ.xc6.

43 ạ.a2 ạ.xc4
If 43...ạ.b4, then 44 ạ.e5+ ạ.g7 45 ạ.c6, etc.

44 ạ.xc4 ạ.h5 45 ạ.b3
Clearing the way for the rook.

45...ạ.f7 46 ạ.c6 ạ.b2 47 ạ.e3!
With the idea of 48 ạ.e5 followed by ạ.f4.
47...\(d5+\) 48 \(\text{e}x\text{d}5\) exd5+ 49 \(\text{e}5\)

The position cannot be held. The pawns will be an easy prey for the white king.

49...\(\text{e}6\) 50 \(\text{e}c7+\) \(\text{e}7\) 51 \(\text{e}c2\) \(\text{a}3\) 52 \(\text{f}4\) a6

If 52...\(\text{g}6\), then 53 \(\text{a}c6+\), etc.

53 \(\text{b}x\text{f}5\) b5 54 \(\text{a}c6\) b4 55 \(\text{b}b6\)

Stopping the b-pawn.

55...\(\text{e}8\) 56 g4!

White’s kingside pawns are decisive.

56...\(\text{d}7\) 57 gxh5 \(\text{f}7+\) 58 \(\text{g}4\) 1–0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 0 points

---

Test 23 [Level 3]

Themes: Confining Pieces; The g7-Bishop is Imprisoned

Clearly Option A, proposing to develop the knight by 20 \(\text{g}e2\), is a serious mistake, since it allows 20...g5. Therefore, we give no points for this choice.

Option C, natural development by 20 \(\text{f}3\), gives Black the chance of getting counterplay on the h1-a8 diagonal after 20...\(\text{c}6\). 1 point for this choice.

However, the development indicated by Option B meets all the requirements of the position. That is to say, the development of the knight by 20 \(\text{h}3\) on the one hand prevents the threat of ...g5 and on the other prepares the transfer of the knight to the ideal square d3. After this manoeuvre, the g7-bishop will be restricted by the pawns at e5 and d6, and without chances of freeing itself. If this was your choice and you grasped the whole meaning of that move, award yourself 5 points.

20 \(\text{h}3!\) a5

Better is 20...\(\text{c}b8\) seizing the file.

21 f3 a4 22 \(\text{h}1!\) \((D)\)

White should secure e5 before playing \(\text{f}2\). If 22 \(\text{f}2\) at once, then Black plays 22...g5! 23 hxg5 hxg5 24 \(\text{h}2\) f4 25 \(\text{d}3\) \(\text{e}8\) 26 \(\text{g}1\) \(\text{g}6\) 27 \(\text{xc}5\) \(\text{xe}5\), and although White’s position is still better, Black has achieved more freedom.

22...a3 23 \(\text{f}2\) a2 24 \(\text{d}3\)

The knight has finally arrived on its best square. From d3 it protects the e5-pawn (which imprisons the g7-bishop), puts pressure on the weak c5-pawn and prevents a possible penetration by the black rooks via b2.

24...\(\text{a}3\) 25 \(\text{a}1\) g5

25...\(\text{a}8\), seeking to play ...g5 in better circumstances, is best met by 26 \(\text{e}2\) (compare the next note). Instead, 26 \(\text{c}e1\) g5 27 hxg5 hxg5 28 \(\text{xc}5\) \(\text{e}8\) is less clear.

26 hxg5 hxg5 27 \(\text{x}g5\) \(\text{f}7\)

After 27...\(\text{a}8\), there again follows 28 \(\text{e}2!\) (not 28 \(\text{xc}5?\) \(\text{b}2+\) 29 \(\text{c}1\) \(\text{x}g2\) 30 \(\text{d}2\), when Black should try 30...\(\text{c}6\), rather than 30...\(\text{h}6?\), losing to the surprising 31 \(\text{b}2!\) 28...\(\text{b}3\) 29 \(\text{xc}5\) \(\text{b}2+\) 30 \(\text{f}1\), winning.

28 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{b}8\) 29 \(\text{ec}1\) \(\text{c}6\) 30 \(\text{c}3\) \(\text{a}5\) 31 \(\text{c}2\) \(\text{ba}8\) 32 \(\text{c}1\) 1–0

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 1 point

We shall see now a classical example with some similarities with this game:

Capablanca – Bogoljubow
London 1922

\[1 \text{e}4 \text{e}5 2 \text{f}3 \text{c}6 3 \text{b}5 \text{a}6 4 \text{a}4 \text{f}6 5 0–0 \text{e}7 6 \text{e}1 \text{b}5 7 \text{b}3 \text{d}6 8 \text{c}3 0–0 9 \text{d}4 \text{e}4 10 \text{ex}d4 \text{g}4 11 \text{e}3 \text{a}5 12 \text{c}2 \text{d}4 13 \text{e}1 \text{c}5 14 \text{b}3 \text{a}5 15 \text{a}2 \text{c}6 16 \text{d}5 \text{b}4 17 \text{d}2 \text{xc}2 18 \text{xc}2 \text{e}8 19 \text{d}3 \text{h}6 20 \text{f}1 \text{d}7 21 \text{h}3 \text{e}5??\]
As Capablanca pointed out, the right move was 21...\( \text{x} \text{xf3} \). Now the bishop is going to be excluded from active play.

22 3d2!

Avoiding the exchange, while preparing the advance of the f-pawn, imprisoning the light-squared bishop.

22...\( \text{xf6} \) 23 \( \text{xf6} \) \( \text{xf6} \) 24 a4 c4!? 25 bxc4 \( \text{c5} \) 26 \( \text{e3} \) bx4 27 f4!

White pursues his plan.

27...\( \text{e7} \) 28 g4 \( \text{g6} \) 29 f5 \( \text{h7} \) (D)

As in the game Karpov-Kasparov, Black has a bishop excluded from the game (in that game it was the dark-squared bishop), and a strong passed pawn on the a-file, which slightly hinders the realization of White’s advantage.

30 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{e5} \) 31 \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{ab8} \) 32 \( \text{ab1} \) f6

This move, aiming to activate the bishop through f7 by way of g8, has the drawback of weakening the e6-square.

33 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{b2} \) 34 \( \text{xb2} \) \( \text{xb2} \) 35 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{b3} \) 36 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{xe3} \) 37 \( \text{xe3} \) \( \text{b8} \) 38 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{f7} \) 39 \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{b2} \) 40 \( \text{ge2} \) \( \text{g8} \) 41 \( \text{e6} \) \( \text{b3} \)

There are no better choices, since 41...\( \text{xe6} \) allows 42 \( \text{fxe6} \) \( \text{e7} \) 43 c5, winning. After 41...\( \text{xe4} \) White would continue, as pointed out by Capablanca, 42 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{xe2} \) 43 \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{h2} \) 44 \( \text{d4} \) h5 45 c5! with a decisive advantage.

42 c5 \( \text{xc5} \) 43 \( \text{xc5} \) \( \text{d2} \) 44 \( \text{f2} \) \( \text{e7} \)?

This move loses. The right continuation was 44...\( \text{b1} \) 45 \( \text{xa4} \) (45 \( \text{c4} \)?) 45...\( \text{xc3} \) 46 \( \text{xb2} \) \( \text{xe4} \) 47 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{d6} \) with some drawing chances.

45 \( \text{e1} \) \( \text{b1} \) 46 \( \text{d3} \) a3

Better would be 46...\( \text{d6} \) 47 \( \text{xa4} \) although Black has no chances of surviving.

47 d6+ \( \text{d8} \) 48 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{b6} \) 49 \( \text{de6} \) \( \text{xe6} \) 50 \( \text{fxe6} \) \( \text{b8} \) 51 c7+ \( \text{e8} \) 52 \( \text{xa6} \) 1-0

**Test 24 [Level 3]**

Themes: Closed Centre; From One Flank to the Other

20 \( \text{e3} \) (D)

The queen will become the main player in this game. White plans to start actions on the kingside, thinking his chances on this side are better than Black’s on the queenside. In order to be successful it is mandatory to keep the rooks. If this was your assessment, and you chose Option A, then you have earned 5 points.

The idea indicated in Option B, of exchanging rooks after 20 \( \text{e2} \) \( \text{xc1} \) 21 \( \text{xc1} \) \( \text{xc1}+ \) 22 \( \text{xc1} \) \( \text{c6} \) 23 \( \text{d3} \), would give White a slight advantage thanks to his bishop-pair and advantage in space. However, without rooks, White’s attacking chances on the kingside are seriously reduced. For this reason we give this choice only 2 points.

The idea of disturbing the b6-knight (Option C) by 20 a4? is a serious positional mistake, since it seriously weakens the queenside (the part of the board where Black has counterplay) since Black simply plays 20...\( \text{c6} \) preventing the threat of a5, and the weakening becomes evident. Therefore, no points for this choice.
20...\( \text{c6} \) 21 f5!
White plays with great energy, giving Black no rest.

21...\( \text{a}3 \)
Starting counterplay on the opposite side. However, this approach is not without risks, since it removes pieces from the kingside. If 21...exf5, then 22 gxf5 \( \text{wxf5} \) 23 \( \text{h}3 \) \( \text{h}5 \) 24 \( \text{x}c8 \) \( \text{h}6 \) 25 \( \text{h}3 \) \( \text{xc}1 \) 26 \( \text{xh}5 \) gxh5 27 \( \text{xb}7 \) with a clear advantage.

22 \( \text{cd}1 \) \( \text{b}4 \)
The blow 22...\( \text{xd}4 ?? \) fails since the b6-knight is undefended: 23 \( \text{xd}4 \) \( \text{c}5 \) 24 \( \text{d}2 \) \( \text{xf}2+ \) 25 \( \text{xf}2 \) \( \text{xc}3 \) 26 \( \text{xb}6 \).

23 \( \text{h}6! \)
There is no profit in playing 23 \( \text{b}1 \) first, because of 23...\( \text{c}2! \) 24 \( \text{h}6 \) \( \text{f}8 \) and everything is OK for Black.

23...\( \text{e}8 \)
After 23...\( \text{c}2 \) 24 \( \text{e}2! \) the black knight will prevent the rooks from taking the seventh rank. Nor does Black equalize after 23...\( \text{e}7 \) 24 \( \text{b}1 \) \( \text{b}2 \) 25 \( \text{h}4 \) \( \text{f}8 \) 26 \( \text{d}2 \) \( \text{c}2 \) 27 \( \text{e}1 \) and his initiative on the queenside is hollow, the absence of his pieces on the other flank being clear. Finally, 23...\( \text{d}3? \) fails in view of 24 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) 25 \( \text{x}d3 \) and White will have a healthy extra pawn.

24 \( \text{b}1! \) (D)

![Diagram B]

An excellent move forcing the bishop to abandon the important a3-f8 diagonal.

24...\( \text{b}2 \) 25 \( \text{d}2 \)
Again a queen move. Black’s pieces are having problems due to their poor coordination.

25...\( \text{c}2 \)
If 25...a5, then 26 a3! (26 \( \text{xb}2? \) \( \text{c}2 \) 27 \( \text{a}3 \) \( \text{xa}2 \)) 26...\( \text{c}2 \) 27 \( \text{e}1 \) \( \text{b}5 \) (27...\( \text{c}6 \) 28 \( \text{d}2! \)) 28 axb4 \( \text{e}2 \) 29 \( \text{xe}2 \) \( \text{xe}2 \) 30 \( \text{bxa}5 \) \( \text{d}7 \) 31 \( \text{d}2 \) winning.

26 \( \text{h}1 \)
A good move giving the g1-square to the bishop and clearing the way for the f1-rook.

26...\( \text{e}7 \) 27 \( \text{g}1 \) \( \text{d}7 \) 28 \( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{b}4 \)
If 28...b5 then 29 \( \text{h}3! \) (threatening \( \text{h}6 \)) 29...\( \text{f}8 \) 30 \( \text{f}1 \) with a crushing advantage.

29 \( \text{h}6! \)
The threat of \( \text{h}3 \) prevents the loss of the d-pawn.

30...\( \text{f}8 \) 30 \( \text{g}5! \)
If 30 \( \text{h}4 \), then 30...\( \text{g}7 \) and Black still stands.

30...\( \text{g}7 \) 31 \( \text{d}2! \) (D)
Now we see why it was better to retreat the queen to g5 instead of h4. The black pieces are now in serious trouble.

31...\( \text{b}6 \)
With the idea of ...a5, and then transferring the knight to b4.

32 \( \text{d}1 \) a5 33 \( \text{h}4 \) \( \text{b}4 \) 34 \( \text{a}3! \)
Taking the bishop would lose the queen: 34 \( \text{xb}2?? \) \( \text{c}2 \) 35 \( \text{a}3 \) \( \text{xa}2 \).

34...\( \text{c}2 \)
This invasion is now harmless.

35 \( \text{f}4 \) \( \text{c}6 \) 36 \( \text{h}3! \)
Aiming at e6.

36...\( \text{d}8 \) 37 \( \text{e}3 \)
Controlling c1.

37...\( \text{b}5 \) 38 \( \text{f}2! \)
White will take advantage of the bad placing of his opponent’s pieces in order to exchange rooks, and then decide the game on the queenside. The way in which White combines play on both flanks is creative.

38...b4 39 axb4 axb4 40 \(\text{bxc2} \text{xc2} 41 \text{f2!} \)
Now it is the turn of the other rook.
41...\(\text{xf2} 42 \text{xf2} \text{a3} \)

The disastrous effects caused by White’s 24th move are remarkable. If 42...\(\text{c3} \), then 43 \(\text{f6} \text{f7} 44 \text{cc2} \text{e1} 45 \text{c7} \text{e8} 46 \text{f1!} \text{f8} 47 \text{e7!} \) and the position collapses.
43 \(\text{e2!} \) (\(D\))

Who would have said, some moves earlier, that White will be the one deciding the fight on the e-file?

43...\(\text{xe5} \)

Neither 43...\(\text{b8} 44 \text{f6} \) nor 43...\(\text{f8} 44 \text{c7} \text{e8} 45 \text{f6} \) saves Black.

44 \(\text{xe5} \text{xe5} 45 \text{c8!} \text{e4} \)
45...\(\text{e3} 46 \text{xd8+} \text{g7} 47 \text{f6}+ \text{h6} 48 \text{f8#}. \)

46 \(\text{g2} \text{xb1+} 47 \text{h2} \text{b2} 48 \text{xd8+} \text{g7} 49 \text{f6+!} \text{xf6} 50 \text{h6+} \text{hxh6} 51 \text{xf6} \text{c2} 52 \text{g5+} \text{h5} 53 \text{g3!} \)

But not 53...\(\text{h3?} \text{f5+} 54 \text{xf5} \text{gxf5} 55 \text{h3+} \text{g6}. \)

53...\(\text{e7+} 54 \text{h3} 1-0 \)

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 0 points

For this game, played in the Alekhine Memorial, Karpov was given the prize “for playing in Alekhine’s style". Without a doubt, there are good examples in Alekhine’s games where he combines action on both flanks, transferring the battle from one side to the other. Let us see one of them:

Alekhine – Chajes
Karlsbad 1923

21 \(\text{c2!} \)
The knight goes to b4, where it will press against c6.

21...\(\text{ae7} 22 \text{f1} \)
Leaving the e-file in view of a possible ...e5.

22...\(\text{e6} 23 \text{e5} \text{xe5?!} 24 \text{xe5} \text{c7} 25 \text{f6!} \)

White exploits the weakness of the dark squares to bring his queen to the h-file, where it will produce serious threats, forcing the creation of new weaknesses.

25...\(\text{f7} 26 \text{h4} \text{e7} 27 \text{hxg6!} \)
Concluding the plan. Now Black is forced to take with the knight, leaving the h7-pawn weak.

27...\(\text{xe6} 28 \text{h5} \text{f6} 29 \text{e2!} \)
Aiming at the h5-square and vacating the d3-square for the knight.

29...\(\text{g7} 30 \text{f3} \text{f8} 31 \text{e3} \text{e7} 32 \text{b4} \text{d7} 33 \text{h5!} \)

This bishop move hinders the scope of the black pieces.

33...\(\text{g6} 34 \text{d3} \text{e8} 35 \text{e2!} \)
Centralizing the king, with the threat (if all the major pieces are exchanged) of penetrating with his king on the queenside via b4.

35...\(\text{f8} \)
Black decides on transferring his king to the centre, where it will cover his weaknesses.

36 d2 b7 37 f3 e7 38 he1 f8 39 b4! d8

Preventing xd5.

40 d3 ge7 41 d2!

Threatening d6 followed by a5 penetrating on the queenside.

41...a7 42 h1!

White pays attention to the h-file again, and now the threats are stronger, due to the displacement of the black pieces.

42...de7 43 h2 g6 44 we3 c8 45 ch1 b7

Black holds c6 with the king, in order to mobilize the rooks.

46 d2 e7 47 d3 d7 (D)

48 h5!

This appears to make no sense from a positional viewpoint, since White exchanges his good bishop for the black one that is blocked by its own pawns. However, this move ends Black’s resistance, since the bishop was vital to withstanding the pressure on the h-file.

48...a8 49 xg6 hxg6

Forced, as without his bishop, Black would have had a more difficult task in defending the h7-pawn. Now, finally, White has opened the h-file for his rooks.

50 h7 a8 51 e5! f8 52 h8 g7 53 f3 bb8 54 g5! e7 55 we5!

The exchange of queens removes Black’s last possible source of counterplay.

55...exe5 56 fxe5 a8 57 gg8! b4 58 hh8!

But not 58 axb4 because of 58...eb7.

58...ee8 59 axb4 a7 60 c3 a6 61 f7! a8 62 d6 eb8 63 h1! d7 64 a1! 1-0

Clearly this is a beautiful example of combining actions on both flanks.

Test 25 [Level 4]

Themes: Defence; Precise Moves

14...b8!

14...xf3?! (the continuation suggested by Option B) 15 xf3 xe5 16 h6! g7 17 xg7 xg7 18 xc7 b8 19-0-0 with an indisputable advantage for White. So no points for this choice.

The idea proposed by Option A, of directly taking with the knight on e5, leads to a clearly advantageous game for White after 14...xe5?!

15 xe5 xe2 16 xe2 xe5 17 h6! e8 (17...g7 18 xg7 xg7 19 xc7 with a clear advantage) 18 d7 (or 18 a6 19 fxe5 axb5 20 xd7 xa2 21 hd1 a8 22 xc7 with a crushing advantage for White) 18...c6 19 c7! xc7 20 xc7 b8 21 d1 followed by ad7, with an overwhelming advantage. Therefore, no points for this choice either.

15 xc7 (D)

15.e6!

An excellent move that enables Black to level the game. It threatens to trap the knight with a6, forcing the annoying occupant to go
back, therefore winning a tempo. This move also enables Black to improve the e8-knight by way of e7. The issue of recovering the e5-pawn can wait. If you chose this possibility, suggested in Option C, then you have earned 5 points.

After the continuation mentioned in Option D, White’s chances are preferable: 15...\textit{xf}3 16 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}5 17 \textit{a}6! (a superb blow that questions Black’s whole plan) 17...\textit{bxa}6 (17...\textit{a}8 18 \textit{d}7?) 18 \textit{xc}6 \textit{xb}2 19 \textit{d}5 \textit{c}3+ 20 \textit{f}1 \textit{e}6 (worse is 20...\textit{d}8 21 \textit{xf}7+ \textit{xf}7 22 \textit{xd}8 \textit{b}1+ 23 \textit{e}2 \textit{bh}1 24 \textit{xc}8 \textit{h}2 25 \textit{c}6 \textit{e}5 26 \textit{f}4 \textit{d}6 27 \textit{f}3 and White is clearly better) 21 \textit{b}3 and as Khalifman pointed out, White’s game is slightly better. Therefore, if you chose this variation, you score only 1 point.

16 \textit{b}5 \textit{e}7 17 \textit{d}2!

Protecting the b2-pawn. In case of the natural 17 0-0 White would be the one thinking how to level the game after 17...\textit{xf}3 18 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}5, since Black is somewhat better.

17...\textit{b}6

White will have some chances of gaining the advantage after this move. Black should have continued 17...\textit{d}5?! 18 \textit{h}3 \textit{xf}3 19 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}3 20 \textit{fxe}3 (D).

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{image}
\end{center}

20 \textit{b}3 0-0 \textit{xf}3 21 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}5 leads to a level position. But interesting is 20 \textit{xf}4!? \textit{xd}4 (20...\textit{xe}5? 21 \textit{f}3!) 21 \textit{xd}4 \textit{xd}4 (21...\textit{xe}2 22 \textit{xe}2 \textit{e}7 22 \textit{xd}4 \textit{xe}2 23 \textit{xe}2 \textit{xe}5 24 \textit{b}4 \textit{e}6.

20...\textit{h}6!

After 20...\textit{xf}3 White is slightly better on account of 21 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}5 22 \textit{e}4 \textit{h}6 23 \textit{f}4 \textit{g}5 24 \textit{xe}5 \textit{xe}5 25 \textit{e}2.

21 \textit{e}6

If 21 \textit{f}4, then 21...\textit{g}5 22 \textit{g}3 \textit{fd}8 with equality.

21...\textit{xf}3 22 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}5 23 \textit{xe}5 \textit{xe}5 24 0-0 \textit{fd}8

The game is perfectly level.

25 \textit{fd}1 \textit{xd}2 26 \textit{xd}2 \textit{e}8 27 \textit{g}3 \textit{c}1+ 28 \textit{g}2 \textit{f}8 29 \textit{e}4 \textit{e}7 ½-½

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points
Option D: 1 point

In a later game of the same match, Karpov introduced an important improvement on move 14, thereby obtaining a nice victory. Let us see it:

\begin{center}
\textit{Karpov – Kasparov}
\textit{London/Leningrad Wch (17) 1986}
\end{center}

14 \textit{h}3! \textit{xf}3

If 14...\textit{e}6, then 15 \textit{g}5 \textit{xe}5 16 \textit{xe}6 \textit{fxe}6 17 \textit{f}4 with a clear advantage.

15 \textit{xf}3 \textit{xe}5
15...\texttt{\texttt{x}}xe5 is possible, although White is better after 16 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xb7 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b8 17 c6.

\textbf{16 \texttt{x}}xc6 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc6 17 \texttt{\texttt{d}}d4 \texttt{\texttt{f}}f4

17...\texttt{\texttt{x}}xd4? 18 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xd4 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b8 19 b3 a5 20 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a4! \texttt{\texttt{d}}d8 21 \texttt{\texttt{e}}e2 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a8 22 \texttt{\texttt{d}}d1 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xd1 23 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xd1 and the knight goes to c4. White has a great advantage.

\textbf{18 0-0 a5? (D)}

Better is 18...e5, as Timman played against Karpov, obtaining a draw.

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.4\textwidth]{chess_diagram1.png}
\end{center}

\textbf{19 \texttt{\texttt{f}}f1 a4 20 \texttt{\texttt{e}}e4! \texttt{\texttt{h}}h6 21 \texttt{\texttt{e}}e5 a3 22 b3 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a7 23 \texttt{\texttt{d}}d7}

Taking the seventh rank with decisive effect.

\textbf{23...\texttt{\texttt{c}}c1 24 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc7 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b2 25 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a4!}

25 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc7?! is dubious because of 25...\texttt{\texttt{x}}xc3 26 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc3 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b5 followed by ...\texttt{\texttt{d}}d8 with counterplay against the a2-pawn.

\textbf{25...\texttt{\texttt{b}}b5 26 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc6 \texttt{\texttt{d}}d8 27 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b6! \texttt{\texttt{d}}d5 28 \texttt{\texttt{g}}g3 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c3 29 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c6 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc3 30 c6 \texttt{\texttt{d}}d4 31 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b7 1-0}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.4\textwidth]{chess_diagram2.png}
\end{center}

However, the move suggested in Option C looks more attractive, even though it does not achieve its aim: 20 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b3 \texttt{\texttt{f}}f6 and White is not able to carry out his plan, since if 21 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a2 Black simply plays 21...a5! and everything is OK. Anyway, since it is quite a logical move, we give it 2 points.

\textbf{20...\texttt{\texttt{w}}b8}

Defending the b-pawn and trying to play ...a5, while heading for b7, controlling c6.

\textbf{21 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b4 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b7 (D)}

\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.4\textwidth]{chess_diagram3.png}
\end{center}

\textbf{22 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c1!}

Again the best move, though the following continuation would not have been bad: 22 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c6 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc6 23 dxc6 \texttt{\texttt{w}}xc6 24 \texttt{\texttt{w}}xd6 \texttt{\texttt{w}}xd6 25 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xd6 and White will be slightly better due to his superior pawn-structure, the bishop-pair and the weakness of the light squares.

\textbf{22...\texttt{\texttt{e}}e8 23 \texttt{\texttt{c}}ca2!}

White is ready for the invasion of the c6-square.

\textbf{23...\texttt{\texttt{a}}c8}

23...\texttt{\texttt{h}}h7 does not prevent the invasion by 24 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c6! since 24...\texttt{\texttt{x}}xc6 25 dxc6 \texttt{\texttt{x}}xc6 fails because of the obvious 26 \texttt{\texttt{w}}d5+.

\textbf{24 \texttt{\texttt{b}}b8 \texttt{\texttt{w}}xe8 25 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c1 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a8}

25...\texttt{\texttt{h}}h3 does not offer more chances on account of 26 \texttt{\texttt{d}}xa6 \texttt{\texttt{x}}h2 27 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c7 \texttt{\texttt{d}}d7 28 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c3 with an overwhelming advantage.

\textbf{26 \texttt{\texttt{c}}c6}

Finally the knight has reached the goal.

\textbf{26...\texttt{\texttt{f}}f6 27 \texttt{\texttt{w}}a5! (D)}

Once the queenside is fixed, the white pieces are ready to occupy the weak squares on this

\textbf{Test 26 [Level 3]}

\textit{Themes: Weak Squares; Heading for c6}

\textbf{20 \texttt{\texttt{a}}a1a2!}

The most accurate continuation, immobilizing the black queenside pawns, while also heading for c6 (the Achilles' Heel in Black's position). If this was your choice, then you have earned 5 points.

20 b4, suggested in Option A, is somewhat weakening, and therefore only deserves 1 point.
flank, where they will attack the opponent's pawns.

27...\textit{g5} 28 \textit{xg5} \textit{xg5} 29 \textit{ab4} \textit{xf3} 30 
\textit{xf3} \textit{xf3} 31 \textit{e7}+!

This strong tactical blow finishes Black off.

31...\textit{f7} 32 \textit{c8} \textit{d7} 33 \textit{xd6}+ \textit{g8} 34 
\textit{c6} \textit{f6} 35 \textit{c7} \textit{xc6} 36 \textit{xc6} 1-0

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 2 points

**Test 27 [Level 5]**

**Theme: Excluding Pieces from Play**

17 c6!

This move appears to be a mistake, because it closes the queenside, leaving Black a free hand on the kingside. But as we are going to see, it is the beginning of a profound plan which leaves Black with a ruinous position, since his light-square bishop is excluded from the game. Option B is not so strong, although it gives White a slightly favourable game; therefore we give 2 points for this choice. Let us see a game with this continuation: 17 cxd6 cxd6 18 a4 a4 19 a5 c8 b8 b5 20 b5 a5 21 dxc8 dxc8 22 dxc8 c8 23 c4 f6 24 d5+ e8 24...gxf5 25 e3 w7? (after 25...d7 Black is OK) 26 e1 d8 27 d2 c5 (27...b6? 28 c4 c5 29 a5 f7 with some compensation for the pawn) 28 d1! d7 (28...b5? 29 g3 g6 30 xf5) 29 a4 and White is better, Olafsson-Gligorić, Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade Ct 1959.

On the other hand, 17 c4 (Option C) is strong too: 17...d4 (17...dxe5 18 bxc5 dxc5 19 d6! with compensation) 18 cxd6 cxd6 19 gxf5 gxf5 20 b6 b8 21 b5 with some progress on the queenside. 3 points for this choice.

17...b6

Not, of course, 17...bxc6 18 dxc6 since this leaves d5 for the white pieces, allowing them the creation of a passed pawn on the queenside.

18 exf5 gxf5 19 g3! (D)

This move sustains White's plan. He threatens f4 (wholly imprisoning the c8-bishop) and if 19...f4 then 20 g4 and the bishop is still unable to play; for instance, 20...f6 21 d5 22 c4 22 a5 22 h5! ±, as Petrov pointed out. If you saw this far, and so preferred Option A, then you have earned 5 points.

19...f6 20 f4!?

Maybe it was better to follow with 20 a4! e4 (20...f4 21 g4 ±) 21 f4 ±.

20...c7 21 c4

As Petrov rightly pointed out, 21 a4! is more accurate: 21 a5 (21 b5 22 a5) 22 b5 closing the cage over the c8-bishop. Instead, 21 fxes? is a mistake on account of 21...xe5! (21...dxe5? 22 c4 intending 23 d6) 22 c4 f4 with counterplay.

21...exf4 22 gxf4 b5 23 c4
d2

If 23...a5, then 23...xc4 24... xc4 e4+ 25 g1 xb4 26 c1 e4.

23...e4
Black sacrifices a pawn in exchange for some activity.

24 \textit{xf6 xf6} 25 \textit{f3}

Interesting is 25 \textit{b3}!? \textit{xc3} 26 \textit{xc3 we4+}
27 \textit{cf3! xb4} 28 \textit{g1} ±.

25...a5

Thus we see why White should have played 21 a4!.

26 a3 axb4 27 axb4 \textit{g6}

27...\textit{a3} 28 \textit{db1} \textit{a1} 29 \textit{d4} ±.

28 \textit{dx4 fx4} 29 \textit{xe4} (D)

\textbf{B}

White remains with a healthy extra pawn, which should give him victory if nothing unusual happens. But the black knight is active and the white isolated passed pawn is not a substantial power.

29...\textit{xf5} 30 \textit{xf5} \textit{xf5} 31 \textit{wh5 \textit{xf6}}!

It is too early to enter the endgame. After 31...\textit{wf7} 32 \textit{wg6+ \textit{wg6}} 33 \textit{g1} White would simplify the position favourably.

32 \textit{g1}+ \textit{h8} 33 \textit{ce1} \textit{w7} 34 \textit{xf7} \textit{xf7} 35 \textit{e4}

35...\textit{a1}!?.

35...\textit{h7} 36 \textit{xb5} \textit{ma2} 37 \textit{d4} \textit{xd4} 38
\textit{xd4} \textit{e7} 39 \textit{f5} \textit{e2} 40 \textit{h4} \textit{f2} 41 \textit{b5}
\textit{ab2}?

A mistake that costs half a point. 41...\textit{ac2}
42 \textit{h5} \textit{b2} would achieve the goal.

42 \textit{b6}! \textit{xb6}

42...\textit{cxb6} 43 \textit{c1} \textit{bc2} 44 \textit{xc2} \textit{xc2} 45
\textit{g4}!.

43 \textit{h4} \textit{b8} 44 \textit{g7+ \textit{h8}} 45 \textit{g7g6} 1-0

Black resigned on account of 45...\textit{h7} 46 \textit{f6}
\textit{f8} 47 \textit{g7+ \textit{h8}} 48 \textit{xc7} +-.  

\textbf{Option A}: 2 points

\textbf{Option B}: 5 points

\textbf{Option C}: 3 points

\textbf{Test 28 [Level 4]}

12 \textit{h3}!

The move indicated in Option A, aimed at fighting for the e4-square. White wants to play g4 to seize control of that square but he first needs to control the f4-square. If the black knight returns to f6 opposing this advance, then White will move his own knight from h3 to f2, where it will impact the critical square e4, while supporting the advance g4, undermining its defence. If this was your choice, award yourself 5 points.

The plan suggested in Option B is interesting, although in our opinion not so strong. Let us see an interesting game where this idea was used: 12 \textit{d3} a5 13 \textit{e2} a6 14 f4 \textit{d7} 15
\textit{fxe5 dxe5} 16 \textit{h1} a4 17 \textit{h6} \textit{c5} 18 \textit{c2} \textit{a6} 19
\textit{xe7} \textit{xe7} 20 \textit{e3} 21 \textit{b1} 22 \textit{a3}
\textit{e8} 23 \textit{c1} \textit{a6} 24 \textit{d3} b6 25 \textit{b5} \textit{xb5} 26
\textit{cxb5} \textit{a5} 27 \textit{xc5} bxc5 28 g4 \textit{b8} 29 gxf5
\textit{axb5} 30 f6 \textit{xb2}+ 31 \textit{c1} \textit{b6} 32 \textit{xh7+}
\textit{h8} 33 \textit{fxg7+ \textit{h7}} 34 \textit{g8++} \textit{g8} 35 \textit{h3+}
\textit{g7} 36 \textit{g1}+ \textit{f8} 37 \textit{g8+} 38 \textit{f8}
Vyzhmanavin-Akopian, Lwow 1990. If you chose this option, you have earned 3 points.

However, the prophylactic 12 \textit{b1} (Option C) can be considered a loss of time, and therefore deserves no points.

12...\textit{a6} 13 \textit{g1}!

Following the idea of the previous move. White wants to play g4 to get control of the e4-square.

13...\textit{f6}

If 13...\textit{c5}, then 14 g4! \textit{fxg4} 15 \textit{gxf4} \textit{f4} 16
\textit{xf4} \textit{xf4} 17 \textit{axc3} \textit{bxc3} 18 \textit{bxc} \textit{e4} 19 \textit{we3}
and Black does not have enough compensation. 13...\textit{h8} is met by 14 g4! \textit{fxg4} 15 \textit{fxg4} \textit{f6} 16
\textit{f2}! with a clear advantage.

14 \textit{f2}

After 14 \textit{d3}?? f4 Black wins a piece.

14...\textit{h8}?!
14...d7!? was undoubtedly better: 15 e2 e8 with only a somewhat better position for White.

15 e2 d7

In the event of 15...e5 16 g4! f4 17 xc5 dxc5 18 d3 White obtains control of e4. Besides, the threat of pushing the kingside pawns, as well as the pressure along the b1-h7 diagonal, leaves Black with a hopeless position.

16 g5!

Pinning the knight and therefore supporting the advance g4.

16...e5 17 g4! (D)

After appropriate preparations White finally advances the pawn.

Test 29 [Level 4]

Themes: Entering the Endgame; White’s Bishops Prevail

15 e1!

With this move White pins his hopes on the endgame. As practice has shown, the defence is somewhat unpleasant and difficult for Black, while White is taking no risk. Therefore, if this was your assessment and you chose Option A, then you have earned 5 points.

The plan indicated in Option B consists of playing 15 a5, with the idea of transferring the rook to b3 via a3 with pressure on the queenside, or else moving the rook to b1 and playing b4 – with the same idea. This has not proved very effective. Anyway, since this is a very logical plan in this position, we give it 3 points. Let us see a game: 15...f8 16 a3 e5 17 e2 ed7!? (the knight goes back to d7, vacating the e-file, thus allowing a possible ...e4; besides, the knight will prove very useful on d7, controlling the c5-square in case White breaks on b4) 18 e3 e4! (Black’s pieces gain a lot of activity, especially the g7-bishop) 19 xe4 (19 c2?! g3!) 19...xe4 20 d3 e7 21 b1 (21 b3 looks somewhat better: 21...e5
22 \textcolor{red}{\text{a}}e2 \textcolor{red}{\text{a}}e8 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b6 gives rise to unclear play after 23...\textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c7! with the idea of meeting 24 b4 by 24...\textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d7 25 bxc5! \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}xb6 26 axb6 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xc5!) 21...\textcolor{red}{\text{a}}ae8 22 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f1 (as Gligorić pointed out in his annotations to this game, Black would be doing very well after 22 b4 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xb4 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xb4 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe3! (an excellent exchange sacrifice which gives Black complete control of the dark squares) 24 fxe3 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c5 with equality) 22...\textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f6 23 b4 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e4! 24 \textcolor{red}{\text{w}}c1 cxb4 25 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xb4 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c5! (thanks to this firmly posted knight on c5, Black holds his queenside) 26 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e8 27 \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}g5 \frac{3}{2}-\frac{3}{2} \textcolor{red}{\text{P}}ortisch-Gligorić, Kapfenberg \textit{Echt} 1970.

Instead, the idea suggested in Option C is more than dubious: 15 g4?! \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f8 16 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d4 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e5 17 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f2 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}fd7! (the knight is heading for a new destiny and thus liberates the field for the f-pawn and the activity of the bishop) 18 \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b6! and in this position, more pleasant for Black, the players agreed a draw in Polugaevsky-Minić, Skopje/Ohrid 1968. A possible continuation is 19 b3 f5!, attempting to punish the weakening g4. Therefore, this choice gets no points.

15...\textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f8 16 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d1!

The bishop goes to c2, where it will control e4. It also clears the way for the f-pawn, for an eventual f4 and g4 advance, gaining more space on the kingside.

16...\textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe1 17 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e8 18 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe8 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe8 19 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f4

In another game, where the victim was Uhmann himself, White played 19 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c2 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b6 20 b3 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}bd7 21 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f4 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e7 22 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e2! \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f8 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe7+ \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe7 (D).

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}

\draw[thin, gray] (0,0) grid (8,8);
\draw[ultra thick] (0,4) -- (8,4);
\draw[ultra thick] (4,0) -- (4,8);
\node at (2,6) {W};

\node at (4,6) {B};

\node at (2,7) {22 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e2 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e8 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b6 gives rise to unclear play after 23...\textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c7! with the idea of meeting 24 b4 by 24...\textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d7 25 bxc5! \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}xb6 26 axb6 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xc5!) 21...\textcolor{red}{\text{a}}ae8 22 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f1 (as Gligorić pointed out in his annotations to this game, Black would be doing very well after 22 b4 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xb4 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xb4 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe3! (an excellent exchange sacrifice which gives Black complete control of the dark squares) 24 fxe3 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c5 with equality) 22...\textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f6 23 b4 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e4! 24 \textcolor{red}{\text{w}}c1 cxb4 25 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xb4 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c5! (thanks to this firmly posted knight on c5, Black holds his queenside) 26 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e8 27 \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}g5 \frac{3}{2}-\frac{3}{2} \textcolor{red}{\text{P}}ortisch-Gligorić, Kapfenberg \textit{Echt} 1970.

Instead, the idea suggested in Option C is more than dubious: 15 g4?! \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f8 16 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d4 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e5 17 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f2 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}fd7! (the knight is heading for a new destiny and thus liberates the field for the f-pawn and the activity of the bishop) 18 \textcolor{red}{\text{g}}3 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b6! and in this position, more pleasant for Black, the players agreed a draw in Polugaevsky-Minić, Skopje/Ohrid 1968. A possible continuation is 19 b3 f5!, attempting to punish the weakening g4. Therefore, this choice gets no points.

15...\textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f8 16 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d1!

The bishop goes to c2, where it will control e4. It also clears the way for the f-pawn, for an eventual f4 and g4 advance, gaining more space on the kingside.

16...\textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe1 17 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe1 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e8 18 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe8 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe8 19 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f4

In another game, where the victim was Uhmann himself, White played 19 \textcolor{red}{\text{c}}c2 \textcolor{red}{\text{b}}b6 20 b3 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}bd7 21 \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f4 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e7 22 \textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e2! \textcolor{red}{\text{f}}f8 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe7+ \textcolor{red}{\text{x}}xe7 (D).

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}

\draw[thin, gray] (0,0) grid (8,8);
\draw[ultra thick] (0,4) -- (8,4);
\draw[ultra thick] (4,0) -- (4,8);
\node at (2,6) {W};

\node at (4,6) {B};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

Before anything else, White fixes the queenside pawns.

22...\textcolor{red}{\text{e}}e8?! 23 \textcolor{red}{\text{d}}d2

Necessary in order to prevent the capture on c3, doubling White’s pawns.

23...h5!

Black attempts, by means of this advance, to hinder White’s kingside pawn-storm. This was allowed in another game, and Black lost.
easily. Let us see how: 23...\(\text{Qe}5\) 24 \(\text{Qe}2\) \(\text{Qd}7\) 25 b3 \(\text{Qd}4\) 26 \(\text{Qf}1\) \(\text{Qg}7\) 27 \(\text{Qd}3\) \(\text{Qe}8\) 28 \(\text{f}4!\) (beginning the restriction of the black pieces) 28...\(\text{Qg}7\) 29 \(\text{g}4!\) f5 30 \(\text{g}2\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 31 \(\text{Qf}3\) \(\text{Qf}7\) 32 \(\text{Qe}2!\) (the knight goes towards g3, where it will press on f5 forcing Black to capture on g4) 32...\(\text{b}2\) 33 \(\text{Qg}3\) \(\text{fxg}4+\) 34 \(\text{hxg}4\) h5 35 \(\text{gxh}5\) \(\text{Qgxh}5\) (now g6 will be a target for White, but leaving him with a passed f-pawn was worse) 36 \(\text{Qxh}5\) \(\text{Qxh}5\) 37 \(\text{Qg}4\) \(\text{Qg}7\) 38 \(\text{b}4!\) \(\text{Qf}6\) (38...\(\text{cxb}4\) 39 \(\text{Qxb}4\) \(\text{Qe}8\) 40 c5!) 39 \(\text{b}5!\) (the strongest move; the b6-pawn will decide the issue very quickly) 39...\(\text{d}8\) 40 \(\text{b}6\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 41 \(\text{c}2!\) (completing the aforementioned plan: the bishop is heading for c6) 41...\(\text{c}2\) 42 \(\text{a}4\) \(\text{a}3\) 43 \(\text{Qf}3\) \(\text{Qf}5\) 44 \(\text{Qc}6\) \(\text{Qb}4\) 45 \(\text{Qxb}4\) \(\text{Qxb}4\) 46 \(\text{Qe}4\) \(\text{b}3\) 47 \(\text{Qd}3\) \(\text{Qg}3\) 48 \(\text{Qxb}7\) \(\text{Qe}4\) 49 \(\text{Qc}8\) 1-0 Panno-Godoy, São Paulo 1972.

24 \(\text{Qf}1\) \(\text{Qd}4\) 25 b3 \(\text{Qg}7\) 26 \(\text{Qc}2\) \(\text{Qe}8\) 27 \(\text{Qe}2\) \(\text{b}2\) 28 \(\text{f}3\) \(\text{Qg}7\) 29 \(\text{Qf}2\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 30 \(\text{Qe}3\) \(\text{d}4+\) 31 \(\text{Qe}2\) \(\text{f}5\) 32 \(\text{f}4!\)

Controlling e5.

32...\(\text{Qe}8\) 33 \(\text{Qd}3\)? (D)

If 40...\(\text{Qe}4\) then simply 41 \(\text{g}4!\).

41 \(\text{d}1\) \(\text{Qe}7\) 42 \(\text{g}4!\)

This strong break will leave Black very close to zugzwang.

42...\(\text{hxg}4\) 43 \(\text{hxg}4\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 44 \(\text{Qe}3\) \(\text{b}6\)

This seems to be the most stubborn move. A waiting policy would lead Black to defeat after 44...\(\text{Qf}7\) 45 \(\text{gxf}5\) \(\text{gxf}5\) 46 \(\text{Qh}5+\):

a) 46...\(\text{g}7\) 47 \(\text{Qe}8!\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 48 \(\text{Qxc}5!\) and then:

a1) 48...\(\text{d}x\)c5 49 \(\text{d}6!\) \(\text{Qf}8\) (49...\(\text{Qxe}8??\) 50 \(\text{d}7\) 50 \(\text{Qg}6\) \(\text{Qe}4\) 51 \(\text{d}7\) \(\text{Qe}7\) 52 \(\text{Qxf}5\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 53 \(\text{Qe}6!\) \(\text{Qxd}7\) 54 \(\text{Qxd}7\) \(\text{Qxd}7\) 55 \(\text{Qe}4\) with a won pawn ending.

a2) 48...\(\text{Qxe}8\) 49 \(\text{Qb}4\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 50 \(\text{c}5!\).

b) 46...\(\text{Qe}7\) 47 \(\text{Qg}6!\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 48 \(\text{Qh}7!\) \(\text{Qe}4\) 49 \(\text{Qa}3\) and there is no defence against the threat of 50 \(\text{b}2+\), followed by the capture of the f5-pawn.

45 \(\text{gxf}5\) \(\text{gxf}5\) (D)

33...\(\text{Qxc}3!\)

Black exchanges his only bishop for a knight. Now the white bishops are going to command the whole board.

34 \(\text{Qxc}3\) \(\text{Qe}6\) 35 \(\text{Qe}1\) \(\text{Qf}7\) 36 \(\text{Qe}3\) \(\text{Qe}7\) 37 \(\text{Qe}2\) \(\text{Qf}7\) 38 \(\text{b}4!\)

A strong break, which will, despite giving up the c5-square, force Black to keep the knights immobilized, while White can play on the other flank without opposition.

38...\(\text{cxb}4\) 39 \(\text{Qxb}4\) \(\text{Qe}5\) 40 \(\text{Qd}4!\) \(\text{Qfd}7\)

46 \(\text{Qxc}5!\)

The simplest finish.

46...\(\text{Qc}5\)

Losing a pawn, but the other options were not much better:

a) 46...\(\text{bxc}5\) 47 \(\text{Qa}4\) \(\text{Qb}8\) (the only way to avoid losing the a6-pawn; if 47...\(\text{Qf}8\), then 48 \(\text{Qc}6!\) and 49 \(\text{Qb}7\), etc.) 48 \(\text{Qf}3\) and the black king cannot prevent the invasion by the white monarch: 48...\(\text{Qg}6\) 49 \(\text{Qg}3\) \(\text{Qf}6\) 50 \(\text{Qh}4\) \(\text{Qg}6\) 51 \(\text{Qc}6!\) \(\text{Qh}6\) 52 \(\text{Qe}8\) \(\text{Qg}7\) 53 \(\text{Qg}5\), etc.

b) 46...\(\text{dxc}5\) 47 \(\text{Qa}4!\) (entering a won pawn ending) 47...\(\text{Qxe}7\) 48 \(\text{Qxd}7!\) \(\text{Qxd}7\) 49 axb6 with an easy win for White.
47 axb6 a5 48 c2 e7 49 d2 d8 50 xf5 a4 51 b7 e7 52 c8 e5 53 f5 e4+ 54 c2 b8 55 b3 d2+ 56 a4 xc4 57 f6 e5 58 xa5 1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 0 points

Some time after losing against Polugaevsky (see the note to White’s 19th move), Uhlmann won this ending against Gligorić, who, as we just noted, was defeated for a second time by the same opponent.

White now restricts the black pieces:
39 g5! d7 40 e2 f7 41 c3 f8 42 c1 d7 43 e2 g3 44 e3 h4 45 f3 b6 46 axb6 xb6 47 e2 d7 48 d3 f2 49 c2 f8 50 c1!

Heading for d3, to support the break on b4.
50...e3 51 d3 h5 52 xb5 gxh5 53 b4 exb4 54 xb4 e7 55 c5 dx5 56 xc5 a5 57 a3 g6 58 d3+ e8 59 d6 d7 60 a8 c8 61 e5 xe5 62 fxex5?!
62 xe5!? xfx4 63 f3 d7 64 g6 +–.
62...xg5 63 b3 d2 64 d6? f4? 64...d7! draws.
65 e6 f3 66 e7 d7 67 c5+ 1-0

Test 30 [Level 5]

Themes: Prophylactic Thinking: Accomplishing our own Plans while hindering the Opponent’s

18 b2!

This is Option B. The move puts pressure on e5, thus preventing the knight from going to f6, and hindering Black’s counterplay on the kingside. Subsequently, White will transfer the knight from c3 to b1 – vacating the bishop’s diagonal – and then move to c4 by way of d2, where it will threaten to settle on d6. This is the right knight, inasmuch as on c3, as we noted before, it obstructs the action of the bishop and besides lacks any prospects there. And what is most important: the knight is very well placed on f3, since from there it puts pressure on e5 and defends d4. If you chose Option B then you win 5 points.

The plan mentioned under Option A is less accurate (as the following game is going to show) than Option B. White is heading for the d6-square; however, it leaves the d4-square without protection and does not neutralize Black’s kingside counterplay. There may follow 18 d2 c7? (the knight is going towards d4) 19 c4 e6 20 d6 e7 21 g4 f6 22 xc8 axc8 23 xe6 xe6, when Black is better, since he is able to use the d-file and has good prospects on the kingside:

a) Now the natural 24 b2 will be met by 24...cd8! 25 e2 (guarding the seventh rank;
25 \(\text{wc}2 \text{ f3!}\) 25...\(\text{ch}5!\) and White cannot deal with the invasion by the rook on the seventh rank and the threat of ...\text{f3} at the same time.

b) 24 \(\text{a}1 \text{ cd}8\) 25 \(\text{wb}3 \text{ xb}3\) 26 \(\text{xb}3 \text{ ad}3!\) (D).

White will need to withstand an unpleasant pin. 27 \(\text{xd}1 \text{ fd}8\) 28 \(\text{xd}3 \text{ xd}3\) 29 \(\text{f3} \text{ ch}5\) 30 \(\text{a}4 \text{ g}3\) 31 \(\text{a}2 \text{ f6}\) 32 \(\text{a}3 \text{ c}7\) (White is fully paralysed) 33 \(\text{a}1 \text{ a}5!\) 34 bxa5 \(\text{xc}5+\) 35 \(\text{ch}2 \text{ d}4\) 36 \(\text{c}1 \text{ g}7\) 37 \(\text{d}1 \text{ h}5\) 38 \(\text{xd}4 \text{ exd}4\) 39 \(\text{b}1 \text{ f}6\) 40 \(\text{f}2 \text{ d}2\) 41 \(\text{g}1 \text{ a}2\) 42 \(\text{xb}7 \text{ xa}4\) 43 \(\text{b}6 \text{ xa}5\) 44 \(\text{xc}6+/ \text{ ce}7\) 45 h4 \(\text{a}1+\) 46 \(\text{h}2 \text{ f}1\) 47 \(\text{c}2 \text{ d}3\) 48 \(\text{d}2 \text{ xf}2\) 0-1 Barkhagen-Chekhov, Gausdal 1991. If this was the plan you chose, then you have earned 2 points.

The continuation suggested under Option C gives Black fewer problems than Option B. A possible follow-up: 18 \(\text{xa}6 \text{ bxa}6\) 19 \(\text{wa}4 \text{ f}6!\) 20 \(\text{b}2 \text{ g}5\) 21 \(\text{a}1 \text{ g}6\) and then ...h5 and ...g4 with good counterplay. We give 3 points to this choice.

18...\(\text{ce}7\) 19 \(\text{b}1!\) (D)

Continuing the plan: the knight goes towards d6.

19...\(\text{e}6\) 20 \(\text{bd}2 \text{ d}4\) 21 \(\text{c}4!\)

The knight doesn’t deviate from the outlined route.

21...\(\text{xe}2+\) 22 \(\text{xe}2\) \(b6\) 23 \(\text{d}6\) \(\text{we}6\) 24 \(\text{fd}1 \text{ bx}c5\) 25 \(\text{ac}1 \text{ cx}b4?\) 26 \(\text{xc}6\)

26 axb4 was tantamount to the game’s continuation.

26...\(\text{bxa}3\) 27 \(\text{xa}3 \text{ d}8\) 28 \(\text{ec}1 \text{ g}8\)

If 28...\(\text{b}3\) then 29 \(\text{bc}3\).

31 \(\text{xd}7!!\)

An excellent queen sacrifice, causing a collapse in Black’s position. The activity of White’s pieces is overwhelming.

31...\(\text{xd}7\) 32 \(\text{xd}7\) \(\text{d}8\)

If 32...\(\text{a}2\) there would follow 33 \(\text{ac}7!\) \(\text{g}8\) 34 \(\text{e}8 \text{ xa}3\) 35 \(\text{f}6+ \text{ h}8\) 36 \(\text{h}4!\), winning.

33 \(\text{e}7 \text{ e}2\)

Again 33...\(\text{a}2\) will not do: 34 \(\text{cc}7 \text{ xa}3\) 35 \(\text{xg}7+ \text{ h}8\) 36 \(\text{h}7+ \text{ g}8\) 37 \(\text{cg}7+\) \(\text{ f}8\) 38 \(\text{a}7 \text{ g}8\) 39 \(\text{hg}7+ \text{ h}8\) 40 \(\text{xe}5 \text{ xd}6\) 41 \(\text{gc}7 \text{ c}4\) 42 \(\text{xc}4\).

34 \(\text{xe}5 \text{ wa}2\) 35 \(\text{cc}7 \text{ g}8\) 36 \(\text{e}81-0\)

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 3 points
Test 31 [Level 4]

Themes: Prophylactic Thinking; A Very Accurate Exchange

17...\textsf{\textit{xc3}}!

An excellent move that thwarts White’s plans. With this exchange, White is impeded from playing on the queenside by means of b4, and at the same time the advance g4 loses its strength, since it does not press on the e4-pawn. This is the idea suggested in Option B, and gets 5 points.

Instead, the move mentioned under Option A, consisting of playing the knight to f6 at once, gets no points.

The plan outlined in Option C, seeking quick counterplay on the queenside, by 17...a6 followed by a possible ...b5, looks somewhat unrealistic. Such an advance is far from being possible under good conditions, whereas White can pursue his own ideas, playing 18 \textsf{\textit{f2! \textsf{\textit{b8}}}} 19 a4; then only White has been able to make some progress. Therefore, we give no points to this choice too.

18 \textsf{\textit{bxc3 \textsf{\textit{f6}}}} 19 a4 \textsf{\textit{h8}}!

Since White is unable to play on the queenside (with b4), Black is now attempting to prevent the break g4. The text-move is aimed at this goal, vacating g8 for his rook.

20 \textsf{\textit{f2 \textsf{\textit{g8}}}} 21 \textsf{\textit{h1 \textsf{\textit{e8}}}} (D)

The queen goes towards g6, where it will act on g4 and support the advance of the pawn to h5, preventing White from advancing his g-pawn altogether.

\textbf{22 \textsf{\textit{g1 \textsf{\textit{g6}}}} 23 \textsf{\textit{d2 \textsf{\textit{d7}}}} 24 g3 \textsf{\textit{ae8}}!}

The rook aims at g7.

\textbf{25 a5 \textsf{\textit{e7}} 26 \textsf{\textit{ab1 \textsf{\textit{c8}}}} 27 \textsf{\textit{g2 \textsf{\textit{eg7}}}} 28 \textsf{\textit{bg1 \textsf{\textit{ce8}}}} 29 h3 h5! (D)}

$\frac{1}{2}$-$\frac{1}{2}$

The g-pawn cannot advance.

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 32 [Level 4]

Themes: Closed Centre; Removing Black’s Counterplay on the Kingside

13 b4?

This is the most natural move and the one suggested under Option B, but it is a serious mistake, for with the knight sacrifice on e4 Black radically changes the position in his favour. Therefore, this option gets no points.

What the position demands here is to close the kingside by g4, stopping any attempt at counterplay by Black in this part of the board, thus gaining a free hand on the queenside, where White has the advantage. This is the plan mentioned under Option A and gets 5 points. 13 \textsf{\textit{f3!}} strengthens e4, planning to get rid of the knight by b4, and, what is most important, to close the kingside with g4. Let us see some practical examples:
a) 13...\(\text{d7}\) 14 \(g4\) (14 \(b4!?\)) 14...\(\text{c8}\) 15 \(\text{d2}\) \(\text{a5}\) 16 \(\text{b1}\) \(\text{a4}\) 17 \(\text{b5}\) \(\text{xd2+}\) 18 \(\text{xd2}\) \(\text{xb5}\) 19 \(\text{xb5}\) \(\text{c5}\) 20 \(\text{e2}\) a6 21 \(\text{d3}\) \(\text{xd3}\) 22 \(\text{xd3}\) \(\text{d7}\) 23 \(\text{g3}\) \(\text{fd8}\) 24 \(\text{f5}\) with an overwhelming advantage for White, though the game Shereshevsky-Gufeld, Tbilisi 1974 ended in a draw after White played very inaccurately.

b) 13...\(a5\) reinforces the c5-knight, although it weakens the b5-square. 14 \(g4\) \(\text{d7}\) 15 \(\text{h3}\) \(\text{e8}\) 16 \(\text{b5}\) ! \(\text{c8}\) was played in Gavras-V.Gurevich, Le Touquet 1996 where, as Gurevich himself mentioned in his annotations, White should have continued with 17 \(\text{d1}\)! (the game saw 17 0-0) with a clear advantage since 17...\(\text{c7}\)? is not possible on account of 18 \(\text{xc5}\)! \(\text{dxc5}\) 19 \(\text{d6}\)!

13...\(\text{cxe4}\)! (D)

This move attempts to speed up his development, but at a high price, since he loses a third pawn. After 17 \(\text{bxa5}\) \(\text{xa5}\) Black would be clearly better. However, 17 \(\text{b5}\) is better, although after 17...\(\text{xe3}\) 18 \(\text{xe3}\) \(\text{b6}\) ! Black has more than enough for the piece, as Uhlmann pointed out.

17...\(\text{xe4}\) 18 \(\text{d6}\) \(\text{e4}\)! (D)

Activating the g7-bishop.

19 \(\text{d1}\)

As Rizzitano pointed out in his notes, taking on e6 was no better: 19 \(\text{xe6}\) ? \(\text{d3+}\) 20 \(\text{f1}\) \(\text{xd6}\) and White suffers material losses.

19...\(\text{xc4}\) 20 \(\text{xc4}\) \(\text{c7}\)

Also interesting is 20...\(\text{d3+}\) ?! 21 \(\text{f1}\) \(\text{b5}\) 22 \(\text{a3}\) \(\text{d5}\) !.

21 \(\text{e2}\) \(\text{d3+}\)! 22 \(\text{xd3}\) \(\text{exd3}\) 23 \(\text{xd3}\) (D)

With this sacrifice, Black takes advantage of his lead in development, winning two central pawns and creating concrete threats that let him seize the initiative and keep the opponent’s king in the middle of the board.

14 \(\text{c4}\) 15 \(\text{d2}\) \(\text{e6}\)!

Completing development. 15...\(\text{xe3}\) ?!, with the idea of pushing the d-pawn, is hasty on account of 16 \(\text{dx3}\) \(\text{d5}\) 17 \(\text{d1}\)! \(\text{e6}\) 18 \(\text{c5}\) and White is fine.

16 \(g4\)

The only move to counter Black’s threat of ...

16...\(\text{a5}\)!

Black gives his opponent no respite.

17 \(\text{c4}\) !?
White might as well resign now.
27 \[wc6 \text{exd2+} 28 \text{dx}d2 \text{wx}d2+ 29 \text{xf}3 \text{wf}4+ 30 \text{xe}2
30 \text{g}2 \text{wx}g4+ 31 \text{xf}1 (31 \text{hx}h2 \text{xe}5+ 32 \text{f}4 \text{xf}4#) 31...\text{b}8 32 \text{xf}3 \text{bb}1+ 33 \text{xe}2 \text{ax}h1
34 \text{wc}3 \text{we}6+ with an easy win.
30...\text{wx}g4+ 31 \text{xf}3 \text{e}8 32 \text{gg}1 \text{wf}5 (D)

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{chess_board.png}
\caption{Position after 27 \[wc6 \text{exd2+} 28 \text{dx}d2 \text{wx}d2+ 29 \text{xf}3 \text{wf}4+ 30 \text{xe}2 \text{g}2 \text{wx}g4+ 31 \text{xf}1.}
\end{figure}

33 \text{wx}h6
33 \text{wb}7 loses the queen after a pretty sequence: 33...\text{e}8+ 34 \text{ff}1 (34 \text{dd}1 \text{wd}3+ 35 \text{c}1 \text{b}2+! 36 \text{wx}b2 \text{cc}8+, etc.) 34...\text{wh}3+ 35 \text{gg}2 \text{wh}1+ 36 \text{gg}1 \text{ee}1+! 37 \text{xe}l \text{wb}7.
33...\text{wb}5+ 0-1

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points

We are now going to take a look at a very instructive game on this theme. Petrosian closes the kingside, eliminating every attempt at counterplay in that sector, in order to play without opposition on the queenside, where he has the advantage.

Petrosian – Schwebert
Stockholm 1Z 1962

1 \text{d}4 \text{gf}6 2 \text{c}4 \text{g}6 3 \text{cc}3 \text{g}7 4 \text{e}4 \text{d}6 5 \text{e}2 0-0
6 \text{gg}5 \text{h}6 7 \text{e}3 \text{e}5 8 \text{dg}5 \text{c}6 9 \text{h}4 \text{cx}d5 10 \text{cx}d5 \text{bd}7 11 \text{h}5! \text{g}5 12 \text{f}3 \text{a}6 13 \text{g}4! (D)
Closing the kingside.
13...\text{b}5 14 \text{a}4!
Starting actions on the opposite flank.
14...\text{b}4 15 \text{db}1 \text{a}5 16 \text{dd}2 \text{cc}5 17 \text{xc}5!
\text{dxc}5 18 \text{db}5!

\[B\]

Preventing Black from blocking the d-pawn with a knight on d6.
18...\text{b}7 19 \text{cd}2 \text{ce}8 20 \text{xe}8 \text{xe}8 21 \text{cc}4 \text{aa}6 22 \text{wb}3 \text{ff}6 23 \text{cc}1 \text{ff}8 24 \text{gg}3 \text{gg}8 25 0-0 \text{md}8 26 \text{gg}2 \text{aa}7 27 \text{mf}2 \text{hb}7 28 \text{ff}2 \text{wa}6 29 \text{xe}5 \text{me}7 30 \text{cc}4 \text{gg}7 31 \text{wd}3 \text{gg}8 32 \text{mm}2 \text{me}7 33 \text{ee}5 \text{xe}5 34 \text{xe}5 \text{xe}5 35 \text{wa}x6 \text{aa}6 36 \text{me}5 \text{cc}8 37 \text{ma}5 \text{ff}5 38 \text{gx}f5 \text{xf}5 39 \text{xf}5 \text{xf}5 40 \text{hb}5 \text{md}8 41 \text{dd}6 \text{xb}5 42 \text{ax}b5 \text{ff}7 43 \text{dd}7 1-0

Test 33 [Level 2]

Themes: Control of Light Squares; Positional Exchange Sacrifice

14...\text{h}3?!
This move (Option A) gets no points.
Option D, 14...\text{ab}8 (2 points) cedes the a-file and the whole game is then decided on the kingside: 15 \text{ee}1 \text{hh}3 16 \text{hh}1 \text{gg}4 17 \text{aa}1 \text{f}5 18 \text{dd}5 \text{g}5 and now instead of 19 \text{aa}7?! \text{cc}8! 20 \text{aa}2 \text{c}6 \text{Medinis-Zapata, Amsterdam 1986}, White should play 19 \text{xe}7+ \text{ee}7 20 \text{e}3! \pm, reducing Black’s attacking chances.
14...\text{cc}6 (Option C) is not good either: 15 \text{cc}4 \text{ee}8 (15...\text{cc}7 is somewhat better) 16 \text{bx}c6 \text{bc}6 17 \text{c}5 \text{hh}3 18 \text{cc}4! \pm. This move gets 1 point.

Option B is correct, even though Black has less hope of attacking the white king now: 14...\text{ab}8! (5 points) 15 \text{aa}1 \pm. Sometimes it is necessary to face the facts.
15 \text{xb}7 \text{xf}1 16 \text{xf}1
16 \( \texttt{\#xa8} \texttt{\#xe2} = \).

16...\( \texttt{\#a7} \) 17 \( \texttt{\#g2} \)

Thanks to the modest sacrifice of an exchange for a pawn, White has secured absolute control of the light squares.

17...\( d5 \)

Other possibilities were 17...\( \texttt{\#h7} \) and 17...\( c6 \) 18 \( \texttt{\#b3} \) (18 \( \texttt{b6} \)?! \( \texttt{\#a6} \) 19 \( \texttt{c5} \) \( \texttt{dxc5} \) 20 \( \texttt{\#c4} \) \( \texttt{\#ed5} \); 18 \( \texttt{bxc6} \) \( \texttt{\#xc6} \) 19 \( \texttt{\#de4} \) targeting \( d5 \)). The compensation was obvious anyhow.

18 \( \texttt{\#c1} d4 \)

18...\( \texttt{\#xa8} \) 19 \( \texttt{\#c2} \).

19 \( \texttt{\#ce4} \texttt{\#xe4} 20 \texttt{\#xe4} \texttt{\#f5} 21 \texttt{\#c5} \) (\( D \))

\[ \]

B

\[ \]

\[ \]

21...\( \texttt{\#c8} \) 22 \( \texttt{\#a6} c6 \)!!

22...\( \texttt{\#xa6} \) 23 \( \texttt{bxa6} \) \( \texttt{\#xa6} \) 24 \( \texttt{\#a3} \) \( \texttt{\#d8} \) 25 \( \texttt{\#c5} \) leaves White with a positional advantage thanks to his powerful bishop.

23 \( \texttt{\#a3} \) \( \texttt{\#d8} \) 24 \( \texttt{\#c5} \) \( \texttt{\#xb5} \)!!

24...\( \texttt{\#xa6} \) 25 \( \texttt{bxa6} \) \( \texttt{\#xa6} \) 26 \( \texttt{\#a1} \) \( \texttt{\#c8} \) 27 \( \texttt{\#a3} \) ±.

25 \( \texttt{\#xa7} \) \( \texttt{\#xa6} \) 26 \( \texttt{\#a1} \) \( \texttt{\#e6} \) 27 \( \texttt{\#xb5} \) \( \texttt{\#d6} \)

28 \( \texttt{b6} e4 \) 29 \( \texttt{\#b1} \) \( \texttt{\#c8} \) 30 \( \texttt{\#b2} \) \( \texttt{\#d7} \) 31 \( \texttt{\#xe4} \)!!

31 \( \texttt{b7} \) ?!

31...\( \texttt{\#xe4} \) 32 \( \texttt{b7} \) \( \texttt{\#d6} \) 33 \( \texttt{bxc8\#} \) \( \texttt{\#xc8} \) 34 \( \texttt{\#c5} \) 1-0

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 1 point
Option D: 2 points

This type of exchange sacrifice is played very often in the Sicilian Dragon. Let us see a characteristic game where the same idea was applied.

\[ \]

Lobron – Kudrin

New York 1983

\[ \]

1 \( e4 \) \( c5 \) 2 \( \texttt{\#f3} \) \( d6 \) 3 \( \texttt{d4} \) \( \texttt{cxd4} \) 4 \( \texttt{\#xd4} \) \( \texttt{\#f6} \) 5 \( \texttt{\#c3} \) \( g6 \) 6 \( \texttt{\#c3} \) \( \texttt{\#g7} \) 7 \( \texttt{f3} \) 0-0 8 \( \texttt{\#d2} \) \( \texttt{\#c6} \) 9 0-0-0 \( d5 \)

10 \( \texttt{\#xc6} \) \( \texttt{bxc6} \) 11 \( \texttt{\#h6} \)

A line that was fashionable for some years, but then was replaced by 10 \( \texttt{exd5} \) \( \texttt{\#xd5} \) 11 \( \texttt{\#xc6} \) \( \texttt{bxc6} \) 12 \( \texttt{\#d4} \), a line that is much safer from a positional point of view.

11...\( e6 \)?? 12 \( \texttt{h4} \) (\( D \))

\[ \]

12...\( \texttt{\#h8} \)??

A true exchange sacrifice. Black’s powerful dark-squared bishop and the pressure along the b-file amply compensate for the material deficit.

13 \( \texttt{h5} \) \( \texttt{\#xh5} \) 14 \( \texttt{\#xf8} \) \( \texttt{\#xf8} \) 15 \( \texttt{g4} \) \( \texttt{\#g3} \) 16 \( \texttt{\#h3} \) \( \texttt{\#b8} \) 17 \( a3 \) (\( D \))

\[ \]

17...\( \texttt{\#e5} \)
The dark-squared bishop begins to cause trouble.
\[ \text{18} \text{Qf2} \text{xf4+ 19 b1 Qxf1} \text{20 Qxf1 Qxa3} \]
\[ \text{21 Qd1 Qe5 22 c3 Qa6} \]

And now both bishops are doing so.
\[ \text{23 f4 Qxf1 24 Qxf1 Qg7 25 e5 Qa4} \text{26 Qf3 g5 27 fxg5 Qxe5 28 Qd3 Qxg4 29 Qxh7+ Qf8} \text{30 Qe3 Qxe2} \text{31 Qc2 Qe7} \text{32 Qe3 Qd1+} \text{33 Qa2 Qh8 0-1} \]

**Test 34 [Level 2]**

**Themes: Positional Exchange Sacrifice; Prophylaxis – Preventing Counterplay**

17 Qc6!

This move (Option A) gets 5 points. Among two good continuations one must always choose the clearer, the one that gives the opponent less possibilities of counterplay. Unquestionably, this was the move that Karpov – a real expert in situations like this – chose. Besides the capture on d4, 17 Qc6 is the only way to make sure Black cannot play the desirable 17...c5, connecting his central pawns.

In case of 17 Qxd4 (Option C; 4 points) White indeed does not fear the complications arising from 17...Qxb4 18 axb4 Qxd4 thanks to the reply 19 b5! ± (a key move) which fixes the black pawns on the queenside, while White’s centre becomes stronger. There might follow 19...f5 (19...Qd8 20 Qa1 f5 21 Qd2 Qe5 22 Qf1 Qf6 23 Qb3 Qd5 24 Qxd5+ Qxd5 25 Qxa7 c6 26 bxc6 Qxc6) 20 e3 Qd7 21 Qc3 with a clear advantage for White.

If 17 Qd2 (Option D) 17...c5 18 bxc5 bxc5 19 Qa5? Black quietly plays 19...Qd8! and the queen must go back. This is a tactical mistake. Better would be 19 Qc2 with the idea of doubling rooks with pressure on c5. Only 1 point for this choice.

Finally, if 17 Qb2? (Option B) 17...c5 18 b5 Black won’t delay in expelling the e4-knight, thus becoming strong on the c3-square. Black’s space advantage guarantees him a steady and comfortable positional advantage. 0 points for this choice.

17...Qxe6 18 Qxe6 Qd7 (D)

19 Qxd4!

19 Qc2 is met by 19...f5.

19...Qxc6 20 Qxc6 Qxe8 21 Qc1

White has liquidated the black centre and is trying to prevent any counterplay. The black pawns will soon fall.

21...f5

21...g8 22 Qd2 Qc7 23 Qxa7.

22 Qd2 Qf6 23 Qxa7 (D)

23...Qd6

23...c5 24 Qc6 cxb4 25 axb4 Qd6 26 Qc4 Qc7 27 e3.

24 e3 c5 25 Qc4 Qb8 26 Qc6 b5 27 Qa5 cxb4 28 axb4

The white minor pieces control the whole board.

28...Qd7 29 d4!

White is in no hurry. 29 Qxb8 Qxb8 (or 29...Qxb8 30 Qc5) 30 Qc7 Qe5 31 d4 ++ was good too.
29...g5 30 ∥xb8!? ∥xb8 31 ∥c7 ∥f6 32 ∥c6 ∥b6 33 ∥e7+ ∥h8 34 ∥xf5 ∥a6 35 ∥c1! ∥a2 (D)

36 h3! ∥b2 37 e4 ∥xb4 38 g4
38 e5 ∥h5 39 ∥e4 ∥g7 and the d4-pawn is lost.

38...∥h5
Or: 38...∥e8 39 ∥c8 ∥g8 40 ∥e7 ∥f8 41 d5 ∥b1+ 42 ∥h2 ∥b2 43 ∥f5 ∥g8 44 d6; 38...∥d8
39 e5 ∥d5? 40 ∥xd5 ∥xd5 41 ∥c8+.
39 e5 h×g4 40 exf6 gxh3 41 ∥xh3 ∥xf6 42 ∥c8+ ∥h7 43 ∥c7+ ∥g6 44 ∥g7+ ∥h5 45 f3 1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 4 points
Option D: 1 point

Test 35 [Level 2]

Themes: Transformation of the Pawn-Structure; Unfavourable Pawn-Structure

18 b4?? (D)
This is Option C, and it gets 0 points. White damages his pawn-structure by moving his b-pawn carelessly.

In case of Option A, 18 ∥c4 (5 points), White gets a healthy position. The knight has an ideal place on c4, and chances of counterplay given the opponent’s unquestionable space advantage. For instance: 18...∥xg2 (worse is 18...∥b5? 19 a4 ∥xc3 20 bxc3 with the idea of 21 ∥xd5 exd5

22...∥h6!
An interesting tactical solution. The resulting position with rook and two pawns versus two minor pieces is clearly in Black’s favour. The
white pawns are extremely weak and Black’s rook can penetrate into White’s position.

23 e3 \textit{$\text{xe}3$} 24 fxe3 $\text{xe}3+$ 25 $\text{xf}3$ $\text{xf}1$ 26 $\text{x}f1$ $\text{xc}1$ 27 $\text{xc}1$ $\text{e}8$ 28 $\text{b}2$ $\text{c}2$ 29 $\text{x}f6$ $\text{a}2$ 30 $\text{e}3$ $\text{xa}3$ 31 $\text{d}2$ $\text{b}5$ 32 $\text{e}4$ $\text{b}4$

33 $\text{d}4$ a5 34 $\text{e}4$ $\text{a}2$ 35 $\text{h}4$ $\text{e}6$ 36 $\text{d}4$

37 $\text{e}5$ $\text{e}1$ 38 $\text{f}6$ $\text{b}1$ 39 $\text{e}7$ e5 40 g4 $\text{c}1$+ 41 $\text{b}3$ $\text{d}5$ 42 $\text{g}5$ $\text{b}1$+ 43 $\text{c}2$ $\text{h}1$

44 $\text{b}3$ $\text{h}3$ 45 $\text{f}6+$ $\text{d}4$ 46 $\text{xb}7$ $\text{x}d3+$

47 $\text{e}2$ a4 48 $\text{e}7$ $\text{c}3+$ 49 $\text{b}1$ $\text{c}7$ 0–1

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 36 [Level 3]

Themes: Transformation of the Pawn-Structure; Favourable Pawn-Structure

15...b4!

This is Option C. Black closes the queenside in order to open it later, at the right moment, and gains the c5-square for a strong knight. The only unsolved question is White’s attack on the kingside, but this can be parried without too much difficulty. If this was your choice, then you won 5 points.

15...$\text{b}7$ (Option A) 16 $\text{cxb}5$ $\text{axb}5$ 17 $\text{fc}1$ gives White some relief (2 points).

On the other hand, 15...$\text{bxc}4$ (Option B) secures more pawns in the centre but gives White a superior game, which is obvious after 16 $\text{xc}4$. White will press on the open c-file and also against the weakness at d6. 0 points for choosing this.

16 $\text{d}1$

16 $\text{a}4$ would leave the knight misplaced.

16...$\text{a}5$ 17 $\text{e}3$

Better is 17 a4.

17...$\text{a}4$ 18 $\text{ab}1$ a$\text{xb}3$ 19 a$\text{xb}3$ $\text{a}2$ 20 g4 $\text{d}7$ 21 g5 $\text{e}8$ 22 $\text{h}1$ $\text{c}5$ 23 h4 (D)

With the idea of f5. GM Chekhov analyses 23 $\text{f}3$ e5!? 24 $\text{d}5$ $\text{a}7$ 2

23...$\text{d}8$!

Preventing f5 – a strong prophylactic move.

24 $\text{f}3$

The aggressive 24 f5 doesn’t work: 24...$\text{e}5$ (24...$\text{f}8$ 25 f6 g6 26 h5 with the initiative;

24...exf5!? 25 exf5 [25 $\text{xf}5$? $\text{x}f5$ 26 $\text{xf}5$ $\text{e}8$] 25...$\text{x}g5$ 26 hxg5 $\text{wxg}5$ with the initiative) 25 $\text{xe}5$ dxe5 26 $\text{fd}1$ $\text{d}4$!

24...$\text{f}8$ 25 $\text{g}3$ e5!

A sudden blow on the dark squares.

26 f5

26 $\text{d}5$ exf4 27 $\text{xf}4$ $\text{e}5$ 2

26...$\text{d}4$ 27 $\text{f}1$

A humble retreat. If 27 $\text{xd}4$, then 27...exd4 28 $\text{d}5$ (28 $\text{g}4$ $\text{xf}5$ 29 $\text{xf}5$) 29...$\text{x}f5$! (e4 is weak). And 27 $\text{fd}1$ is met by 27...$\text{d}3$ 2

27...$\text{xb}3$ 28 $\text{xb}3$ $\text{xb}3$ 29 $\text{w}e$1 $\text{c}5$!

The safest way of realizing the advantage is to give the pawn back. If 29...$\text{a}5$, then 30 $\text{d}5$.

30 $\text{xb}4$ $\text{b}7$ (D)

The harmonious placement of the black pieces contrasts with the artificial position of the white units, scattered across the whole board. It is only a matter of time and the entire position falls.
31 \&d5 \&a4! 32 \&d2!

32 \&c3 is bad: 32...\&a6 (32...\&xd5 33 exd5 \&b8 34 \&f1 \&b4 35 \&a3 \&b3 \(\rightarrow\)) 33 \&b4 \&b6 34 \&xa6 \&xa6 \(\rightarrow\).

32...\&xd5

The game deserves such an outcome, by positional means. 32...\&xc4 was more complex although correct anyway: 33 \&a3 (33 \&f6+ \&h8) 33...\&d4 (33...\&xd5 34 \&xd5 \&d4 35 \&c6 \&d3 36 \&b7 gives White more of the initiative than is desirable) 34 \&f6+ \&h8 35 \&c2 gxf6 36 \&xc5 \&xe4 37 \&xe4 dxc5.

33 \&xd5 \&b4! 34 \&f3 \&wa8 35 \&wd2 \(D\) 35 \&xa8 \&xa8 intending \...\&ab8 \(\rightarrow\).

...\&b7 36 \&g2 \&b8 \(\rightarrow\)

Intending \...\&a4.

37 \&d1

37 \&h2 \&a4 \(\rightarrow\).

37...\&xe4 38 \&c2 \&xc4

38...\&xh4+.

39 g6 \&xb2 40 gxh7+ \&h8 41 \&bg1 \&xh4+

42 \&h2 \&f4 0-1

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points

Test 37 [Level 3]

Themes: Transformation of the Pawn-Structure; Unfavourable Exchanges

25 \&e5!

5 points for this, Option B.

The passive retreat 25 \&d2 (Option A) gets 0 points. With this move, the knight looks for a better place on the queenside, threatening at the same time g4 in addition to the latent pressure on c7, but Black strongly replies 25...g4, with the idea of playing the knight to g5.

25...\&xe5 26 dxe5 \&e6 27 g4!

Just in time. This break complements the knight’s previous move to e5. If the black centre had not been destroyed and he had time to play...g4 and \...\&g5, then White’s dark-squared bishop would not play such an important role as in the game. Understanding this key idea deserves the full 5 points.

The immediate threat is 28 gxf5 \&xf5 29 \&xf5 \&xf5 30 \&xe4 \(\pm\).

27...\&g6

27...\&xg4 28 \&xe4 is not good for Black.

28 \&b1 \&d5

If 28...\&d8 then 29 gxf5 \&xf5 30 \&b4 \&f7 31 \&d1 \&xd1 32 \&xd1 \&f8 33 \&d5 b6 34 \&xf8 is decisive.

29 gxf5 \&xf5 30 \&xf5 \&xf5 \(D\)

31 \&d1!

An elegant manoeuvre in order to press against Black’s castled position and improve the queen’s performance.

31...\&e6 32 \&h5 \(\pm\)

Black’s blockade of the e5-pawn turns his remaining pieces passive. White has a free hand to continue the pressure against the weakened black kingside.

32...\&e7 33 \&h3 g4

33...\&b6 34 e6 \(\pm\).
34 \textit{hxg}4 \textit{h}g7 35 \textit{h}3 \textit{w}e7 36 \textit{b}b4 \textit{w}d7 (D)

\textbf{W}

\textbf{B}

37 \textit{g}h1?

An odd mistake that gives Black some counterplay by removing the strong light-squared bishop. Better was 37 \textit{d}d1! c6 (37...\textit{w}e6 38 \textit{xd}5 \textit{xd}5 39 \textit{w}e8+ wins immediately) 38 \textit{h}2 \pm.

37...\textit{e}6 38 \textit{d}d1 \textit{hxg}4 39 \textit{w}xg4 \textit{w}xg4 40 \textit{hxg}4 \textit{g}5 41 \textit{g}2 \textit{e}6 \pm

Finally, after Petrosian’s mistake, the knight emerges as a superb blockader.

42 \textit{h}3 \textit{f}7 43 \textit{g}5

43 \textit{b}6.

43...\textit{hxg}5

43...\textit{hxg}5+ 44 \textit{g}4 \textit{e}6 45 a4 \textit{b}6 46 a5 \textit{bxa}5 47 \textit{xa}5.

44 \textit{g}4 b6 45 a4 \textit{g}7 46 \textit{h}5 g4 47 \textit{hxg}4 \textit{g}6 48 a5 \textit{bxa}5 49 \textit{xa}5 (D)

Black has enough counterplay to compensate for the pawn.

50 \textit{xc}7 \textit{xc}7 51 \textit{d}d6+ \textit{g}7

Or 51...\textit{f}7 52 \textit{d}d7+ \textit{e}6 53 \textit{xc}7 \textit{xe}5 54 \textit{b}6 \textit{g}2.

52 \textit{b}6 \textit{e}8

52...\textit{a}6 53 \textit{b}7.

53 \textit{d}d8 \textit{h}2 54 \textit{xe}8 \textit{xb}6 55 \textit{f}5 \textit{f}7 56 \textit{a}8 \textit{e}7 57 \textit{a}7+

57 \textit{h}8 \textit{h}a6.

57...\textit{e}8 58 \textit{xe}4 \textit{b}4+ 59 \textit{f}5 \textit{b}6 60 \textit{g}7 \textit{b}3 61 \textit{e}4

The position is equal. If 61 \textit{f}6, then 61...\textit{xe}3 62 \textit{a}7 \textit{e}1 63 \textit{e}6 \textit{f}8 and Black draws.

61...\textit{f}8 62 \textit{a}7 \textit{b}6 63 \textit{d}d7 \textit{e}8 64 \textit{d}d6 \textit{b}4 65 \textit{h}6 \textit{a}4 66 \textit{b}6 \textit{e}7 67 \textit{b}7+ \textit{e}8 68 \textit{f}6 \textit{xe}4 69 \textit{e}6 \textit{f}8 70 \textit{b}8+ \textit{g}7 71 \textit{d}d6 \textit{f}7 \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points

\textbf{Test 38 [Level 3]}

Themes: Prophylaxis; Assessing the Opponent’s Counterplay

23 \textit{a}4?!

This is Option C. White expands on the queenside, trying to produce weaknesses on this side of the board and take advantage of them later on. Without a doubt this is a useful waiting move, which suffocates Black on the queenside and at the same time prevents a sudden reaction; but this is not the strongest continuation. Sometimes it is not advisable to play in a prophylactic manner, but to face the critical situation. This move gets 2 points.

Option B, 23 \textit{h}4 (3 points), is of course more efficient and logical than 23 \textit{a}4. The threat of \textit{h}5, creating extra difficulties on the kingside, is very serious. And we know that the side controlling less territory cannot transfer pieces to the required squares with ease.

The right move is that of Option A, in spite of letting the black queen become active, but this demanded precise calculation. After 23 \textit{c}7! \textit{xc}7 24 \textit{xc}7 \textit{c}8 25 \textit{xb}7 \textit{g}7! (D), at
first glance it might seem that Black gets counterplay, but this is not true.

Thus White keeps the command of the file. Besides, with his move a4, he prevented counterplay by way of ...\(\text{b}5\).

\textbf{26...d8 27 e5}

Opening another file for his major pieces, besides creating another point of contact. Black cannot quench all the fires, simply because of his lack of space and mobility.

\textbf{27...a6 (D)}

27...dxe5 28 xe5 d6 29 xd6 (29 xe7 xe5 30 xe5 is less conclusive) 29...exd6 30 f4 would lead to a very unpleasant rook ending.

\textbf{28 h4}

Another concealed threat: the idea of playing h5-h6.

\textbf{28...b5}

28...h5 was other possibility: 29 b4 (29 e6 fxe6 30 dx e6 ±) 29...xe8.

\textbf{29 c6 bxa4 30 bxa4 dxe5 31 xe5 c8 32 c3 b8 33 e5 c8 34 g4 (D)}

For instance, 26 xe7 b2+ 27 h3 c2 or 26 e2 a1 27 b4! c1 28 c4 xc4 29 bxc4. But after the correct reply 26 d2! a1 27 xe7 b1 28 f4 c2+ (28...xa2+ 29 h3 f8 30 xd6 xb3 31 f6) 29 h3 White is able to consolidate his advantage. 5 points for this precise calculation.

\textbf{23...e8?}

The move White was waiting for. Much better was 23 xc3 24 xc3 e8 and now 25 c7 does not work on account of 25 d7 26 c8 xc8 (after 26...f8 27 c3 g8 Black will be ready to react and in fact ...e6 is playable at the right moment) 27 xc8+ g7 ±, with stubborn opposition in this rook ending.

\textbf{24 c7 xc7 25 xc7 b8}

25...d7 26 b5 ++.

\textbf{26 c3 (D)}
The difference in activity between the queens is striking.

34...e6?

More stubborn was 34...\(\text{xc}6\) 35 dxc6 \(\text{wd}2+\)
36 \(\text{g}3\) \(\text{wc}1\) 37 c7 ++. For instance: 37...
\(\text{g}1+\)
38 \(\text{f}4\) \(\text{wc}1+\) 39 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{we}1+\) 40 \(\text{d}4\).

35 \(\text{wc}3\) \(\text{xc}6\) 36 dxc6 \(\text{xf}8\)
36...
\(\text{wc}7\) 37 a5.

37 c7 \(\text{wc}8\) 38 \(\text{h}8+\) 1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 2 points

Test 39 [Level 3]

Themes: Supported Passed Pawn; Bishop Activity

19 \(\text{h}3\)!

5 points for this move (Option C), which takes advantage of Black's lack of development. White is threatening d5 without permitting ...exd5, since that move would give Black some freedom.

19 d5 exd5 20 \(\text{xa}7\) (Option B; 1 point) is much too straightforward: 20...
\(\text{a}8\) 21 \(\text{xd}5\)
\(\text{e}6\) 22 \(\text{xe}6\) \(\text{xe}6\) 23 \(\text{c}5\) with a clearly advantageous rook ending, but difficult to win over the board. For instance: 23...
\(\text{xc}5\) 24 \(\text{xc}5\)
\(\text{xa}2\)
25 \(\text{c}8+\) \(\text{f}7\) 26 \(\text{c}7+\) \(\text{g}6\) (26...
\(\text{f}8\) 27
\(\text{xb}7\) \(\text{e}2\) 27 \(\text{xb}7\) \(\text{e}2\) 28 f4 h5 29 \(\text{e}7\) h4 30 g4 (30 gxh4 \(\text{f}5\) 31 \(\text{g}7\) \(\text{xf}4\) 30...

Another line is 19 d5 exd5 20 \(\text{xd}5\) (Option A; 2 points) 20...
\(\text{e}6\) 21 \(\text{xe}6\) \(\text{xe}6\) 22 \(\text{c}7\) b5
23 \(\text{xa}7\) b4 ±. Black has good drawing chances in this ending with 4 pawns against 3 on the same flank. This is also far too straightforward.

19...\(\text{e}8\)

In case of the pseudo-active 19...b6, there follows likewise 20 d5 \(\text{c}5\) 21 d6 \(\text{a}6?!\) 22
\(\text{xc}5\) \(\text{bxc}5\) 23 \(\text{xc}5\) \(\text{b}1+\) 24 \(\text{g}2\) \(\text{b}7+\) 25 f3
\(\text{b}2+\) 26 \(\text{g}1\) \(\text{xa}2\) 27 \(\text{b}5\)! ++.

20 d5 \(\text{d}7\) 21 d6

Completing the first step of the plan.

21...\(\text{d}8\) 22 \(\text{g}2\)

Not 22 \(\text{xa}7\)? \(\text{a}8\) 23 \(\text{xe}3\) \(\text{xa}2\) with counterplay.

22...b6 23 f4 \(\text{c}8\) 24 \(\text{f}2\)

24 \(\text{xc}8\) \(\text{xc}8\) 25 \(\text{f}2\).

24...\(\text{xc}1\) 25 \(\text{xc}1\) (D)

This was the critical position which Kramnik aimed for. The power of the passed and protected d-pawn, and the activity of both white bishops should lead to victory. But first it is essential to create weaknesses in Black’s position, since at the moment it is very sound.

25...\(\text{b}5\)

25...b5 26 \(\text{e}3\) a5 27 \(\text{a}7\) (the penetration by the bishop is decisive) 27...
\(\text{b}4\) 28 \(\text{e}3\) \(\text{a}4\) (28...
\(\text{a}4\) 29 \(\text{d}4\) b3 30 axb3 axb3 31 \(\text{c}3\) ++) 29 \(\text{d}4\) \(\text{d}7\) 30 \(\text{c}5\) h6 (30...
\(\text{b}3\) 31 axb3 \(\text{xb}3\)
32 \(\text{c}6\) \(\text{c}8\) 33 \(\text{d}7\) \(\text{c}7\) 34 \(\text{b}6\) +) 31 \(\text{f}1\)
\(\text{g}6\) 32 \(\text{c}4\) h5 33 \(\text{b}6\) +–.

26 \(\text{e}4\) \(\text{h}6\)! (D)

26...g6 is a better defence, even though it leaves f7 potentially weak.
28...c4 29 a3 a5 30 d2 b5 31 c3 fails to produce the desired counterplay, and the dark-squared bishop remains passive. The black pawns are rather weak.

29 d3

29...d5 30 a3 f6 31 d2 fxe5 32 fxe5 c6 32...g5 33 xg5 (33 xf4!? xc6 34 h4) 33...hxg5 ±.

33 c3 f3 34 c4 d5 35 a6 f3 36 d4 d5
36...b5? 37 d3 b6 38 xb6 xb6 39 xb5! --

37 a4 b3
A better chance is 37...d7 38 b5+ c8 (not 38...c6? 39 c4! ++).

38 b5+ b7 39 d7! (D)

Restricting the black king, and with an eye on the e6-pawn.

39 d5 40 c3 a2 41 b4 d5
The idea of advancing the g-pawn at once by 41...g5?? is maybe better.

But the exchange of dark-squared bishops by means of 41...g5 42 f4! xf4 43 gxf4 looks bad: 43...g6 44 h4 b5 (44...a5+ 45 d3 h5 46 b5 b1 47 c4 f5 48 d3 xg3 49 xd3 ±) 45 a5 (with the aim of weakening the black pawn-chain and therefore winning the pawn ending) 45...bxa5+ 46 bal 47 c3 b6 48 a4 50 c2 51 xc2 ±.

42 h4! a2
42...g5 43 h5.

43 d2! (D)

Starting an elegant manoeuvre, which is perfectly carried out. Not 43 c1 d5 44 a3 a2 45 c3 d5 46 a8? c6.

43 d5 44 c1 a2 45 c3 d5 46 a3! White finds the winning plan: attacking the kingside pawns.

46 a2
46 a6 47 b4.

47 e8! d5 48 d7 (D)
61...b5 62 e5 a5 63 f6+ f8 64 xe6 xe6 65 xe6 b4 66 d5 ++.
62 e5 c2 63 f6+ f8 64 f4 b5 65 g5 f5 66 d4 e7 67 c5+
67 xxa7.
67...d7 68 g7 h7 69 h6 1-0
Option A: 2 points
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 5 points

Test 40 [Level 4]

Themes: Attacking the Centre; Using the Lead in Development

6 f4!
This is Option B, and it earns 5 points. White quickly plays against the black centre, taking advantage of the innocuous developing move ...e6. As a rule, provided that Black has declared his intentions in the centre, this move is very strong, because it speedily acts against the black centre, and the knight will be developed to f3 – its ideal square – exerting pressure on e5 immediately.

6 d3 (Option A) has the advantage of preventing Black’s play in the centre – the ...d5 advance – but is a schematic move giving Black freedom for development. That is to say, it fails to refute Black’s dubious opening, and only gets 1 point.

We can say the same about Option C, 6 e3 (2 points), although this is more flexible than the previous move.

The main drawback of these two choices is displayed especially when White plays the set-up with the pawn on e4 (the so-called Botvinnik System). Having to choose one of the continuations e3 or d3 it is clear that White has failed to carry out his initial plans, and Black has struck a psychological blow in the opening.

6 d3
If 6...g6 then 7 f3 g7 8 e4 e7 and now, for instance, 9 g5 is strong: 9...c8 10 e3 ±.
7 f3 bd7
7...xf4 8 xf4 and White speeds up his development. On the other hand, 7...e4 is hasty: 8
d4 d7 9 dxe4 fx e4 10 xe4 xe4 11 xe4 xc4 12 e2.
8 0-0 g6
This fianchetto means a substantial delay in development, even though 8...e7? was also not good: 9 fxe5 dxe5 (9...xe5 10 d4 b6 11 e3 d7 12 xf5) 10 g5 f8 11 xe6 xe6 12 xf5. If 8...exf4, then 9 xf4 b6+ 10 h1 xb2 11 e1 (intending 12 b1, 13 d4 and 14 e4) 11...b6 12 b1 c7 13 e4 with the initiative.
9 g5!?
A move with a lot of poison, because it stops Black’s development on the kingside and will force him to weaken himself in order to drive the invasive knight out. 9 e4 is too hasty: 9...xe4 10 g5 g4.
9...g8 10 e4 h6 11 f3
The other retreat is more innocuous: 11 h3 b6+ 12 h1 e6 13 e2 g7 14 e3 c7.
11...xe4 12 h4! f7 (D)
It is best to keep the bishop along this diagonal. Not 12...h7 13 dxe4 exf4 14 gxf4 xe4? 15 e1 ±.

W

13 xe4
Worse is 13 dxe4 xc4 14 xg6 g8 15 xf8 b6+ 16 h1 (16 f2 g4) 16...xf1 ±.
13 e7
Black cannot speculate on the exposed position of the white pieces after 13...exf4 (13...e7? 14 f5) 14 xf4 xe4 (14...g5 15 xd6+ xd6 16 xd6 ++) 15 xe4 g5 16 g6 ±.
14 e2 xe4
Or: 14...0-0 15 f5; 14...\e7 15 fxe5 dxe5 (15...\xe4 16 e6) 16 \e3 ±.

15 \xe4 \e4

Ljubojević believes that the lesser evil is to get rid of the strong knight while damaging White’s pawn-structure. More interesting was the stubborn 15...\e6?!; but 15...\c5?! fails to obtain positive results: 16 \e2 (D), with the following variations:

a) 16...\xh4 17 gxh4 and now:
   a1) 17...\e7 18 fxe5 dxe5 19 \e3 ±. For instance: 19...0-0-0? 20 \xf7.
   a2) 17...\xh4 18 fxe5 \d4 (18...0-0 19 \e3 ++) 19 \e3 \xd3 20 \f2 \xc4 21 \xc5 dxc5 22 \f6 \g8 23 \ad1 \e3+ 24 \h1 with many threats.

b) 16...\xf4 17 \xf4 g5 (17...0-0 18 d4 \e6 19 \e4) 18 \xf7! \xf7 19 \h5+ \f8 and now 20 \xg5! is decisive (and better than 20 \g6+):
   b1) 23...\e8 24 \xf6+ \xf6 25 \xf6+ \g8 26 \e6+ \h7 27 \f5+ \g8 28 \g6 should lead to a win for White.
   b2) 23...\g8 24 \xh6+ \e8 25 \h5+ \e7 (25...\f8 26 \xd7 ++) 26 \h7+ \f8 (26...\g7 27 \f5+) 27 \e6 with a decisive advantage.

16 fxe5!

A key move in order to keep the initiative. If the bishop retreats, White recovers the piece.

16...dxe5

Again forced. The alternatives are no better: 16...\xe5?! 17 gxh4 \e7 18 \e1 +-; 16...\g5 17 e6; 16...\e7 17 exd6.

17 gxh4

White has handled the position in dynamic fashion. The pawn-structure is not as important as the security of the black king and the weaknesses now appearing on Black’s kingside.

17...\e7 (D)

18 \e3?

This natural developing move fails to punish Black’s careless play in the opening.

a) 18 h5?...
   b) 18 d4?! \xc4 19 \xg6+ \f7 20 \f5 \e6.
   c) 18 b4! is best:
      c1) 18...\xb4 19 \e3 \e7 (19...0-0 20 \xh6 ++) 20 \ab1 with a strong initiative. For instance: 20...0-0-0? 21 \xb7+.
      c2) 18...0-0-0 19 \e3 \f6? 20 \f3 +.

18...\c5 19 \xc5 \xc5+ 20 \h1 0-0 21 \f6 ± (D)

21...\g7 22 \af1 \e7
The position demands defensive measures. If 22...d8?!, then 23 h5! d6 (23...gxh5 24 wxf5 wxe7 25 e4; 23...g5 24 xf7!!) 24 h4! (24 w3? d5!!) 24...d4 (24...xb4 25 xe5) 25 w3! +- with the idea of 25...d5 26 xg6+!.

23 w3.
23 h5 xf6.
23...d8?!

24 xf6 xf6 25 wxe6 ae8 26 g5+(D)

26...e6?!
Here Black missed a great defensive chance: 26...g7 with the idea of meeting 27 h5! with 27...h8 28 hxg6 xg6 29 e4 h6.

27 e4 g8 28 c5!
Intending h5.

28...d7 29 w6 e6
29...xa2?!

30 xe5 xa2 31 d6+ c8 32 h5 e6(D)
32...g5?? 33 f5+.

33 g3 d5 34 xd5 cxd5 35 g4 d7 36 h6! +- e7
36...h8.

37 g5+ f7 38 f4+ e7 39 d4 ef6 40 e5+ e6 41 h7! 1-0
Option A: 1 point
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 2 points

Test 41 [Level 5]

Themes: Prophylaxis; The Bishop-Pair

17 g4!
Unexpected prophylaxis (Option C; 5 points).
The move has a passive appearance but is really useful. The knight defends the h3-square (which would be accessible to the g4-bishop once the f-pawn has advanced) and at the same time lets the white f-pawn advance to f4 if required. In fact, after 17 b2 it is difficult to suggest a defence after 17...f4. So 0 points for Option B.

Option A, 17 d4!? is really interesting, because it is a central thrust. After 17...xf3 18 xf3 exd4?! (better is 18...e4 19 g2 ae8 or 19...g5?!) the white bishops have a lot of play in exchange for a pawn. 2 points.

17...ae8
White was planning to meet 17...g5 with 18 f3 h5 and then 19 f4!.
18 d2 f6 (D)

19 f3!?
Another intricate move, characteristic of the always creative and unorthodox style of Viktor Korchnoi; the move prevents the advance ...e4 in a radical manner and sidelines the enemy bishop. The g2-bishop will be ready to take part in the battle when required. White could also have played 19 b4 axb4 20 axb4 e4 21 ∆c3 d5 (21...e5 22 ∆xe5 ∆xe5 23 ∆a7 with the initiative) 22 cxd5 dxed5 23 dx e4 fx e4 24 b5 d8 25 h b2? ±.

19...h5 20 b4 b6 21 h3!?

One of the ideas of 17 g1. The attack has been stopped and the white pieces are becoming active in all sectors.

21...f7 22 e2 axb4

Black had some other options here: 22...g5!?!; 22...a8 23 b5 e7 24 c3; or 22...c6 23 c3 (better is 23 b5 e7 24 c3) 23...e4?.

23 axb4 e7 24 b5 (D)

24...d8

Perhaps 24...c8 was more stubborn, or else the ambitious 24...g5. Instead, if 24...a8 then 25 a6!.

25 d4?!?

25 a7 d5 26 b4 a8 e8 27 e4! ±.

25...e6 26 bx c6 w x c6 27 a c1 c8 28 dxe5

dxe5 29 b4 (D)

29...ed5??

A blunder in a critical position. Necessary was 29...f d5!? or else 29...f e8 30 c7 27 f e7 28 f e5 29 f e5 29...w b7 can be met by 30 w b3 or swapping blows with 30 c7 29 f x c4 (30...w x e7 31 w b3 ± 29...w b7)

30 x f 8 x f 31 e3 x f 1 32 b4 h 5

32...e4 33 f x e 4 w x e 4 + 34 g2 w x e 2 35

8 x f 3 x c 4 36 w d 2 ±.

33 x f 1

The rest requires no comments.

33...e4 34 g2 w x c 4 35 w x c 4 + 3 x c 4 36

f c 7 d 5 37 f d 4 x f 4 38 g x f 4 e 3 39 e 1 e 2 40 g1 x f 4 41 f f 2 g 5 42 a d 6 d 4 43 c 7 b 5 44 a x e 2 f 7 45 b 2 a 4 46 e 5 d 1 47

f4 f7 48 f3 d8 49 h4 g4 50 c6 g6 51

x b5 x b5 52 x b5 d2+ 53 e3 h2 54

b6+ h5 55 h6 h3+ 56 f2 h2+ 57

e3 h3+ 58 d4 h1 59 x f 5 + x h 4 60

h6 b5 b6 62 h4 e1+ 63 a d 5

h3 d4 f5 h4 65 f6 x f1 66 x f6 g3 67 f7 g2 68

h6 e1+ 69 x d 5 d 1+ 70 x e 4 e1+ 71

d3 1-0

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points

Test 42 [Level 3]

Themes: Initiative, Time and King Safety

22 c4!!

This is Option A, and it earns 5 points. White creates a new source of concern for Black.

Although the other options keep the advantage, Black finally achieves his thematic break at c5. It is a good rule to create problems on the side of the board where the opponent is short of space and is barely able to extinguish all the fires.
22 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d3 \) (Option B) also looks attractive (3 points) even though Black is able to put up an active defence by 22...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \) 23 c3 e5! 24 dxc5 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) 25 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) \( \textbf{\text{B}}xe5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c6 \).

Option C, 22 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f1 \), is not so strong. The pressure against \( f7 \) looks promising, but Black holds his hands. Since this is a rather inflexible and very straightforward move, there is not much chance for switching to another plan. The main drawback is that after the exchange on \( g5 \), White does not fight for control of the h-file: 22...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}f8 \) 23 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f2 \) \( \textbf{\text{B}}xg5 \) 24 hxg5 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \) (24...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg5 \) 25 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h7 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e7 \) 26 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d3 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \) 27 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g5 \) 28 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}x5 \) 29 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xf7 \) +) 25 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h7 \) (25 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d3 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c8 \) 26 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h7 \) e5 27 dxc5 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xc5 \) 28 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e4 \) 29 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g6 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xf2 \) 30 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe7 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe7 \) 31 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xf2 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c4 \) =) 25...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}c5 \). This plan scores only 1 point.

22...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe4 \) 23 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f2 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}a7 \) 24 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d5 \) (D)

Playing against the black king, which is seemingly trapped. 24 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \) 25 g5 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g7 \) 26 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f6+ \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xf6 \) 27 gxf6 is an alternative, when the white queen can enter at \( c6 \).

24...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) 25 hxg5 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f8 \)

If 25...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xh1 \) 26 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xh1 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \) then 27 d6! \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xd6 \) 28 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c6 \) +.

26 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe6 \)

26...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe6 \) 27 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg5 \) 28 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xc4 \).

27 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e2 \)

The knight joins the attack too.

27...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}c5 \) 28 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d5+ \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \)

28...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}c3 \) 29 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d4 \).

29 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}b7 \) 30 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d1 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}a8 \)

30...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}b6 \) 31 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c6 \) !

31 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}b5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c5 \) 32 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d7 \) ! 1-0

32...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg2 \) 33 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xc7 \) # is an elegant checkmate.

**Option A:** 5 points

**Option B:** 3 points

**Option C:** 1 point

**Test 43 [Level 2]**

**Themes:** Avoiding Exchanges when Having a Space Advantage; A Classical Kingside Attack

10 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f4 \)!

Option A: 5 points. In keeping the bishop, White denies his opponent any easy way to free his game. There is a principle in chess that when you have a space advantage you should not exchange pieces. This happens many times in the Maroczy Bind of the Sicilian Accelerated Dragon, where White usually declines to exchange the dark-squared bishops.

Option B, 10 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe7 \) (1 point), would free Black’s game after 10...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe7 \) 11 f4 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f6 \), with equality and chances for both sides.

10...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}f5 \)!

10...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}f6 \) is better since after 11 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h5 \) \( g6 \)! 12 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg6 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg6 \) 13 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg6+ \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h8 \) 14 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h4 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) 15 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h5\) \( g8 \) 16 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h6 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f6 \) White has no more than a draw. White should play for a small plus by 11 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f3 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) 12 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) 13 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xe5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f6 \) and now 14 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xf6 \) or 14 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g3 \) \( e5 \) 15 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e4 \).

11 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h4 \)!

Preventing ...\( g5 \) and securing the \( g5 \)-square for one of his minor pieces.

11...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}c4 \)

Black feels compelled to react, even at the cost of yielding control of the key square \( d4 \).

12 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c2 \) \( b5 \)!

Black needed to act quickly, in the face of White’s imminent attack. Better was 12...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}c5 \) at once, with the idea of meeting \( 13 \) \( g4 \) with \( 13...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}e4 \)!

13 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f3 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c5 \) (D)

Black must oppose the direct threat of \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g5 \) and \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h5 \). Thus, 13...\( b4 \) would be very slow: 14 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}c5 \) (14...\( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg5 \) 15 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xg5 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}e7 \) 16 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h7 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xh7 \) 17 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}xh5 \) \( g8 \) 18 \( g6 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}f6 \) 19 exf6 gxf6 20 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}d6 \) \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g7 \) 21 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h7 \) +) 15 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}h5 \) \( h6 \) 16 \( \textbf{\text{Q}}g6 \) +. 
14 g4
Opening another front against the black king.
14...b4
Other defensive tries are inadequate:
   a) 14...fxg4 15 dg5 h6 16 hxg5 hxg5 17 hxg5 with a strong attack.
   b) 14...de4 15 dg5 (15 gxf5 exf5 16 dd4 dd7 17 dg5 is another interesting possibility)
      15...dxg5 (15...h6 16 dxex4 dxex4 17 we2 is good) 16 hxg5 dxg5 17 dxg5 wxg5 18 gxf5
      and White’s attack is moving ahead.
15 gxf5
Or 15 dd4? with an attack.
15...exf5 16 dg5 (D)

16...g6? (D)
This move surrenders without a fight. The critical defence was 16...h6 17 wh5 (or 17 df3)
   17...dd3+ 18 bxex3 cxex3 19 wg6 hxg5
   20 hxg5 we8 (20...wb6 21 wh8+ dxh8 22
      w5+ dg8 23 g6) 21 wh7+ df7 22 e6+ (also
   possible is 22 dh6 dg8 23 e6+ dxex6 24 wg6+
      df8 25 we8+ dxex8 26 dxex6 bxex3 27 bxex3,
      though in this case White is only slightly better)
      22...dxex6 23 wxg7 with a powerful attack; for
      instance, 23...wb5 24 dh7.

17 h5!
The lack of adequate protection of d5 allows
this decisive breakthrough.
17...dd3+
   17...dxg5 18 dxg5 wxg5 19 wxd5+ dg6
   20 wxc5 would be decisive.
18 bxex3 cxex3 19 hxg6 hxg6
   19...dxg5 20 dxh7 +–.
   20 wxd3 bxex3 21 bxex3 dxg5 22 dxg5 wa5
   23 df6 we8 24 wd4 df7 25 e6+ dxex6 26
   dd8 1-0
The game could have finished 26...wa3 27
   dh7+ we8 28 wg7 +–.
Option A: 5 points
Option B: 1 point

The idea of avoiding the exchange of pieces
when having a space advantage is often used.
The side short of space wants to exchange
pieces at any price and thus free his game. Let
us see another example:

Romero – Candela
Spanish Ch (Palencia) 1999

1 c4 df6 2 cc3 g6 3 e4 d6 4 g3 dg7 5 gc2 c5
6 gc2 cc6 7 d3 0-0 8 0-0 de8 9 de3 gc7?!
10 d4 cxex4 11 dxex4 dc5 12 b3 eg4 13 de1
d6 (D)
14 ♗de2!
Black does not know what to do with his pieces!
14... ♗c5 15 h3 ♗e5 16 ♗e3 ♗d7 17 f4 ♗c6
18 e5 ♗f5 19 ♗d2 ♗a5 20 exd6 ♗fd8 21 ♗ad1
♗xd6 22 ♗d5! ♗xd2 23 ♗xd2 ♗e4 24 ♗dd1
e6 25 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 26 ♗f6+ ♗xf6 27 ♗xd6
♗b4 28 ♗d2
with a decisive advantage.

Test 44 [Level 5]

Themes: Space Advantage; The Principle of the
Second Weakness

25 g4!!
This is Option C, and it earns the full 5 points.
White is weakening his own castled position!
This is possible because of White’s space advan-
tage and the passive position of the black pieces.
The idea is to open a new battle front, in this case
against the black king, opening the g-file at the
right moment. As a result, Black will probably
be unable to defend both points, losing the d5-
pawn, which is the main target of White’s attack.
There is another additional plan with ♗g2, fol-
lowed by the advance of the f-pawn: f4-f5.

After 25 ♗g4 (Option B) White exchanges
his good bishop for Black’s bad one. Generally
speaking, this is not a good policy for the side
having the advantage. In the present case, nei-
ther recapture on g4 after 25... ♗xg4 is advan-
tageous: after 26 hxg4 ♗c6 Black defends
without trouble, and threatens, for instance, to
offer the exchange of queens at e6; or 26 ♗xg4
♗f8! with the idea of 27...f6 and ...♗f7. Black
has freed his position. 0 points.

25 h4 (Option A) is not a bad move. White
is perhaps threatening to advance this pawn to
h5, therefore restricting Black’s kingside. But
the resulting pawn-structure is not favourable,
since the possibility of a breakthrough on the
kingside is reduced, and besides White is lo-
cating a pawn on a light square. 1 point.

25...♗c6
With the idea of breaking with ...f6.
26 g5 hxg5 27 ♗xg5
Threatening ♗h4 and ♗h5.
27...f6
Anticipating the threat of penetration on the
h-file.
28 ♗g6 ♗f7 29 ♗g3 f5?!
Black attempts to bring his queen to the de-
fence of the kingside, but the move weakens
the position too much, particularly the dark
squares.
30 ♗g5! ♗e6 31 ♗h1 ♗e5 32 ♗g1 ♗f8 (D)

33 ♗h6
Threatening ♗h4 again.
33...♗b8
Or: 33...♗d6 34 ♗xg7+; 33...g6 34 h4.
34 ♗h4 ♗f8 35 ♗h8+ ♗g8 36 ♗f4
Targeting the weakness of f5.
36...♕b7 37 ♗g5 ♗f7 38 ♗h5 ♗a1+ 39 ♗g2
g6 40 ♗xg6 ♗h7 41 ♗d6+ ♗f7 42 ♗d8+ 1-0
Option A: 1 point
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points
**Test 45 [Level 2]**

*Themes: Counterplay Along a File; Minority Attack*

The main feature of the memorable world championship match between Bronstein and Botvinnik was that both players were seeking new developments, untested set-ups, and thus playing in a creative fashion.

20...b5?!

Option C gains 0 points. There is no justification for such an attack on this flank. Black will probably not be able to bring a knight to c4 in order to hinder the future pressure against c6. Besides, White will combine an attack against this weakness with pressure along the a-file.

The defensive 20...d7 (Option A; 3 points) is preferable. If then White insists with his advance on the queenside, Black is going to get more play than he obtained in the game after 21 b5 axb5 22 axb5 fe8 23 d2 a3.

Another way of permitting b5, but providing compensation in other parts of the board, is Option B. 20...f7 21 b5 (taking the f5-pawn leaves the e3-pawn undefended) 21...axb5 22 axb5 g5 23 g2 e4 with a great centralized position. This choice deserves 5 points, because it is the ideal follow-up to the advance...g5-g4 made some moves before.

21 g2 g4 22 d2 f6 23 b2 d7 24 a1 (D)

24...e4

Black played both the aforementioned strategies, with little fortune, and thanks to the mistake on the 20th move he ruined his position.

25 e1 fe8 26 wb3

There is a concrete threat now: 27 axb5 axb5 28 xa8 xa8 29 xd5 cxd5 30 xd5+ e6 31 xa8+

26...h8 27 ba2 (D)

27...f8

White was threatening to win a pawn.

28 d3 ab8

The decision to give up the a-file leads to disaster. The lesser evil was 28...eb8, but in this case White replies with 29 e5 xe5 30 dx5 e6 31 c2, ably transferring the target to c6.

29 axb5 axb5 30 a7 e7 31 e5 e8 (D)

If 31...xe5, then 32 dx5 e6 33 g4 fxg4 34 h4 and Black has a lot of trouble since after 34...xa7 35 xa7 White threatens 36 xe4 followed by 37 f6+. 
32 g4

Magic. Bronstein changes the battle front and resumes his actions on the kingside.

32...fxg4 33 hxg4 dxe4 34 h4

A new soldier – which was sleeping until now – appears in the battlefield with decisive effect.

34...exd5

Virtually forced. 34...g7 35 w6e6, 34...eb7 35 w6e6 exd5 36 wxe5+ g8 37 wxb7 wxb7 38 a8, and 34...a7 35 a7 w6h6 36 w3 c3 g8 37 g3 d8 38 w3+ h8 39 e7?! are all very good for White.

35 dxe5 dxe5 36 f1 g8

36...d2xh2+ is clearly useless on account of 37 g2.

37 g3

A nice turn.

37...g7

If 37...wxb3 (or 37...xg3 38 w3+), then 38 b8+ g8 39 xe5#.

38 w8xg8+ 1-0

White is going to win a piece after the upcoming double exchange. This was the most beautiful game of the match.

Option A: 3 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 46 [Level 2]

Themes: Favourable Fight vs Isolated Pawn; Playing Against the Bishops

13...d5!

This is Option C, by which Black plays against White’s light-squared bishop and prevents the advance of the d4-pawn. The temporary concession of the e5-square is of little significance (5 points).

13...g4 (Option B) gets 2 points. In a game Benjamin-Browne, USA Ch (Greenville) 1983 White got a good game thanks to his powerful dark-squared bishop, despite the unsightly appearance of his kingside: 14 d5 e4 15 b2 xf3+ 16 gxf3 h3 17 f2 h5 18 d2 h4 19 h1 xf4 20 g1 f6 21 b1 with compensation. Of course this was difficult to foresee.

On the other hand, 13...e8 (Option A; 0 points), is a very logical move to control the e-file, but it lets the dark-squared bishop come to life again after 14 d5!.

14 a3

The bishop is misplaced here. After 14 e5, 14...xd4 15 a3 (15 b2 w6b6 16 f2; 15 cxd5 xd5) 15...e8 16 cxd5 xd5 17 c4 allows White enough play. But better is 14...xc4 15 xc4 e6!! 16 xc6 fx6 f5. This curious idea – creating a ‘weak’ isolated pawn – helps to control the blocking square d5 and will help us when examining some other examples on this subject later. On the other hand, 14 b1!? is interesting.

14...e8 15 e5 dxc4!

This is the primary idea.

16 xc4 d6 17 xe6 xe6 18 f5 e8 (D)

Black’s plan is clear. The battle is for blockade, with a knight against a bad bishop.

19 b2??!

White should have tried 19 xc6 bxc6 20 c1 f5 when at least he will be able to press against a weakness.

19...b6 20 c4

It is better for White to exchange queens by 20 b3 xb3 (20...d5?! and if 21 xd5 then 21 xe3) 21 axb3 b4 although White has too many weaknesses in the endgame. Certainly not 20 xc6? xb2 21 b1 xa2 22 xb7 xe2 --.

20 b5 21 c1

21 f2 c2 c8.

21...d8 22 d3 d5 f5 (D)
An excellent square for the queen. The centralized queen is going to put pressure not only on the isolated pawn but also against other critical points, such as f5 and a2.

\[
\begin{align*}
23 & \text{cxd1 } b5 24 \text{ } & \text{d}e3 \text{ } \text{wx}a2 25 \text{ } & \text{c}c3 \\
25 & \text{a}1 \text{b}4.
\end{align*}
\]

\[
25...b4 26 \text{a}1 \text{e}5! 27 \text{dxe5}
\]

Trying to fish in troubled waters, but without success. 27 \text{wb}5 \text{xb}8 28 \text{wc}5 \text{ed}7 29 \text{wc}4 \text{wc}4 30 \text{xc}4 \text{d}d5 \mp.

\[
27...\text{xd}3 28 \text{xd}3 \text{e}4 \rightarrow+
\]

The rest is a technical job.

\[
29 \text{e}6 \text{fxe}6 30 \text{f xe}6 \text{xe}6 31 \text{f}5 \text{c}c3 32 \text{e}xc3 \text{bxc}3 33 \text{e}xc3 \text{f}8 34 \text{e}c3 \text{wb}6 35 \text{h}1 \text{h}7 36 \text{h}4 \text{g}6 37 \text{e}3 \text{hx}f3 38 \text{hx}f3 \text{wd}4 39 \text{g}4 \text{g}5 40 \text{g}2 \text{a}4 0-1
\]

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 5 points

Let us see some further examples of the creation and blockade of an isolated pawn.

**Botvinnik – Boleslavsky**  
*Leningrad/Moscow 1941*

\[
1 \text{e}4 \text{e}6 2 \text{d}4 \text{d}5 3 \text{d}d2 \text{c}5 4 \text{ex}d5 \text{ex}d5 5 \text{b}5+ \text{c}6 6 \text{gf}3 \text{d}6 7 \text{d}c5 \text{xc}5 8 0-0 \text{e}7 9 \text{b}3 \text{b}6 (D)
\]

\[
10 \text{e}3! \text{xe}3 11 \text{fxe}3
\]

In a later game of the same encounter, Botvinnik favoured the *zwischenzug* 11 \text{c}x6+ \text{bx}c6 12 \text{fxe}3 0-0 13 \text{wd}2 \text{wb}6 14 \text{wc}3! with advantage.

\[
11...0-0 12 \text{wd}2 \text{wb}6 13 \text{a}4 \text{f}5 14 \text{fd}4
\]

The extra control of d4 forces the exchange of knights, restoring for White a favourable pawn-structure in the middlegame, where the lasting weakness of the isolated d5-pawn is noticeable.

\[
14...\text{xd}4 15 \text{exd}4! \text{ac}8 16 \text{c}5 \text{a}6 17 \text{ae}1 \text{xc}7 18 \text{d}d3 \text{xd}3 19 \text{xd}3 \text{wd}6 20 \text{c}3 \text{a}5 21 \text{f}f3 \text{g}6 22 \text{e}3 \text{b}6 23 \text{d}d3 \text{d}7 24 \text{f}e1 \text{xc}6 25 \text{g}3 \text{d}6 26 \text{h}4! \text{f}6 27 \text{f}f5 \text{wc}8 28 \text{xc}8 \text{xc}8 29 \text{h}5 \text{f}8 30 \text{e}7 \text{e}d8 31 \text{f}4 \text{b}7 32 \text{g}4 \text{xe}7 33 \text{xe}7
\]

White has all the aces: seventh rank, active knight and the opponent’s weakness on d5.

\[
33...\text{g}5 34 \text{hx}6 \text{gxh}6 35 \text{d}x \text{g}6 36 \text{h}b7 \text{h}8 37 \text{f}2 \text{e}8 38 \text{e}3 \text{g}5 39 \text{d}3 \text{h}6 40 \text{b}4 \text{xb}4 41 \text{cxb}4 \text{h}8 42 \text{a}5 \text{c}8 43 \text{a}6 \text{b}5 44 \text{xb}5 \text{xa}6 45 \text{xd}5 \text{e}a1 46 \text{c}5+ \text{bh}7 47 \text{d}5 \text{f}1 48 \text{c}4 \text{f}5? 49 \text{e}2 1-0
\]

**Fernandez Garcia – Romero**  
*Spanish Ch playoff (5) 1993*

\[
1 \text{e}4 \text{e}6 2 \text{d}4 \text{d}5 3 \text{ex}d5 \text{ex}d5 4 \text{f}3 \text{d}6 5 \text{c}4 \text{f}6 6 \text{c}3 0-0 7 \text{c}x \text{d}5 \text{h}6! ? 8 \text{e}2 \text{bd}7 9 0-0 \text{b}6 10 \text{e}5 \text{bxd}5 11 \text{xd}5 \text{xd}5 12 \text{e}4 \text{bd}6 13 \text{b}3 (D)
\]

\[
13...\text{e}6! 14 \text{xe}6 \text{fxe}6 15 \text{w}g4 \text{w}6 16 \text{d}2 \text{f}5 17 \text{c}e1 \text{xe}5 18 \text{xf}5 \text{xc}2+ 19 \text{xc}2 \text{ex}f5 20 \text{xc}7 \text{f}7 21 \text{e}c1 \text{e}5
\]

The ending is very advantageous and Black’s pawn-majority on the kingside should be apparent in the future.

\[
22 \text{c}6 \text{e}8 23 \text{e}1 \text{f}7 24 \text{e}5 \text{e}7 25 \text{e}4 \text{e}6 26 \text{e}c5 \text{g}6 27 \text{c}3 \text{f}7 28 \text{b}4 \text{e}7
\]
28 $\text{a}x\text{c}5$ $\text{a}x\text{c}5$ 29 $\text{a}2$ $\text{b}7$

After the blockade of the d-pawn, the game takes a strategic turn. White plays his ace on the f-file, but he does not have enough attacking pieces.

30 $\text{f}2$ $\text{e}7$ 31 h4 $\text{d}6$ 32 g5 $\text{f}8$ (D)

33 $\text{h}3$?!

White insists on his desire for kingside counterplay, but perhaps he should have prevented the attack against the a4-pawn.

33...$\text{a}5$ 34 $\text{c}2$

The only move was 34 $\text{b}2$, heading for b4, even though it is clear that his choice on move 26 was not entirely correct. White wished to bring both rooks to bear on f7.

34...$\text{e}8$ 35 $\text{e}f1$

35 $\text{a}1$ b5.

35...$\text{a}x\text{a}4$ 36 $\text{e}2$ $\text{b}3$ 37 $\text{g}4$ $\text{a}x\text{c}3$ 38 $\text{d}7$ $\text{e}x\text{e}4$ 39 $\text{x}f7$ $\text{e}3+$ 0-1

White has no defense. 40 $\text{f}1$ 2 (40 $\text{h}1$ $\text{x}g3+$ 41 $\text{h}2$ $\text{a}2+$) 40...$\text{x}g3+$ 41 $\text{g}2$

$\text{a}1+$ 42 $\text{f}1$ $\text{f}1+$.

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 4 points

Test 48 [Level 2/3]

Themes: Lack of Communication: Playing against a Piece; A Bad Piece Dooms the Whole Position

17 $\text{c}6$!
With this move (Option B; 5 points) White uses his advantage in space and is going to take total control of the a-file, besides creating a future target on c7. Black is left with bad coordination and a poor bishop.

17 .Rad4 (Option C) is not a particularly strong move. The knight is not doing too much on f4 (in fact, the c2-knight can go to d4 later) and loses an important tempo that could be used to achieve a concrete advantage on the queenside (0 points).

The idea of 17.b5 (Option A) is to open the position on the queenside by a4, a5, etc. This is quite a logical choice (3 points), but is inferior to and less concrete than the text-move.

17...b6
Of course, 17...bxc6 does not work on account of 18.Qxc5 ±.

18.b5
The c8-bishop has no squares at its disposal. 18...a6 19.a4 axb5 20.axb5 Qxa1 21.Qxa1 Qf7 22.Qe3 Wh4 23.Qa1 Qg5 24.Qe1 Wh5
Black pins all his hopes on an attack, but really there is no such possibility.

25.Qa7 (D)

Black resigned without waiting for White’s 32.Qe7.

Option A: 3 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 49 [Level 4]

Themes: Reducing the Activity of the Enemy Pieces; Prophylaxis

19.f4! (D)
Option C; 5 points. This seemingly ugly move – it shuts in the c1-bishop – is based on impeding the latent threat of ...f4, while preparing a slow-burning attack with h3, Qh2, g4, g1 and g3.

19.Qb1 (Option A; 3 points) ignores Black’s intention but is perfectly playable. After 19...f4
20.Qh4 Qf5 21.Qxf5 Qxf5 22.Qb5! (not so clear is 22.Qe1 Qxa4 [22...Qe8 23.Qb5] 23.e6 Qf8 24.Qxb6 and now 24...Qe8 or 24...Qg6) and White should be better, because of the pressure against d5 and since the black queen is tied to b6. For instance: 22...Qa8 (22...Qf8 23.Qg4!) 23.Qa3 Qe8 24.Qd6 and the white bishop displays its full power, even though Black’s position is difficult to crack.

19.Qg3 (Option B; 1 point) keeps the diagonal open for the bishop, but has no concrete plan, and White will have difficulty exploiting his theoretical advantage.

25...Qg6
25...Qf7 26.Qf4 Qxf3+ 27.gxf3 Qxf3 28.Qe2.

26.Qh1
26.Qxc7?? Qxf3+ ⚫.

26...Qh5 27.f4 Qe4 28.Qxc7 g5
Attacking?

29.Qxb6 Qh8 30.Qxe4 fxe4 31.Qc5 Qg8
1-0
This helps the light-squared bishop to get more diagonals, but a waiting policy is always unpleasant.

20 axb5 axb5 21 a3 b6
Preventing a4 for a moment.

22 h4 e8 23 f3 c8 (D)
Coming to the rescue.

28 e7!
The inroad of the bishop into the enemy camp helps to dismantle the defences.

28...f7 29 g5 g6 30 h4 c6 31 a3 d8 32 h5 e6 33 h4 f7 34 h6 g6 35 f6 d8 36 e7 c7 (D)

24 a4!
A nice move. The bishop emerges in a good supporting role.

24...d7
A desperate exchange sacrifice. If 24...d7, then 25 e6! xe6 26 d8+.

25 b1 d8 26 xd7! xd7
If 26...xh4 then 27 xe6+ h8 28 xd5 a7 29 b8 d8 30 e6 or 30 e6 and White wins.

27 g3
Or 27 h3 h6 28 g3 h7 29 f8.

27...a7 (D)

37 xg6+!
A nice finish.

37...hxg6 38 h7+ xh7 39 xf7+ g7 40 f2 1-0

Option A: 3 points
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 5 points

Test 50 [Level 4]

Theme: Positional Sacrifice of a Pawn to Improve Our Pieces

13 c5?  
Option D: 5 points. White uses the dynamic character of his pawn-centre to open the game to the benefit of his dark-squared bishop, whose potential activity could soon be lost if he does not act promptly.

The remaining moves are harmless. Option A, 13 0-0, contributes very little (1 point): 13...e6 (13...g6?! 14 f2 0-0) 14 b3 c5 forces White to make a decision in the centre sooner or later.

But worst is Option B: 13 a4+?! (0 points) 13...d7 14 xd7+ dxd7 =. Generally speaking, and in spite of the bishop-pair, this sort of
closed position with a static pawn-structure cannot favour White.

Option C, 13 a4, is basically wrong. Black replies with 13...a5 (the natural move to oppose the planned advance a5, creating trouble along the a-file). If your plan was to follow with 14 c5 (very unlikely), you would get 5 points too, since it would have the same efficacy as the ideal solution. If not, this sort of pawn advance is troublesome, because a4 could be a new weakness (0 points).

13...dxc5

If 13...bxc5, then 14 d5 with compensation. Opening the b-file is undesirable for Black, because he is not ready for the further struggle.

14 dxe5 wxe5 15 wa4+ c6

This weakens some key dark squares, and is certainly not the safest way to handle the position. One could prefer 15...d8d7, although after 16 c2 White has the initiative and chances to expand in the centre.

16 0-0 g6

16...wxc3 is met by 17 a6 or 17 c4.

17 c4 w6 18 e5! b5 (D)

18...xh4 19 d6+ f8 20 ae1.

19 exf6!

An unexpected queen sacrifice in Tal’s characteristic style.

19...bxa4?

19...0-0! is necessary, and seems to hold: 20 ae1 xe1 (not 20...d5? 21 c2 xh4 22 e5 with a decisive advantage) 21 xe1 bxa4 22 xg6 fxg6 23 e7 g5 24 xg7+ h8 25 g3 a6 26 e5 xc4 27 f7 h5 28 g4 hxg4 29 fxg4 ad8 30 h4 d1+ leads to a draw, but there are many other possible lines.

20 fxg7 ag8 21 cf5!! (D)

The key follow-up to the previous sacrifice. There is no rest for either the king or the queen.

21...xh4

Let us see some other possible defences:

a) 21...xc4? 22 fe1+ e6 23 xe6+ xe6 24 xg6+ d7 25 d1+ c7 26 g3+ b6 27 b1+ a6 28 d3+.

b) 21...xf5 22 d6+ d7 23 xf5 xh4 24 ad1+ c7 25 xh4 xg7 26 fe1±.

22 xe6 a6

22...xe6 23 d6+.

23 d6+ e7 (D)

24 c4!

Another key moment of the combination. White recovers the sacrificed material and retains a positional advantage.
24...£xg7 25 g3 .cycle 26 4xa6 £f5 27 4ab1 ± f6 28 £fd1+ £e7 29 9e1+ £d6 30 £f2 (D)

B

30...c4 31 g4 £e7 32 4b7 4ag8 33 4xc4 £d5 34 4xd5 cxd5 35 4b4 £c8 35...h5 36 h3. 36 4xa4 4xc3 37 4a6+ £c5 38 4xf6 +-- h5 39 h3 hxg4 40 hxg4 £h7 41 g5 £h5 42 £f5 £c2+ 43 £g3 £c4 44 £ee5 d4 45 g6 £h1 46 £c5+ £d3 47 £xc2 £xc2 48 £f4 £g1 49 £g5 1-0

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 0 points
Option D: 5 points

Test 51 [Level 5]

Themes: Use of Spatial Advantage and Better Development; The Principle of the Second Weakness

13 g4!

Option B: 5 points. Up to now White didn’t have more than a slight lead in development. Intuition tells us we must proceed quickly. With 13 g4 White produces the conditions for getting a spatial advantage on this side of the board, thus restricting the mobility of the black pieces. He also considers that Black cannot break in the centre, so the weakness of the white king is not meaningful. Likewise this active advance introduces the immediate threat of g5, attacking the f6-knight and pressing against the d5-pawn at the same time.

In case you chose the logical Option C, 13 4b3 (1 point), Black will be able to repel the aggression against d5. For instance, after 13...£c6 14 4e3 £a5 15 4a2 £e6 the game would reach a dead point.

Option A (0 points) is less effective. The idea of lining up the bishop and queen is easily carried, and the weakening of the black kingside will not be serious: 13 4c2 £c6 14 4d3? (14 g4 would transpose to the next note, scoring 5 points) 14...g6 15 4b3 £f5 16 4d1 4e6 17 4e1 4d7 =.

13...£d6

If 13...£c6 then 14 4c2!? is strong (rather than 14 g5 £e8 15 h4 £c7). One idea is to line up the bishop and queen to weaken the black kingside, an idea that might be used later. White will simply follow with his development (£e3, £ad1) and “keep the advantage in view of the restriction of the black pieces”, according to Garry Kasparov.

14 £h1 £e8 15 g5 £xf4

This was Black’s defensive plan, though it does not work.

16 £xf4 £h5 (D)

W

17 £xb8!

White is giving no rest to the opponent and maintains the momentum. Time is very important and giving up the dark-squared bishop turns out to be a secondary feature in the position.

17...£xb8 18 f4 g6 19 £f3
The exchange of the bishop for a knight allows us to make the first assessment: White prevents the counterplay against d4 while attacking d5. The light-squared bishops are still on the board, and this is favourable for White due to the blockaded centre. If this were not enough, White’s initiative along the f-file is still potent.

19...b6

Maybe Black should regroup the knight to keep it in the battle by 19...g7 20 b5 (20 xd5 g4!) 20...d7 (20...f8 21 xd5 g4 22 e4) 21 xd7 xd7 22 xd5 h5 ±.

20 f5 b7 (D)

If 20...g7, then 21 fxg6 fxg6 22 xd5 (22 b5 f8 23 xf8+ xf8 24 xf8+ xf8 ±) 22...b7 23 f6+ h8 24 d5 e5 25 e4 xg5 26 h4 h6 27 f3 with a clear advantage to White.

21 f6!

White is closing the flank where he is attacking.

The compensation is obvious, since he reduces the mobility of the black knight and hinders the doubling of Black’s rooks on the e-file. The game is strategically won.

21 e6 22 e1 w6 23 e5 d8 24 e3 b5 25 e2! b4 26 axb4 xb4 27 xh5 gxh5 (D)

28 g6! hxg6 29 e6! fxe6

If 29...xe6 then 30 h6!.

30 w6 7 1-0

After 31 xg6+ h8 (31...f8 32 g1) 32 f7 w8 33 xh5+ g7 34 g1+ f6 35 h4+ White wins.

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 1 point

Let us see a similar example with an expansion on a flank with a closed centre:

**Spraggett – Pomes**

*Manresa 1995*

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 c3 b4 4 exd5 exd5 5 d3 f6

5...c6 6 a3 xc3+ 7 bxc3 ±.

6...g5 h6 7 h4 c6 8 a3

8 c2 is another idea.

8...e7 9 ge2 0-0 10 0-0 h5 11 xe7 xe7 12 d2 c6

This prophylactic move was not necessary. After the natural 12...f5!? Black will exchange his bad bishop, therefore avoiding tactical trouble. For instance: 13 xf5 xf5 14-g4?! h4 15 f4 16 h3 e4!.

13 f3!

This prevents ...f5 and gets a promising game on the kingside.

13...b6 14 e1 c5 15 b3 b7 (D)

16 g4! f6 17 g3

As in similar situations, this expansion is justified because of the closed centre.

17...cxd4?

17...c6 is better, keeping the tension in the centre: 18 c2 e8.

18 b5 a6 19 xxd4 xd3 20 w3 ±

g6 21 g5 wc7 22 w2

Targeting f4.
22...ffe8 23 h1 ff4 24 xf4 dxf4 25 h4 h5?

Very passive. Now Black will not get any counterplay.

26 g5 d7 27 h2 c5 28 g3 ffe6 29 c6!

The first step. Black's problem is his isolated pawn.

29...c7 30 d6! +- 

The white knights are ruling the centre of the board. A curious position.

30...e6 31 xe6 fxe6 32 b4 d7 33 e1 g6 34 c4

Opening a file for the white rook.

34...dxc4 35 xc4 f8 36 d6 g7 37 c1 d5 38 e1 a6 39 d4 c7 40 c1 d5 41 e1 c7 42 c6 d5 (D)

43 f4

Beginning the right plan: introducing the king into the battle.

43...g8 44 f3 g7 45 d4 c7 46 c1 d5 47 e4 d8 48 c6

Threatening dxe6+.

48...a5 49 b5 g8 50 xe6 xe6 51 xd5 xf4+ 52 e4 g2 53 xb6 xh4 54 c6 f8 55 b6 f3 56 b7 1-0

Test 52 [Level 2/3]

Themes: Improving Our Pieces; Attacking the King

17 wa4! (D)

In order to transfer the queen to the kingside, with unpleasant threats against g7. This plan (Option A) gets 5 points.

Centralizing the bishop with 17 h7+ h8 18 e4 does not work because after 18...fd8 19 xd8+ xd8 the position has been simplified and White's pressure is fading. This continuation (Option B) scores 1 point.

On the other hand, the second-best possibility is 17 b4!? (Option C) 17...d6 (17...a5 18 b2 ±) 18 b2 f6 19 b3 (19 h3 ±) 19...d8 with a good enough defence. 2 points for choosing this idea. Now it is obvious that the key of the position was to improve the efficiency of the white queen.

The advance 17 e4 (Option D) will be comfortably met by 17...d6!, covering the e5-square and this whole diagonal. White will lose the advantage. 0 points.
White feared the complications resulting from 15...d6?! 16 c5 d6 17 cd6 d6xh2+ 18 d3 c5 19 b3 g3+ 20 e2 xg2+ 21 d1 f7. Here it was required to sharpen the intuition in order to choose one move or the other. Without a doubt Kramnik chose the safer move.

15...bc5
If 15...c7, then 16 cb6 cbx6 17 c4 ±.
16 c4 e7
16...c7 17 dx5 e7 18 b4 ±.
17 dx5
17 b6?! axb6 18 xa8 cxd4 19 exd4 c7
20 a4 d7 ±.
17...xe5 18 b4 xd6 19 b2! (D) ±
This leaves the b8-knight poor.
It is too late to think in terms of recovering the material: 19 b6 axb6 20 xa8 e5 (20...c5! with compensation; 20...b5 21 c2 c7 22 a4 ±;
20...c7 21 a4 d7 22 b3 e8 23 a4 f6 24 d2 ±) 21 b2 exf4 22 exf4 c7 with compensation.

![Diagram](B)

**Test 53 [Level 4]**

Themes: Positional Sacrifice of a Pawn; Activity vs Weaknesses

15 c5!!
Option A gets 5 points. This pawn sacrifice provides some strategic dividends: lead in development, the c1-bishop joins the game and the black pawns (a7, c6, e6) are permanent weakness.

15 b4 (Option B; 2 points) also deserves attention. After 15...c7 16 b2 (16 b5) 16...f6 17 f1 White defends his king (f1) and ends up with all his pieces ideally placed. Probably

19...c7
Or: 19...a6 20 fd1 c7 21 d4 ±; 19...c7 20 xd6 xd6 21 fd1 ±.
20 fd1
20 d4 is interesting, according to GM Stohl.
All the white pieces are playing at the small price of a pawn. Besides, the dark-squared bishop is ruling a very strong diagonal.

20...ec5
20...d8 21 xd8+ xd8 22 d1 e8 23 c6 d8 24 b3 e7 25 xf5 gives White a decisive attack.
21 bxc5
21...wb5! 22...xb6 axb6 23...xb6 ±.
21...wc5 22...ac1 (D)

The white pieces are taking part of the game with the highest economy. The position is advantageous for White; it is not just a question of compensation.

If 25...d7!? , then 26...xg7!, and now:

a) 26...xg7 27...xd7 28...w7 +–.
b) 26...fd8 27...h6 (27...a1 h6 28...b2
h7 ±; 27...d4 ±) 27...ab8 (27...f6 28...g5
xd1+ 29...x1 e8 30...b2 f8 31...e5) 28
...g5! (28...xd7!?) 28...e8 29...c6! (29...xd7
30...xc5 e8 with counterplay) 29...bc8
30...a6 +–.

c) 26...f7 27...a1 d8! ± (27...f8 28
b2 g6 29...h1! intending f6 +–).
26...xd4 a6!?

Getting rid of the pressure and completing development without making concessions is not easy. For instance: 26...e8 (or 26...d8
27...xd8+...xd8 28...b7 cd7 29...d1 +– winning a piece) 27...cd1 28...d7 28...d7, and then:

a) 28...b4 29...d6 ±.
b) 28...ab8 29...xc6! (29...e7xb5 30
xe6 e5 with counterplay) 29...xc6 30...xe7
xc4 31...dd7 +–.

c) 28...a6 29...b6 +– (29...xc6).

d) 28...f6 29...d6 ab8 30...c5 +–.
e) 28...e8 29...b7 f8 30...d6! ab8 31
a6 2b4 32...xe7 a8 33...d4 ±.
27...wb6 (D)

22...wc7

The exchange of queens will not free Black's position at all: 22...c6?! 23...xc6 (23...b3?!) 23...xc6 24...d2 ab8! (24...b6 25...xc6
xe3+ 26...f1 xf4 27 g3...xd2 28...d2 +–)
25...xc6...xb2 26...c4! (26...xc7?...d8 =)
26...b7 27...d7 b1+ 28...f2 ±.
23...wb5

White's strategy is extremely clear and characteristic of the style of Vladimir Kramnik: linear play, constructive and restricting the chances of his opponent. In some aspects his play is similar to that of Karpov.

23...b6
23...a6 24...b7 +–.

24...d4?

Taking the gift would also lead to a superior position: 24...xb6 axb6 (24...b7? 25...e5) 25
xb6 ±.

24...c5
24...d8 doesn't help either: 25 a5 (25...xb6
xd1+ 26...x1 axb6 27...xb6 ±) 25...x1d1 + (25...c7 26...b7) 26...x1 c5 (26...d8 27
a3) 27 a6! 2b6 28...a3 +–.

25...d4

Removing Black's best piece.

25...xd4

27...e7?

This way of defending the seventh rank and connecting the rooks fails for tactical reasons. However, 27...e8 also fails: 28...cd1 2c6 29
b2 ± and now:

a) 29...b4 30...xb4 2c4 31...b6 +–.

b) 29...we8 30...b2 (30...b7?...a7! 31
xg7+...f8 32...f7+...g8 =) 30...g6 31...d6
with an attack.
c) 29...f6 30 d6 ab8 31 c5 +--.
28 d6 d7 (D)

If 28...h6, then 29 c8! (29 c8 a3 is more complex) 29...xc8 30 xc8 a3 31 d8+ and 32 xa7.

29 c8 +--
White demonstrates the exposed position of Black’s b8-knight.

29...xc8
29...fd8 30 xf5! exf5 31 xd8+ +--.
30 xc8 a3 31 xe6+ f8 32 xf5+ (D)

32 e8
32 g8 33 xd7 xe3+ (33...xd7 34 xd7 xe3+ 35 f1 xf4+ 36 e2 xd7 37 d6! +--.
34 b6+ e8
34...xc8 35 e4+ +--.
35 d6+ 1-0
There would follow 35...e7 36 xe4+ f6 37 d4+ g6 38 e6+.
Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points

Test 54 [Level 4]

Themes: Demolishing the Centre; A Positional Sacrifice

10 c5!?
Option C: 5 points. White attempts to break the black centre, using tactical weaknesses such as c6, e5, etc. White’s aim is to get a strong central majority.

Other possibilities are less sharp. The simplification with 10 cxb5 (Option B; 2 points) 10...cxb5 is satisfactory for Black after 11 b4 b7 12 d5 c8 and the exchange sacrifice at c3 gives him counterplay against the pawns at e4 and d5.

Option A, 10 a3, is passive and lets Black strengthen his position starting with 10...b7, threatening to take on d4 and press against the central e4-pawn. Black is also able to play a waiting move such as 10...e8. 1 point.

10...b4?!
Black is too optimistic and weakens his queenside a lot in order to win a pawn. He had other choices, but none of them promise full equality:

a) 10...exd4 11 xd4 and the threat against c6 comes just in time:
   a1) 11 b7 12 cxd6 (12 xc6 xc6 13 exd6 xe4 14 xe4 xe4 15 dx7 xe7 ±) 12...xd6 13 f5 c5 14 xd6 ±.
   a2) 11...c7 12 cxd6 xd6 13 f5 e5 14 e2 ±.
   b) 10 b7 11 dxe5!? (11 cxd6 xc6 12 xc2) 11...xe5 12 xe5 dxe5 13 e2 is much better for White.
   c) 10...c7?? 11 cxd6 xd6 12 c1 ±.
Akhmylovskaya-Lobron, New York Open 1989
continued 12...\textcolor{red}{\textbf{W}}b8 13 \textcolor{red}{\textbf{W}}c2 $\textbf{\varepsilon}e8$ 14 $\textbf{\&}d1$ $\textbf{\&}b7$
15 $\textbf{\&}d5$ (in our opinion, better is 15 dxe5 $\textbf{\&}x e5$
16 $\textbf{\&}d4$ $\textbf{\&}g6$ 17 $\textbf{\&}f5$ $\pm$) 15...exd5 16 $\textbf{\&}x d5$
$\textbf{\&}x d5$ 17 exd5 $\textbf{\&}f6$ 18 $\textbf{\&}b3$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c8$ 19 $\textbf{\&}h4$ g6 20
$\textbf{\varepsilon}x c8+$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c8$ 21 $\textbf{\&}h6$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}d7$ 22 $\textbf{\&}f3$ $\textbf{\&}e8$ 23 g4
$\textbf{\varepsilon}c8$ 24 $\textbf{\&}d3$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c7$ 25 $\textbf{\&}g2$ $\textbf{\&}c4$ 26 $\textbf{\&}b3$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c8$
27 a4 b4 28 $\textbf{\&}c1$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c1+$ 29 $\textbf{\&}x c1$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c7$ 30 $\textbf{\&}g5$
$\textbf{\&}g7$ 31 $\textbf{\&}e3$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}h6$ 32 $\textbf{\&}h4$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}c1+$ 33 $\textbf{\&}g2$ $\textbf{\&}c7$
34 $\textbf{\&}f3$ $\textbf{\&}c5$ 35 $\textbf{\&}c4$ f6 36 $\textbf{\&}e4$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}x c4$ 37 $\textbf{\&}x c4$
$\textbf{\&}c5$ 38 $\textbf{\&}f3$ $\textbf{\&}x d5$ 39 $\textbf{\&}x d5$ $\textbf{\&}x d5$ 40 $\textbf{\&}e4$
$\textbf{\&}e7$ 41 $\textbf{\&}g3$ $\textbf{\&}f7$ 42 f4 $\textbf{\&}e6$ 43 fxe5 f5+ 44
gx f5+ $\textbf{\&}f4$ $\textbf{\&}d4$ 46 b3 $\textbf{\&}c6$ 47 $\textbf{\&}e1$
$\textbf{\&}c3$ 48 $\textbf{\&}f2$ $\textbf{\&}d4$ 49 $\textbf{\&}a5$ $\textbf{\&}d2+ 50$ $\textbf{\&}g3$ f4+
51 $\textbf{\&}g2$ $\textbf{\&}e3$ 52 $\textbf{\&}e1$ $\textbf{\&}e2$ 53 $\textbf{\&}h4$ $\textbf{\varepsilon}e5$
54 $\textbf{\&}c4+$ $\textbf{\&}e4$ 55 $\textbf{\&}d6+$ $\textbf{\&}d3$ 0-1.

11 exd6 $\textbf{\&}x d6$ 12 $\textbf{\&}a4$
Now the holes at c5 and b6 are evident.

12...$\textbf{\varepsilon}e7$
12...$\textbf{\&}x e4$ 13 $\textbf{\varepsilon}c2$ $\pm$.

13 $\textbf{\&}c2$ exd4 14 $\textbf{\&}x d4$ $\textbf{\&}x e 4$ 15 $\textbf{\&}x e 4$ $\textbf{\&}x e 4$

(D)

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

16 $\textbf{\&}d f 1$
Exerting unpleasant pressure against the pieces on the d-file and restricting Black's possibilities. White is gathering many advantages.

16 $\textbf{\&}x c 6$ is slightly worse: 16...$\textbf{\&}b 7$ (16...a5
17 $\textbf{\&}f d 1$ $\textbf{\&}b 7$ 18 $\textbf{\&}e 7+$; 16...$\textbf{\&}e c 5$ 17 $\textbf{\&}f d 1$)
17 $\textbf{\&}a 5$ $\textbf{\&}d 5$ 18 $\textbf{\&}f d 1$ $\textbf{\&}f e 6$ 19 $\textbf{\&}d 4$ $\textbf{\&}e 8$
20 $\textbf{\&}x f 6$ (20 $\textbf{\&}f 1$ $\textbf{\&}e 5$) 20...$\textbf{\&}x f 6$ and now, if 21
$\textbf{\&}b 6$ then 21...$\textbf{\&}c 7$! 22 $\textbf{\&}x a 8$ $\textbf{\&}x a 5$.

16...$\textbf{\&}e 8$
16...c5 17 $\textbf{\&}f 5$ $\pm$.

17 $\textbf{\&}x c 6$ $\textbf{\&}f 8$ 18 $\textbf{\&}a c 1$ g6 19 $\textbf{\&}a 5$! (D)

Both white knights located on the a-file are wholly disabling the black pieces. A picturesque position.

19...$\textbf{\&}e f 6$ 20 $\textbf{\&}f 3$ $\textbf{\&}b 8$ 21 $\textbf{\&}c 6$ $\textbf{\&}b 5$ 22 $\textbf{\&}a 7$
$\rightarrow$ $\textbf{\&}b 7$ 23 $\textbf{\&}x b 5$ $\textbf{\&}x f 3$ 24 $\textbf{\&}x f 3$
$\textbf{\&}x c 3 25$ $\textbf{\&}x e 3$ $\textbf{\&}a x b 5$
26 $\textbf{\&}c 7$ bxa4 27 $\textbf{\&}x d 7$ $\textbf{\&}x d 7$ 28 $\textbf{\&}x d 7$
$\textbf{\&}g 7$ 29 $\textbf{\&}f 2$ $\pm$ 1-0

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 5 points

The idea of demolishing the white centre appears in the following example, but with an important difference. The association of ideas is useful in determining how effective such an idea is.

Morović – Romero
Alicante 1989

1 $\textbf{\&}f 3$ $\textbf{\&}f 6$ 2 c4 d6 3 $\textbf{\&}c 3$ g6 4 d4 $\textbf{\&}g 7$ 5 e4 0-0
6 $\textbf{\&}e 2$ $\textbf{\&}b d 7$ 7 0-0 e5 8 $\textbf{\&}c 1$ c6 9 $\textbf{\&}f 1$ a6 10 h3
b5 11 c5!?

The same idea once more.

11...exd4 12 $\textbf{\&}x d 4$ $\textbf{\&}x c 5$ 13 $\textbf{\&}x c 6$ $\textbf{\&}c 7$

In a later game, Visier-Romero, Albacete 1989, Black equalized with a different continuation: 13...$\textbf{\&}d 7$ 14 $\textbf{\&}b 4$ $\textbf{\&}b 7$ 15 f3 $\textbf{\&}f d 8$
16 $\textbf{\&}c 3$ $\textbf{\&}a c 8$ 17 a4 $\textbf{\&}b 4$ 18 $\textbf{\&}x a 4$ $\textbf{\&}c 7$.

14 $\textbf{\&}b 4$ $\textbf{\&}b 7$ 15 $\textbf{\&}b d 5$ $\textbf{\&}x d 5$ 16 $\textbf{\&}x d 5$
$\textbf{\&}x d 5$ 17 $\textbf{\&}x d 5$ $\textbf{\&}a 4$
with comfortable equality.

The difference is due to the activity that the powerful dark-squared bishop is displaying in this position.
Test 55 [Level 3]

Themes: Positional Compensation: Piece Activity; The Superfluous Piece

15...c4!

Option B is a principled move, and receives 5 points. A Benoni player must not be afraid in situations like this. The opening of the c-file and the strong control of the a6-f1 diagonal wholly justify the positional sacrifice of a pawn. Besides, the d7-knight now gets the c5-square.

In case of 15...c4 (Option C) 16 a2?? cb6? 17 b3 a5 18 d2 (or 18 f1) White is attempting to prevent the possible advance ...c4 – which would give Black a powerful passed b-pawn – by covering this square with all the available pieces. But surely 16...a5! is much better, in order to meet 17 b3 with the vigorous 17...c4!. 16 d3 is somewhat better, although insufficient. The knight will firmly settle on a5, allowing the other knight to become active. If you saw the idea of settling a knight on a5, then you earned 4 points. This plan is nearly as strong as the text-move, although less clear.

Instead, 15...a5 (Option A) is too slow. After 16 f1 the threat against the e5-knight is becoming dangerous. 0 points for this choice.

16 f4?

Better is 16 e3 c5 17 d2 cd3?! (17...c3 is preferable, when there can follow 18 bxc3 bxc3 19 b3 xb3 20 xb3 a6 c) 18 xd3 xd3 sacrificing the exchange with adequate compensation: 19 x4c4 xe1 20 xe1 a6 21 c1 b3 22 a5?!

16...d3! 17 xd3 cxd3

This pawn sacrifice is very strong. White is much behind in development, so Black opens the c-file, vacating the c5-square for the knight, and continuing the pressure against b2 while giving the light-squared bishop new prospects.

18 xd3 c5 19 d1 a6 (D)

All the black pieces are working harmoniously on both sides of the board, while the white ones are lagging in development, and the situation is still worse because of the pressure of the bishop against b2. White’s space advantage and centre cannot deal with the control both black bishops are displaying, besides the good coordination of all the black pieces.

20 f1

To defend d3 or to sacrifice the central pawn: a difficult decision. Now the e4-pawn fails, and with it the whole position, but 20 e3 is an ugly move. White would be without a clear plan, wandering with his pieces.

20...xe4 21 xa6 b6+ 22 e3 xa6 23 d4 xd4+ 24 xd4 (D)

24 xg3

A simple combination.

25 c3 bxc3 26 h3 c2 27 f2 ac8 28 e3 xe3 29 xe3 f4 0-1

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 4 points

This was a clear example on the theme of the ‘superfluous piece’. The e5-knight leaves his
fellow at d7 without space. Probably Petrosian underrated the reply 15 \textcolor{red}{$\Box f2$}!. So, it would have been simpler to have exchanged the knights a move before.

The theme of the superfluous piece is clearly noticeable in games with the Benko Gambit, where the knight moves from g4 to e5.

Test 56 [Level 4]

Theme: Relocating the Pieces

17 $\Box b1$!

Option C earns 5 points. This surprising-looking move is very logical, since it is heading for the key square c3, where it will comfortably defend the b5-pawn and the e4-square.

17 e4!? (Option B: 3 points) is not clear but may favour Black: 17...$\Box fx d5$ 18 $\Box c4$! (18 e5? $\Box we6$! 18...$\Box we6$! 19 $\Box d1$ (19 $\Box xd6$ $\Box b4$ 20 $\Box xe6$ $\Box xe6$) 19...$\Box b4$ 20 $\Box xd6$ $\Box we7$.

On the other hand, the natural 17 $\Box c4$ (Option A) fails because of 17...$\Box d7$ and White is forced to defend the b5-pawn passively by 18 $\Box a3$, which is met by 18...a6! 19 bxa6 $\Box x a6$ 20 e4 b5. Only 1 point for this choice since it neglects the b5-pawn.

17...$\Box f b8$

Black must react quickly on the queenside, before White can consolidate his position. For instance: 17...a6! 18 bxa6 (18 $\Box c3$ a5b5 19 $\Box x a8$ $\Box x a8$ 20 $\Box x b 5$ $\Box a 5$ 21 $\Box x c 7$ $\Box x c 7$ 22 $\Box d 2$ c4! 23 $\Box c 1$ $\Box a 1$ is unclear) 18...$\Box x a 6$ (18...$\Box x a 6$ 19 $\Box x b 6$ $\Box b 4$ {19...$\Box f b 8$ 20 $\Box c 6$} 20 $\Box x a 8$ $\Box x a 8$ 21 $\Box f 4$ $\pm$; 18...b5 19 a7 b4 20 $\Box a 5$?; perhaps 18...$\Box f b 8$! is the best try) 19 $\Box x a 6$ $\Box x a 6$ 20 $\Box x b 6$ $\Box b 4$ 21 $\Box f 4$ pressing against d6 at once.

The assault with 17...$\Box e 4$!? 18 $\Box c 3$ f5!? (18...$\Box x c 3$ 19 bxc3 $\pm$) is possible. Then White’s a-file play is compensated by the control the black pieces are exerting on the centre.

18 $\Box c 3$ a6 19 $\Box e 3$

This bishop has no good place for the time being. If 19 $\Box d 2$ Black would exchange everything on b5 and play ...$\Box e 4$. Nor is 19 bxa6 possible because of 19...b5!.

19...axb5 20 $\Box x b 5$ $\Box x b 5$

20...$\Box a 5$ 21 $\Box a 7$!.

21 $\Box x b 5$ $\Box d 7$ 22 $\Box d 2$! (D)

With the idea of getting rid of the almighty black bishop.

22.h5!?

Seeking counterplay on the dark squares and against the white king. White must delay the advance e4 because of the counter ...h4.

23 $\Box c 3$ $\Box d 8$ 24 f4

An ambitious move. White is trying to keep control of the dark squares.

24...h4 25 g4 $\Box x c 3$ 26 $\Box x c 3$ $\Box a 5$

If 26...g5 there simply follows 27 e3.

27 $\Box c 6$ $\Box f 8$ 28 e4 $\Box c 8$ 29 $\Box b 7$ $\Box b 8$ 30 $\Box c 6$

b5 (D)

Very ambitious. 30...$\Box c 8$ =.

31 $\Box x a 5$?

White misses his chance! 31 e5! $\Box b 6$ 32 $\Box x a 5$ $\Box x c 6$ 33 dxc6 $\Box x a 5$ 34 exd6 $\Box x c 3$ 35
Ad1 b3 36 e1 (36 d5 e3+) and it is Black who must seek a draw in face of the dangerous central pawns: 36...c3, with equality.

31...xa5 32 e3?!

Losing valuable time. 32 xd6 xc3 33 f1 would have produced a complex struggle with pawn races.

32...b4 33 xd6
33 cb4 cb4 34 xd6 a7 35 h2 (35 h1 b3 36 e1 b2 37 b1 c8) 35...b3 36 e1 b2 37 b1 b3 — and the white king succumbs.

33...b6 34 c7 bxc3 35 e1 c2 36 f1 b4
36...b5 —.

37 h2 b7 38 c8 d7 39 a8 d2 40 a3 c4
40...b7.

41 a1 41 c1 c3.

41...b7 0-1

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 5 points

In a game we have previously examined (Test 8, Adams-Karpov) Black employed a far-sighted regrouping of his pieces beginning with the outstanding idea 14...b8!. In the following, Anand displayed all his natural talent when regrouping his pieces in an optimal way:

Anand – A. Ramirez
Calvia OL 2004

1 e4 e5 2 d4 d5 3 c3 b4 4 e5 c5 5 a3 xc3+ 6 bxc3 e7 7 g4 0-0 8 d3 b6 9 h5 g6 10 f3 c7 11 e3 c4 12 xg6 fxg6 13 g4 d7 14 h4 f5 15 h3 h8 (D)

16 g1!!

The knight goes to e2, where it will defend c3, thus making the pawn assault against the black king more dangerous.

16...a5 17 e2 a4 18 d2 xf2 19 xf2 xf2 20 h5 xe2+

Despair.

21 xe2 xc2+ 22 f1 gxh5 23 g1 g6
24 xh5 xh5 25 h5 e7 26 h3 e8 27

f3 g6 28 a4 b6 29 f2 a6 30 g3 h5 31 b2 b5 32 axb5 xb5 33 h2 h4 34 gh4 e7 35 f2 f5 36 f3 h7 37 h5 h6 38 f4 1-0

Test 57 [Level 4]

Themes: Using the Space Advantage; Control of the Blockading Square

17 h1!

Option A receives 5 points. This interesting strategic solution involves stepping up the pressure against e5. We shall see later what is the subtle idea hidden by this apparently inexplicable king move.

More usual is 17 b4 (Option B). The initiative on the queenside is slow and will be successful only with an all-out attack. This is also a prophylactic move, since it puts pressure on c5 and prevents ...b5. 2 points for this logical option that works together with the text-move.

17 f4?! (Option C) is inferior owing to 17...xg5 18 f3 g6 = or 17...exf4 18 xf4 xg5 and Black settles on the e5-square. This harmless move gets 0 points.

17...d8 18 b4 d6 19 e2!

The beginning of a fairly original plan, that works together with the previous prophylactic move (h1). The knight assists a future break with f4, since transferring the pieces to the queenside would let Black, in the long run, achieve counterplay with ...f5.

19...d7 (D)

20 g1!
The key move. White’s space advantage enables him to spend some time preparing the winning breakthrough, which needs to happen on the kingside. The knight is going to f3 to cover e5, a square whose control will be critical for Black after the planned break. To reach this conclusion was really difficult from the starting position, but without a doubt the move \( \text{h}1 \) was already preparing this effective manoeuvre.

Less precise was 20 f4 \( \text{c}xg5 \) (20...exf4 21 \( \text{c}xg4 \) 21 fxg5 \( \text{h}7 \) 22 \( \text{xf}2 \) f6 23 gxf6 \( \text{xf}6 \) 24 \( \text{ef}1 \) (24 \( g1 \) 24...\( \text{xf}2 \) 25 \( \text{xf}2 \), and although White keeps the advantage, the simplification has lessened it.

20...\( \text{c}xg5 \) 21 \( \text{c}xg5 \) ch7 (D)

White does not fear the backward e-pawn, given that he has control of the e5-square. The pressure on the f-file is very unpleasant for Black, and very difficult to meet.

25...\( \text{b}d8 \) 26 \( \text{f}2 ! \) c3?!

Black is trying to free his position, avoiding a long and hopeless defence, but he suffers a disaster.

27 \( \text{e}2 \) b5?

This attempt to create counterplay is suicidal. Taking the pawn by 27...\( \text{xb}4 \) 28 \( \text{xb}4 \) \( \text{xb}4 \) 29 e5 \( \text{c}8 \) 30 \( \text{g}3 \) gives White a strong initiative.

28 \( \text{bxc}5 \) \( \text{xc}5 \) 29 \( \text{e}3 \) \( \text{xa}3 \) 30 \( \text{a}2 \) \( \text{b}3 \) 31 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{xd}4 \) 32 \( \text{xf}7+ \) \( \text{h}8 \) 33 \( \text{xd}4+ \) \( \text{e}5 \) 34 \( \text{e}7 \) \( \text{e}8 \) 35 \( \text{xd}7 \) 1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 0 points
Let us see another game with a very similar idea, where the knight fights for control of the blockading square e5, taking the same route, g1-f3:

**Zsu. Polgar – Chiburdanidze**

*St Petersburg wom Ct (7) 1995*

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0 6 ♗f3 ♗a6 7 ♗d3 ♗g4
7...e5 8 fxe5 dxe5 9 d5 ±.

8 0-0 ♗d7
8...e5 9 fxe5 ♗d7 is another possibility.

9 ♗e3 e5 10 fxe5 c5!

10...dxe5 11 d5.

11 d5
11 exd6? cxd4 –.

11...♗xe5 12 ♗e2 ♘xf3+

Or: 12...♗xf3 13 gxf3 f5 14 f4 ♗f7 15 exf5 gxf5 16 ♗h1 ±; 12...♗d7 13 ♗d2 ♘c7.

13 ♘xf3 ♗xf3 14 ♗xf3 ♗e7
14...♗b8 (intending ...♗d7-e5) 15 ♘f4! ±.

15 ♘f4 ♘c7 (D)

Or: 15...♗e5 16 ♘xe5 ♗xe5 17 ♗f6 ±; 15...f5 16 ♗g3 ♘ad8 17 ♗b5 ±.

16 ♗g3 ♘ad8 17 ♗h1!
17 ♗g5 ♘d4+! 18 ♗h1 f6 =.

17...♗d4!
17...♗fe8 18 ♗g5! f6 19 ♗f4 ±; the g7-bishop is poor.

18 ♗e1 f6

Not 18...♗fe8? 19 e5! ♘xe5 (19...dxe5 20 ♗g5 +–) 20 ♘xe5 dxe5 21 ♗e4 +–; 18...♗e8 is also met by 19 e5!.

19 ♗e2! ♘e5 (D)
19...♗xb2 20 ♗b1 ♘e5 21 ♗xb7 ±.

20 ♗g1!

Aiming again to seize control of the e5-square, using a strategic manoeuvre that is already known to us.

20...a6?!
20...b5.
21 ♘f3 ♘xf4
21...b5 22 ♘xe5 fxe5 23 ♗h6! ± (23 ♘g5? ♘xf1+ 24 ♗xf1 ♘f8 =).

22 ♗xf4 b5 23 b3
23 cxb5 axb5.

23...♗b8?
23...bxc4 24 bxc4 ♗b8 25 ♗b1 ±; 23...b4 24 h4 ♗a8 25 h5 ♗b6 = and the knight will reach the critical square e5.

24 b4! cxb4 25 c5! ♗b8
Maybe 25...dxc5 26 d6 ♗d7 27 dxc7 ♘bc8 ± was better, trying to use the black pawn-mass on the queenside.

26 ♗d4
26 c6?! was more sound.

26...dxc5 27 ♗c6 ♗d7 28 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 29 ♗c7?! 29 d6?! ♗e6 intending ...♗d4 with counterplay; but the natural 29 ♗d1 c4 30 d6 ± was better.

29...c4 30 d6 ♗e6 31 ♗d2 ♗d7?
31...c3?! 32 ♗d5 ♗d7 33 e5 fxe5 34 ♗xf8+ ♗xf8 35 ♗f1+ ♗g8 36 ♗xe5 ±.

However, Black missed an opportunity to complicate the game by 31...a5! 32 ♗d5 ♗d7 33 ♗f2 ♗g7 with unclear play.
32 \( \text{hxb4} \) \( \text{Qg5} \) 33 \( \text{wc5} \) \( \text{Ke8} \)

33...\( \text{Qxe4?} \) 34 \( \text{Wd5+} \) ++ .

34 \( \text{Qe1!} \)

34 \( \text{Qxf6} \) \( \text{Qxe4} \) 35 \( \text{Wd5+} \) \( \text{Qg7} \).

34...\( \text{Qe6} \) 35 e5 f5 (D)

35...\( \text{fxe5} \) 36 \( \text{Qxe5} \) \( \text{Qf7} \) 37 \( \text{Qxe6} \) \( \text{Qxe6} \) 38 \( \text{Qd1} \) ++ .

W

36 a4!

Intending 37 axb5 axb5 38 \( \text{Qa1} \).

36...\( \text{Qf7} \) 37 axb5 axb5 38 \( \text{Qc7!} \) \( \text{Qxc7} \) 39 \( \text{dxc7} \) \( \text{Qc6} \)

39...\( \text{Qe8} \) 40 e6 \( \text{Qd6} \) 41 \( \text{Qd1} \) ++ .

40 e6 \( \text{Qxc7} \)

40...\( \text{Qd6} \) 41 \( \text{Qd1} \).

41 c7 \( \text{Qd6} \) 42 e8w+ \( \text{Qxe8} \) 43 \( \text{Qxe8+} \) \( \text{Qf7} \)

44 \( \text{Qb8} \) c3 45 \( \text{Qg1} \) 1-0

In view of 45...c2 46 \( \text{Qc1} \) ++ .

Let us now see another illustrative game of the fight for a blocking square. We must emphasize the dynamic character of these positions, where the advantage in space compensates for the weaknesses created.

Aleksandrov – El Taher

New Delhi FIDE KO 2000

1 \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{Qf6} \) 2 e4 g6 3 \( \text{Qc3} \) \( \text{Qg7} \) 4 e4 d6 5 h3 0-0 6 \( \text{Qe3} \) e5 7 d5 a5

Intending ...\( \text{Qa6} \) – a logical plan, though it takes time. 7...\( \text{Qa6} \) at once is another possibility.

8 g4

A prophylactic move. White is fighting against the thematic break on f5. 8 \( \text{Qd3} \) \( \text{Qa6} \) 9 \( \text{Qge2} \) \( \text{Qc5} \) 10 \( \text{Qc2} \) c6 11 a3 (intending b4)

11...\( \text{cx} \) 5 d5 \( \text{Qd7} \) 13 b4 axb5 14 axb5 \( \text{Qa6} \) 15 \( \text{Qb1} \) \( \text{Qh5} \) 16 \( \text{Qa4!} \) ± attacking b6; 8 \( \text{Qf3} \) is another option.

8...\( \text{Qa6} \) 9 \( \text{Qge2} \) h5

9...\( \text{c6} \) 10 \( \text{Qg3} \) \( \text{Qd7} \) 11 g5 \( \text{Qxe8} \) 12 h4 \( \text{Qc5} \) 13 h5 a4 14 \( \text{Qd2} \) \( \text{Qa5} \) 15 f3 a3 16 b3 \( \text{Qc7} \) 17 \( \text{Qc1} \) ± Kharlov-Glek, Biel 1997.

10 f3 \( \text{Qh7} \)

Black must act speedily. 10...\( \text{Qc5} \) 11 \( \text{Qd2} \) \( \text{Qh7} \) 12 0-0-0 h4 13 \( \text{Qg1} \) ± Shabalov-Kožul, Belgrade 1988.

11 \( \text{Qd2} \) \( \text{Qh4}+ \)

11...h4 12 \( \text{Qg1} \)! thwarting the manoeuvre ...\( \text{Qf6-g5} \).

12 \( \text{Qf2} \) \( \text{Qf6} \) 13 \( \text{Qg2} \) h4 14 0-0

Now White is preparing the break on f4. Black cannot contemplate closing the kingside with ...g5, since the queenside is in White’s hands.

14...\( \text{Qc7} \) 15 \( \text{Qae1} \) \( \text{Qc5} \) 16 f4

16 \( \text{Qe3} \) \( \text{Qf6} \) intending ...\( \text{Qg5} \) exchanging the dark-squared bishop.

16...\( \text{exf4} \) 17 \( \text{Qxf4} \) \( \text{Qd7} \)

This manoeuvre takes some time, even though the idea of blockading the critical square e5 is logical. 17...\( \text{Qe8} \) ?.

18 \( \text{Qd3} \) \( \text{Qe5} \) 19 \( \text{Qxe5} \) \( \text{Qxe5} \) (D)

W

20 \( \text{Qb5} \)

20 \( \text{Qh6} \) g5.

20...\( \text{a4} \) ?!

20...\( \text{Qe8} \) 21 \( \text{Qd4} \).

21 \( \text{Qd4} \)

21 \( \text{Qc1} \); 21 \( \text{Qd4} \).
21...d7 22 f3 f6 23 d4
23 wb4!? intending c5 deserved attention. 23...fe8 (23...b6? 24 e5! was the other threat) 24 c5 ±.
23...xd4 24 wxd4 ae8 25 e5!
Finally White has achieved his goal: the breakthrough on e5.
25...g5 26 xg5 xg5 27 exd6 cxd6 28 xe8 xe8 29 tf4
29 f6 was also tempting.
29...xf4 30 xf4 f6 (D)

With this move (Option C; 5 points) White reduces the activity of the black pieces, wins the blockading square e4 and starts an attack against the black king.

10 g5!? (Option A) is another good possibility, creating the threat of a jump to e6 (4 points). After 10...f6 there would follow 11 g4!, the key move to get the four points.

10-0-0 (Option B) is possible but fails to take advantage of the very good prospects offered by the given position (0 points).

10...d7 11 g5

This knight is manoeuvring in order to blockade on the e4-square – thereby neutralizing Black’s fianchettoed bishop – while leaving the other knight on c3. In a few moves, and thanks to g4, which limits the activity of the light-squared bishop, Black will begin to suffer problems with his development and passive pieces.

11...a6 12 e3 e7 13 c4 c5

What else to do?

14 xc5!

The exchange of this bishop is necessary, and despite its bad appearance, does not give the opponent any counterplay on the dark squares.

The power of the blockading knight is such that the weakening of the dark squares is not important. Besides, we should keep in mind that Black’s dark-squared bishop is unlikely to come into play.

14...dxc5 (D)

31 e4

In spite of the advantage, White has to overcome some technical problems in order to win the game.

31...d7 32 e7 d8 33 e4
33 f2 f8 34 h7 g5.
33...e8 34 xd7 xe4 35 xd6 xc4 36 xf6 c1+ 37 g2 e2+ 38 f2 e5 39 d2 f7 40 f3 c4 41 d6 e8 42 e2+!

This lets the black king become active. 42 d7+ is better. Anyway, rook endings always offer drawing chances to the defending side.

42...d7 43 e7+ xd6 44 xb7 a3! 45 b6+ e5 46 b5+ e6 47 b3 axb2 48 xb2 a4 49 b3 xa2 50 f4 a5 51 b7 g5+ 52 e4 ½-½

Test 58 [Level 2]

Theme: Blockade of the Central Square e4

10 g4!
In case of 18...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xg4} White must play not 19 fxg4? \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xe4} 20 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xb7} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d8} 21 d6 c6 22 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d1} (22 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xc6} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}a5+ \textbf{\texttt{-+}}) 22...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}a5+ \textbf{\texttt{}}f3, but 19 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xb7}!, winning.

19 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}af8} 20 0-0-0 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h6} 21 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}dg1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e8} 22 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}a3}.

Now follows a manoeuvring phase where White first weakens – and fixes – Black’s queenside and then aims at the real target: g6.

22...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}a5} 23 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h8} 24 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d7} 25 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}dg1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e8} 26 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f7} (D)

27 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d8} 28 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}a4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g8} 29 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}we3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h7} 30 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g8} 31 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}b1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}df8} 32 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h8} 33 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c3}.

White is threatening h5 and after the exchange of bishops, he will get a favourable situation with a good knight against a bad bishop.

33...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e4} 34 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xe4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d4} 35 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e5} 36 g5!? \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xb4} 37 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xb4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xg3} 38 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xb6} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xg5} 39 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g7} 40 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e2!} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}we3

40...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e5} 41 f4 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf4} 42 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h3} +--.

41 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xd4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xd3+} 42 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xd3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}cxd4} 43 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f7} 44 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f6} 45 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e5} 46 f4+ \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f6} 47 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xd4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e7} 48 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g9} 49 c5+ 50 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xc5} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e7} 51 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f7} 52 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g7} 53 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e6} a4 54 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e5} 1-0

Option A: 4 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points

We shall see now a curious game by the best chess-player in history, Garry Kasparov, when he was 16 years old and his great skill was already becoming known in the Soviet Union. However, he was unable to escape a huge positional disadvantage by means of tactic skirmishes and lost almost without fight. White became too strong on the blockading square e4.

Veingold – Kasparov
USSR Spartakiad (Moscow) 1979

1 d4 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f6} 2 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f3} g6 3 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g7} 4 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c3} d6 5 e4 0-0 6 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e2} e5 7 d5 a5 8 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g5} h6 9 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}a6} 10 0-0 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e8} 11 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h7} 12 a3 f5?

A wrong idea. Better is 12...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d7}.

13 exf5 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf5} (D)

14 g4! \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d7} 15 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}de4} a4

"White keeps a lasting initiative and, barring a mistake, he will be able to dictate his conditions. Black's position, though passive, is sound, and with precise defence he could get a draw" – Botvinnik.

16 f3 b6 17 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f6} 18 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf6}+! \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf6} 19 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c5} 20 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g7}?

20...g5!.

21 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}ae1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h3} 22 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d3} 22 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xb3!} axb3 23 f4!.

22...g5 23 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c5} 24 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f7} 25 h4 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h7} 26 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xh7} gxh4 27 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xe5+} dxe5 28 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}b1} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f4} 29 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf4} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf4} 30 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xe5} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}af8} 31 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e7+} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g8}?

31...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g8}! =.

32 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf7+} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf7} 33 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e4}?

33 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e4}!.

33...\textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}b3}? 34 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xg4} 35 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}e3} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f5} 36 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h5} 37 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d6+} cxd6 38 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}xf5} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}f6} 39 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}c5} 40 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}h2} \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}g5} 41 \textit{\textbf{\texttt{}}d1} 1-0
Test 59 [Level 3]

Theme: Strong Outpost for the Knight

22 exf5!

This is Option B. White releases the tension in the centre in order to occupy the e4-square with his knight.

22 e3 (Option A) is inconsistent with the previous play. After 22...xe3 23 xe3 f4 Black will be able to carry out his thematic attacking plan, trying to push his g-pawn to g4. Only 1 point if you chose this plan, even though the white g1-bishop is not performing a concrete task just now.

On the other hand, 22 e2? (Option C) is clearly bad – a passive move which only prevents the activity of the black pieces on the queenside temporarily. 0 points for this unhappy choice.

22...gxg5

22...xf5 ± would not fight for the g4-square.

23 g4!

Only in this way do you score the 5 points. This is the key move.

23...fxg4 (D)

24 e4

Trying to keep control over the b-file, thus gaining access to b7. 24 fxg4 xf1 (24...xb8) 25 xf1xb8 26 e4 c7 27 f5 e7 28 d2 ± is less decisive than the game continuation.

24...f4

24...gxf3 25 xf3 f4 26 b7 with a powerful attack.

25 b7 c7 26 fxg4 e8 27 g5 (D)

Preventing the transfer of the knight to f6 and the activation of the queen (to h4). If 27 e3, then 27...wc8!.

27...c8 28 e7 wh3

28...d8 29 e6.

29 f3 g4 30 d3

Threatening xd6 and h3.

30...xh2 31 xf8+ xf8 32 xe8+ xe8

33 xh2 e7 34 xd6 xg5 35 f1+ g8 36 e4 (D)

36 g1 was very strong too.

36 h4 37 e2 g7 38 d6

The d-pawn decides the game.

38...h6 39 d1?

Better was at once 39 f1 f7 40 g2+ g7 41 d7, transposing to the game.
39...\textit{h}4?  
39...\textit{h}3 40 \textit{d}5+ \textit{f}8 41 \textit{d}2 slightly favours White, but Black has good drawing chances.  
40 \textit{e}2  
White backtracks, since if 40 \textit{d}5+ then 40...\textit{f}8, 40 \textit{x}c5 was another possibility.  
40...\textit{h}6 41 \textit{f}1 \textit{f}7  
41...\textit{e}3 42 \textit{f}6+ \textit{h}8 43 \textit{d}7 \textit{d}4 44 \textit{x}e5 \textit{h}4+ 45 \textit{h}2 \textit{d}4 46 \textit{e}1 --.  
42 \textit{g}2+ \textit{f}8  
42...\textit{g}7 43 \textit{d}7 \textit{c}1+ 44 \textit{g}1 \textit{h}6+ 45 \textit{h}2 \textit{b}6 46 \textit{h}4.  
43 \textit{g}5 \textit{xd}6  
43...\textit{d}7 44 \textit{f}3+ \textit{g}7 45 \textit{g}3 \textit{xd}6 46 \textit{e}4+ \textit{g}6 47 \textit{e}5+ =.  
44 \textit{a}8+ \textit{g}7 (D)  
There follows one of Petrosian’s most brilliant combinations.  

15 b4 (Option C) was played in Botvinnik-Tal, Moscow Wch (10) 1960: 15...\textit{cd}7 16 h3 \textit{f}3 (now this bishop is not precarious on the f-file since the d7-knight is defending f6) 17 \textit{h}2 \textit{b}6! (much better than 17...a5? 18 b5 \textit{b}6 19 \textit{f}2 \textit{xf}2+ 20 \textit{xf}2 \textit{h}5 21 b6! ±; with this advance White gets new prospects for his pieces) 18 \textit{xf}2 \textit{h}5 with advantage. If you understood that the defence of f6 reduced the effectiveness of the attack, you get 5 points for the choice 15 h3. Instead, 15 b4 only gets 1 point, and just because it is a logical move.  
Option A, 15 \textit{g}2?, is worst, because it lets Black take the initiative on the queenside, which is now somewhat unprotected. After 15...\textit{a}5 followed by ...\textit{ac}8 and ...\textit{a}4 (or even the latent possibility of ...\textit{b}4) Black gets the advantage. 0 points for this careless move.  

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{chessboard.png}
\caption{Chessboard Diagram}
\end{figure}

45 \textit{xe}5+!! \textit{xe}5 46 \textit{h}8+ \textit{xh}8 47 \textit{xf}7+ 1-0  
\textbf{Option A:} 1 point  
\textbf{Option B:} 5 points  
\textbf{Option C:} 0 points  

\textbf{Test 60 [Level 3]}  

\textit{Theme: Accuracy in the Attack}  

15 \textit{h}3! (D)  
This is Option B. It is a good idea to expel the bishop. The advance h4-h5 looks more dangerous in that case.  

15...\textit{d}7  
15...\textit{f}3 looks dubious since after 16 \textit{g}1 the black pieces are having problems on the f-file. If we go a little deeper, a tactical detail will appear: 16...\textit{c}xe4 17 \textit{g}xe4 \textit{xe}4 18 \textit{xe}4 \textit{f}6 19 \textit{xf}6 \textit{xf}6 20 \textit{g}6+ \textit{g}7 21 \textit{g}5 \textit{gg}5 22 \textit{gg}5 e4 =. This was Black’s best and most active defence.  
16 \textit{h}4!  
16 b4 \textit{a}4.  
16...\textit{a}5  
The beginning of a curious manoeuvre with the queen in order to slow down White’s attack. If 16...\textit{g}4, then 17 h5 \textit{gxh}5 18 \textit{e}2 \textit{wd}7 19 \textit{xf}6 \textit{xf}6 20 \textit{xxh}5 with a strong attack.  
17 \textit{b}1
17 h5 \( \text{Q}\)b3.
17...\( \text{W}\)b4 18 h5 \((D)\)

18...\( \text{W}\)d4
Black can challenge White to prove his case by 18...\( \text{Q}\)xh5!? \((D)\). Then:

a) 19 a3 \( \text{W}\)d4 20 \( \text{Q}\)xh5 gxh5 21 \( \text{Q}\)xh5 f5.

b) 19 \( \text{Q}\)xh5 \( \text{Q}\)xe4! and now the spectacular 20 \( \text{Q}\)g2!? does not work: 20...\( \text{Q}\)xg5 (20...\( \text{Q}\)xd2? 21 \( \text{Q}\)f6+ --) 21 \( \text{Q}\)xg5 gxh5 22 \( \text{Q}\)xh5 \( \text{Q}\)fc8, defending.

c) Very probably the exchange sacrifice 19 \( \text{Q}\)xh5 is critical. 19...\( \text{Q}\)xh5 and then:

   c1) 20 \( \text{W}\)g2?! f6 21 \( \text{Q}\)d2 \( \text{Q}\)g4 22 \( \text{Q}\)e2 and White’s hopes of settling an almighty knight on f5 are dashed by 22...f5!, with murky prospects.

   c2) 20 \( \text{Q}\)h6?! f6 21 \( \text{Q}\)xg7 (21 \( \text{Q}\)xh5 \( \text{Q}\)xe4 22 \( \text{W}\)g2 \( \text{Q}\)g5!) 21...\( \text{Q}\)xg7 22 \( \text{Q}\)xh5+ gives White attacking prospects.

19 \( \text{W}\)g2?!

19 h6!? keeps the initiative.
19...\( \text{Q}\)g4 20 \( \text{B}\)d1 \( \text{W}\)b4 21 a3 \( \text{W}\)b6 \((D)\)

22 \( \text{Q}\)f5?!
A vigorous attempt to punish Black’s loss of time. If 22 h6, then 22...\( \text{Q}\)f6.

22...\( \text{Q}\)xf5 23 h6 \( \text{Q}\)xe4
23...\( \text{Q}\)h8 24 h7+ \( \text{Q}\)g7 gives White more chances: 25 exf5 \( \text{Q}\)xf5 26 \( \text{Q}\)h6+ \( \text{Q}\)f6 and now 27 \( \text{Q}\)h5?! looks better than 27 b4? \( \text{Q}\)d7 (or 27...\( \text{Q}\)e7??) 28 \( \text{Q}\)h5 \( \text{Q}\)f2+!?.

24 \( \text{Q}\)xe4 \( \text{Q}\)xe4 25 hgx7?
25 \( \text{Q}\)e2 f6 (25...f5? 26 hxg7 \( \text{Q}\)xg7 27 \( \text{Q}\)xg4 fxg4 28 \( \text{Q}\)h2 \( \text{Q}\)h8 29 \( \text{Q}\)h6+ --) 26 \( \text{Q}\)c1 \( \text{Q}\)f2+ 27 \( \text{Q}\)xf2 \( \text{Q}\)xf2 28 \( \text{Q}\)g1 is less clear.

25...\( \text{Q}\)xg7 26 \( \text{Q}\)h6+ \( \text{Q}\)g6?
Black should play 26...\( \text{Q}\)f6!, when White is in deep trouble.

27 \( \text{Q}\)e2 f5 28 \( \text{Q}\)xg4 fxg4 \((D)\)

29 \( \text{W}\)h2! \( \text{f}\)5 30 \( \text{W}\)h4??
In time-trouble, White misses a win and loses instead. 30 \&f4! \&f7 31 \&h7+ \&e8 32 \&g6+ \&d8 33 \&h8+ \&c7 34 \&c1+.

30...\&g8 31 \&g5 \&h8 32 \&h6 \&f7 33 \&f1 \&e3+ 0-1

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 1 point

Test 61 [Level 4]

Themes: Reducing the Activity of the Opponent’s Pieces; Prophylaxis and Better Pawn-Structure

14 h4!

Option C; 5 points. Weighing up the pros and cons, we conclude that White must play this move in order to freeze Black’s kingside and his possible activity on that side of the board, where a move like ...\&h4 is always worthy of attention. The black pieces (the g7-bishop, the e8-knight) remain inactive. This humble move shows the importance of the pawn-structure in the activity of the minor pieces and is automatic if we are acquainted with the subtleties of the complex world of the King’s Indian.

14 \&xa6 (Option B; 0 points) 14...bxa6 15 \&ge2 f5 16 0-0 gives Black a lot of play against the weakened kingside. For instance, after 16...h5 (16...\&h4 17 \&g2 and the black queen stays exposed; 16...\&xg4!? 17 \&xg4 \&xf1+ 18 \&xf1 h5) White is going to miss his lightsquared bishop and the control of those squares.

Option A, 14 \&d3 (1 point), lets Black carry out the typical break, and is extremely risky despite achieving the exchange of the light-squared bishops. After 14...f5 15 gxf5 gxf5 16 exf5 \&xf5 Black presses strongly against f3, and threatens ...\&h4+.

14...f5 15 g5 \&ec8

15...\&ec7 was possible at once: 16 \&d3 \&we8. The move 15...f4 is worse: 16 \&f2 h6 17 gxh6 \&xh6 18 h5 g5 19 \&h3.

16 \&d3 \&e7?

An optimistic idea. It is better to start the manoeuvre to revive the e8-knight – a hopeless piece at present: 16...\&ec7! 17 \&ge2 \&a8 with counterplay.

Instead, after 16...fxe4 17 fxe4 \&g4 18 \&h2 \&d7 19 \&xg4 \&xg4 20 \&e2 \&xe4 21 \&xe4 \&ec7 (D)

17 \&ge2

17 \&xa7 was possible right now.

17...fxe4 18 fxe4 \&ec7 (D)

19 0-0-0?!

After 19 \&xa7! it is hard for Black to prove compensation. 19...\&g4 is an interesting try: 20 0-0-0 \&bd5 21 exd5 e4 22 \&c2 \&c4 23 \&b3 \&xe2! 24 \&xc4 \&xd1 with complicated play, because Black regains the piece. 19...\&xf7! also looks promising, with the idea of 20 0-0-0?! \&b5 21 \&xb5 \&xb5 with compensation.

19...\&b5 20 \&xb5

20 \&b2 \&d4 21 \&xa6 \&f3.

20...\&xb5

Black has got almost everything he could hope for in exchange for a pawn. His domination of the light squares is clear.

21 \&b2 \&d7 22 \&xa7 \&g4

A logical place for the bishop, exerting pressure against White’s kingside pieces and the centre. 22...b6?! was an interesting way to open another front.

23 \&c1? b6! 24 \&xb6 \&b7 25 \&a5 \&f2 (D)

26 \&c2 \&e5?!

Not 26...\&xc3? 27 \&xc3 \&xe2 with a slight advantage for White.

27 \&hc1 \&a8 28 \&a2 \&xa5 29 \&xc5 \&a6

29...\&xc5 was a good possibility, maintaining all the threats.
30 \textcolor{red}{c6} \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}a}3}+ 31 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{h}2}}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{a}5}}}?!

31...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}2}!} was preferable, or even better
31...\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}2}! 32 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}2}} \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{a}2}+}} ++.

32 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{b}1}}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}5}}}

32...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}2}.

33 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}1}?}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{a}3}+}} 34 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}1}}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}1}+}} 35 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{w}e}1}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}1}+ 36 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}1}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}2} 0-1}

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 5 points

In the following game we can see a curious strategic mistake made by the ‘virtuoso’ on this matter. The structure is reminiscent of the game we have just examined.

\textbf{Polugaevsky – Petrosian}

\textit{USSR Ch (Tbilisi) 1959}

1 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}4}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}6}}} 2 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}4}}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}6}}} 3 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}3}}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}7}}} 4 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}4}}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}6}}} 5 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}3}}} 0-0 6

\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}e}3} 7 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}5}}} 7 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}5}}} 8 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}d}2}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}d}5}} 9 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}d}5}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{a}6}}} 10 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}4}}}

\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}b}7}} 11 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}e}2}} \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{b}5}}} 12 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{h}5}}} 13 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}7}}} 14 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}3}}}

15 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}3}}}

16 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}7}}}

5 - 0

17 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}e}8}}

18 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{h}b}1}}

19 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}c}4}}

20 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}e}8}}

21 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}e}4}}

22 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}c}4}}

23 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}d}4}}

24 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}f}7}}

25 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}d}4}}

26 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}f}3}}

27 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}f}1}}

28 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}e}3}}

29 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}f}1}}

30 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}d}7}}

31 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}c}3}}

32 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{x}d}7}}

33 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{c}3}}}

34 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}f}2}}

35 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{d}d}4!}}

36 \textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{b}b}5}}

The white king penetrates the queenside before the black pieces can organize resistance.

35...\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}e}7}} 36 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{b}b}5}}

White has a huge advantage, although the game ended in a draw.

\textbf{Test 62 [Level 4]}

\textit{Theme: Creating an Isolated Pawn to Maximize the Power of Our Pieces}

16 \textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{g}4}}!}

Option A gets 5 points. From the point of view of keeping the initiative, this move occupies first place in the preferences. The idea behind this move is to activate the light-squared bishop, since right now it clashes with his own pawns and hits a ‘wall’ at f5 – the main target of White’s break. Black cannot ignore this pawn advance, because after g5 his minor pieces would be severely restricted – without any prospects – and White would have more space to manoeuvre, finally penetrating via the e-file with his rooks. After 16...fxg4 Black’s control of the e4-square disappears and Black would be unable to play the planned exchange of knights on e4 after ...\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{f}f}6}} and ...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textit{\textbf{e}e}8}}, thus giving his fianchettoed bishop some prospects. In short, this is an ideal solution to White’s problems, giving his light-squared bishop freedom to play.
16 $\text{h1}$ (Option B) is logical because the white king is always a tactical target on g1 – for instance after ...$\text{e8}$ attacking e3. The game Gustafsson-Romero, Kallithea ECC 2002 continued 16..$\text{f6}$ 17 $\text{f3}$ $\text{e8}$ 18 $\text{fe1} 1/2-1/2$. In this situation, the control of the e-file is not difficult for Black to meet. Only 1 point for this choice.

16 a3 (Option C), attempting the thematic break b4, is not useful in this position. Furthermore, Black is going to seize control of the e-file with the rook on e8 (White should meet the tactical threats) and if possible, carry out the manoeuvre ...$\text{f6}$-e4 under good conditions. 0 points.

16...$\text{e8}$! 17 $\text{f2}$ $\text{fxg4}$

17...$\text{xc3}$ is a typical solution when White has inadequate control of e4, but here this does not seem to be the case because of the strong pressure White is exerting against f5: 18 $\text{bxc3}$ (18 $\text{xc3} \text{f6}$) 18...$\text{f6}$ 19 $\text{gx5} \text{e4} 20 \text{wc2}$ $\text{gx5}$ 21 $\text{d3}$ $\text{f6}$ 22 $\text{ec1} \text{h6}$ 23 $\text{xe4}$ $\text{fxe4}$ 24 $\text{h1}$ $\text{f5}$ 25 $\text{g1+}$ $\text{h8}$ 26 $\text{h4}$ (D) ± and the dark-squared bishop is strong.

The white pieces are very active, although Black gets some practical counterplay with the threat of ...$\text{b5}$ and in fact might transfer the rook from a8 to the kingside by way of a7, defending the second rank.

In this game each player had 45 minutes for the whole game and Black – who did not record any more moves on the scoresheet – is unable to remember the follow-up exactly. The game ended in Black’s favour since the Polish WGM exceeded the laws of logic.

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 0 points

In another of my games you can find an example where White gladly accepts a position with a structural weakness:

Yudasin – Romero
Madrid 1992

1 $\text{d4}$ $\text{f6}$ 2 $\text{c4}$ $\text{g6}$ 3 $\text{c3}$ $\text{g7}$ 4 $\text{e4}$ 5 $\text{f3}$ 0-0 6 $\text{e2}$ $\text{g4}$ 7 $\text{e3}$ $\text{fd7}$ 8 $\text{g1}$ $\text{xe2}$ 9 $\text{gxe2}$ c5 10 0-0 e5?!

This was a new move. 10...$\text{cxd4}$ 11 $\text{dxd4}$ is slightly better for White.

11 $\text{d5}$ $\text{f5}$ 12 $\text{f4}$ $\text{a6}$ 13 $\text{h1}$ $\text{fxe4}$ 14 $\text{xe4}$ $\text{e7}$ 15 $\text{c2}$ $\text{c3}$ $\text{h6}$?

A somewhat unnatural move, but useful to press against f4. Better is 15...$\text{exf4}$ 16 $\text{xf4}$ $\text{e5}$ ±.

16 g3! $\text{exf4}$ 17 $\text{xf4}$ $\text{xf4}$ 18 $\text{gxf4}$ (D)

In return for the isolated pawn, White attempts to use his lead in development and the
weakness of the e6-square. The e4-knight is a decisive piece.

18...c7 19 d2 f6 20 a1 e4 21 xe4 d7 22 f5! e8
Or: 22...xf5 23 f6+ ++; 22...gx5 23 g1+ f7 24 g5+ ++.

23 c3 d8 24 fxg6 e4
24...xf6+ 25 xf6 x4 26 gxh7+ xh7 27 f7+ g6 28 g7+ h5 29 f5+ h4 30 g3#.

25 gxh7+ xh7 26 h3+ 1-0
After 26...g7 27 g1+ mate is forced.

Test 63 [Level 3]

Themes: Prophylaxis: Restricting the Thematic Counterplay; Playing on Both Flanks

16 b4?!
An inaccuracy, missing the opponent’s counterplay – White is neglecting the kingside. Therefore this logical move (Option C) gets only 2 points.

16 g4! ± (Option A) was necessary, preventing ...h5 and opposing the break ...f5. This prophylactic idea scores 5 points. In this way, both flanks would be controlled and White could restart actions against the e6-square, with good prospects.

16 0-0 (Option B), with the idea of the advance f4, is not feasible. After 16...h5 or first 16...h6, White does not achieve his main goal. Therefore, 0 points for this choice.

16...h5 17 g3?!

Again 17 d2 was sounder. The text-move weakens the light squares, which is easy to see after Black’s thematic break with ...f5.

17...f6 18 e3 f5 19 c1
If 19 d2, then 19...fxe4 20 fxe4 g4 21 e2 d7 22 0-0-0 c8+ 23 b1 xe2 24 xe2 c4! and Black is attacking the weaknesses in White’s camp first.

19...e8 20 c7 f6 21 d2 fxe4 22 fxe4 h3 (D)

Black has counterplay on the weakened light squares.

23 g5 f7 24 xf6
Necessary in order to avoid a possible jump of this knight to g4.

24...xf6 25 f1 g4 26 e2 h3 27 f1 g4 28 g2
After all, White is playing for a win. He has achieved his strategic aims on the queenside, with a disturbing rook sweeping the seventh rank, but Black has some counterplay on the kingside. For this reason, White will attempt to exchange as many pieces as possible.

28...f8 29 h3
If 29 f1, then 29...xf6+ 30 xf1 f3! 31 d3 hh1 32 xe7 f8 33 d2 g1! winning.

29...h6 30 d3 (D)
30...c8?
A mistake in a position where precise calculation was required: 30...f2 31 f1 xg2!! 32 xf8+ xf8 33 hxg4 g1+ 34 e2 gf1 35 c2! =.

Now White achieves one of his aims: to calm the position down.
31...\(\text{xf1}\) \(\text{xf1}\) + 32 \(\text{xf1}\) \(\text{d8}\)?

32...\(\text{xe3}\).

33 \(\text{xc3}\) ! \(\text{g7}\) 34 \(\text{f2}\) \(h5\) 35 \(\text{b6}\) \(\text{xb6}\) 36 \(\text{axb6}\) \(\text{b8}\)

36...a5 37 \(\text{dxa5}\) \(\text{xa5}\) 38 \(\text{xc8+!}\) and the b-pawn promotes.

37 \(\text{c7}\) \(\text{f8}\) 38 \(\text{a5}\) (D)

38...\(\text{xb6}\) 39 \(\text{bc6}\) \(\text{xc6}\) 40 \(\text{xc6}\) 1-0

After 40...\(\text{b7}\) 41 \(\text{a5}\) \(\text{a8}\) 42 \(\text{c8}\) \(\text{b7}\) 43 \(\text{b8}\) the bishop is lost.

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 2 points

This kind of prophylactic move is usual in the King’s Indian, to prevent Black’s counterplay based on ...f5, or likewise for using the open lines on this flank. Let us see a set-up which was successfully used by Gelfand and Kramnik:

14 \(\text{h1}\)!

This line is in White’s favour since he has a simple and effective plan to pursue his initiative on the kingside. It is based on the activity of the rooks along the g-file, control of the e4-square and the manoeuvre \(\text{f3-g5}\). The move is in agreement with the essence of the position, with the idea of an immediate \(\text{g1}\).
14...\textsubscript{xf}5 15 \textsubscript{g}1 \textsubscript{f}6

15...\textsubscript{h}8 is another idea, while 15...e4!? has the point 16 \textsubscript{g}2 \textsubscript{x}c3 17 bxc3 \textsubscript{h}8 with unclear play, but 16 \textsubscript{w}d2 is a better answer.

16 \textsubscript{f}3! \textsubscript{g}4!?  
16...\textsubscript{d}e4 17 \textsubscript{dxe}4 \textsubscript{x}e4 18 \textsubscript{h}6 \textsubscript{f}7 looks unclear, but after 19 \textsubscript{d}xg7 \textsubscript{d}xg7 20 \textsubscript{x}d7+ \textsubscript{d}d3! \textsubscript{h}4 22 \textsubscript{d}e2 \textsubscript{x}d3 23 \textsubscript{w}x\textsubscript{d}3 \textsubscript{w}h5 24 \textsubscript{g}5! White has a strong attack.

17 \textsubscript{d}g5! \textsubscript{d}xe3 18 fxe3 (D)

18...e4?!  
18...\textsubscript{h}8!? 19 e4 \textsubscript{g}6! 20 \textsubscript{e}6 \textsubscript{w}h4 21 \textsubscript{g}4 \textsubscript{w}h3 22 \textsubscript{d}xf8 \textsubscript{x}f8 gives Black counterplay against the weak pawns on e4 and c4.

19 \textsubscript{d}e6! \textsubscript{d}xe6 20 dx\textsubscript{e}6 \textsubscript{w}e7 21 \textsubscript{d}xe4 \textsubscript{w}xe6 22 \textsubscript{d}d3 \textsubscript{h}8 23 \textsubscript{g}3 \textsubscript{d}d7  
23...\textsubscript{d}e5 24 \textsubscript{g}5 \textsubscript{w}h6 25 \textsubscript{h}3! \textsubscript{w}xg5 26 \textsubscript{d}xh7+ \textsubscript{g}8 27 \textsubscript{d}f2+-.

24 \textsubscript{g}5 \textsubscript{w}h6 25 \textsubscript{d}xh7 \textsubscript{x}f2  
25...\textsubscript{d}e5 26 \textsubscript{d}xf8 \textsubscript{d}g3 (26...\textsubscript{x}f8 27 \textsubscript{d}g2 \textsubscript{d}f6 28 \textsubscript{d}f3 \textsubscript{d}g6+ 29 \textsubscript{g}7 28 \textsubscript{g}1+-.

26 \textsubscript{w}g1 \textsubscript{d}e5 27 \textsubscript{d}e4 \textsubscript{d}f8  
27...\textsubscript{d}xb2 28 \textsubscript{d}g5+-.

28 \textsubscript{x}f8 +-  
28...\textsubscript{d}g5?!

28...\textsubscript{x}f8 29 \textsubscript{w}g2 \textsubscript{f}6 30 \textsubscript{d}g1 1-0

In a later game Kramnik successfully deviated on move 14:

Kramnik – Knaak

Dortmund 1992

14 \textsubscript{d}f3!? \textsubscript{x}f5 15 \textsubscript{g}5

The same plan used by Gelfand: White bases his play on the g-file and the e4-square.

15...\textsubscript{d}e7  
15...\textsubscript{w}d7 was played in San Segundo-Kožul, Ohrid Ech 2001: 16 \textsubscript{d}h1 \textsubscript{d}f6 17 \textsubscript{f}3!? (with the idea of seizing control of the key e4-square, preventing the advance ...e4; also possible is 17 \textsubscript{g}1 ±) 17...\textsubscript{h}5 18 \textsubscript{g}1 \textsubscript{h}8 19 \textsubscript{d}d3! (an important exchange of bishops to press against the weak light squares in Black’s camp) 19...\textsubscript{d}x\textsubscript{d}3 20 \textsubscript{w}x\textsubscript{d}3 \textsubscript{f}5 21 \textsubscript{w}xf5 \textsubscript{xf}5 22 b3. Despite the exchange of queens, White keeps a big advantage. The d6-pawn is weak, and the g5-knight is going to e6.

16 \textsubscript{h}1 \textsubscript{f}6 17 \textsubscript{g}1 \textsubscript{h}8  
17...e4!? (Knaak).

18 \textsubscript{w}d2 (D)  
18 \textsubscript{g}3?? intending \textsubscript{g}1, \textsubscript{w}g2 and \textsubscript{g}1.

18...\textsubscript{g}6 19 \textsubscript{a}f1 \textsubscript{h}5 20 \textsubscript{e}6 \textsubscript{f}7 21 b3! \textsubscript{f}7?

21...\textsubscript{f}4 was the only move.

22 \textsubscript{d}d3 ++ \textsubscript{f}8 23 \textsubscript{g}5 \textsubscript{x}d3  
23...\textsubscript{w}f6 24 \textsubscript{d}xe4 \textsubscript{f}5 ±.

24 \textsubscript{w}x\textsubscript{d}3 \textsubscript{f}6 25 \textsubscript{w}e2 \textsubscript{f}4 26 \textsubscript{x}f4 \textsubscript{x}f4 27 \textsubscript{w}h5 \textsubscript{h}6 28 \textsubscript{w}h3 \textsubscript{e}8 29 \textsubscript{g}3 \textsubscript{g}8 30 \textsubscript{d}e4 \textsubscript{h}7 31 \textsubscript{f}g1 \textsubscript{f}6 32 \textsubscript{d}e2 1-0  
32...\textsubscript{d}xe4 33 \textsubscript{f}5+ \textsubscript{h}8 34 \textsubscript{g}8#.

As a final example, in one of the classical systems against the King’s Indian, White anticipates Black’s plans on the kingside, making prophylactic moves on this side of the board and intending later to break through on the queenside. It runs as follows: 1 d4 \textsubscript{f}6 2 c4 g6
\[3 \text{"c}3 \text{"g7 4 e4 d6 5 \text{"e}2 0-0 6 \text{"f}3 \text{e}5 7 0-0 \text{"c}6 8 \text{"d}5 \text{"e}7 9 \text{"d}e1 \text{"d}7 10 \text{"d}3 \text{f}5 11 \text{"d}2 \text{"f}6 12 \text{f}3 \text{f}4 13 \text{g}4 \text{g}5 14 \text{"e}1 \text{h}5 15 \text{h}3 \text{"g}6 16 \text{c}5 \text{"f}7 17 \text{h}4 \text{"f}8 18 \text{"f}2 \text{"e}7 19 \text{"g}2 \text{h}7 20 \text{h}1 \pm.\]

Test 64 [Level 4]

Themes: Exploiting Weaknesses; Changes in the Pawn-Structure

18...\text{"f}4! (D)

Option B is awarded 5 points. Black provokes the weakening of White’s kingside pawns so as to exploit these new weaknesses later. In short, the time lost is well invested.

Other moves are less effective. 18...\text{"g}5 (Option A) 19 \text{"e}3! and if 19...\text{"f}4, then 20 \text{"g}4 and Black must go back. 0 points.

In reply to 18...\text{"c}7 (Option C) there follows the planned 19 \text{"e}3 (19 \text{bxc}5 \text{dxc}5 and 19...\text{xb}4 20 \text{axb}4 \text{a}5 does not work: 21 \text{exf}5 \text{"xe}3 22 \text{"xe}3 \text{"xf}5 23 \text{"e}4. 2 points for this choice, which is very logical anyway.

Option D, 18...\text{"g}5, with pressure against e4, is met by 19 \text{h}4!, a useful weakening for White, since it controls the key g5-square. 0 points for this choice.

\text{f}5 22 \text{xf}4 \text{exf}4 is unclear) is very desirable. This was the right continuation, pressing against \text{f}5 and keeping \text{e}4 safe. On the other hand, 19 \text{"e}3 is met by 19...\text{"g}5 20 \text{"cd}1 \text{"xe}3 21 \text{"xe}3 \text{f}4 22 \text{h}4 \text{"e}7 23 \text{"d}1 \text{"c}7 with the idea of moving to \text{e}8-g7-\text{h}5, and then to \text{g}3.

19...\text{"h}6

Threatening \text{"g}5 (hitting \text{f}3 and \text{h}3), so White’s next move is virtually forced.

20 \text{h}4

If 20 \text{"e}3, then 20...\text{f}4 21 \text{"g}2 \text{"h}3! with the advantage.

20...\text{"c}7 21 \text{g}4?!

This move is too ambitious and weakening. 21 \text{d}3 followed by \text{h}2 was suggested by Polugaevsky.

21...\text{fxg}4! 22 \text{fxg}4 \text{"f}4!

Karpov had underestimated this idea, since he felt that this bishop would not be secure on f4.

23 \text{"e}3 \text{"e}8 24 \text{"cd}1?!

A typical regrouping. The advance \text{g}5 could be a threat in the future, followed by \text{"g}4 and \text{"de}3. 24 \text{g}2 \text{f}6 with counterplay; 24 \text{h}5 \text{g}5 is unclear.

24...\text{h}6! 25 \text{h}5 \text{g}5 \mp (D)

The bishop is the only piece settled on the fifth rank, and if well protected is without doubt a powerful piece.

\text{g}3

White is unduly weakening his kingside, probably overestimating the solidity of his position. 19 \text{h}4?? is an interesting idea, while 19 \text{d}3 \text{h}6 20 \text{"g}3 \pm (20 \text{"e}2?! \text{fxe}4 21 \text{"xe}4

\text{g}1 \text{"f}6 27 \text{g}2

Before securing his king, White firmly defends \text{g}4. 27 \text{"f}1!?.

27...\text{e}8!

Thus the e3-knight cannot recycle itself via f1.
28...\textit{f1} (D)

Now Kasparov carries out a good plan, seeking to play on the queenside, even at the cost of a pawn.

28...\textit{d8!} 29 \textit{g1} \textit{b7} 30 \textit{h1}?
It is better to oppose Black’s planned counterplay by means of 30 \textit{b5 a6 31 a4 axb5 32 axb5 \textit{a3 \textit{f}}, although he will have pressure along the a-file.

30...\textit{exb4 31 axb4 a5!} (D)
31...b5!? was another way of striking on the queenside, but the text-move is more straightforward.

A logical pawn sacrifice. The strong e-pawn, the weak situation of the white king, the activity of the queen’s rook and some favourable tactical features justify this decision.

35 \textit{xb6 \textit{ce4 \textit{f}}}
In return for the pawn, the black pieces have obtained a great deal of activity. The pawns at c4 and f5 are well blockaded, but not the e-pawn, whose advance is always to be feared.

36 \textit{c6}
Or: 36 \textit{f3} \textit{xf2+ 37 \textit{xf2 \textit{c5 38 \textit{b1 a3 36 \textit{g1 a3 36 \textit{e1 c5 (36...\textit{xd5) 37 \textit{b5 d4 38 \textit{b2 a1 with compensation; 36 \textit{b2! \textit{f7.}}} 36...\textit{b7} (D}

32 \textit{f5}
The right moment for parrying the knight’s jump from b7 to c5.

32...\textit{xf5} 33 \textit{exf5}
If 33 gxf5, then 33...\textit{axb4 34 \textit{xb4 \textit{c5 with the initiative.}}

37 \textit{e1}!!
There could follow 40 \( \text{b}2 \text{a}8 \), when after 41 \( \text{a}2 \) (41 \( \text{xc}5 \) \( \text{xc}5 \) 42 \( \text{xe}5 \) \( \text{wa}4 \)) 41...\( \text{fe}4 \) 42 \( \text{xa}8 \) \( \text{xa}8 \) 43 \( \text{xb}2 \) \( \text{bl} \) Black has the initiative. Surely Karpov’s best defence was 41 \( \text{c}2 \! \! \! \text{a}4 \) 42 \( \text{a}2 \) and Black cannot reply 42...\( \text{xc}3 \)? 43 \( \text{xa}8 \) \( \text{xd}1+ \) 44 \( \text{xd}1 \) \( \text{xa}8 \) 45 \( \text{xc}3 \) \( \text{a}1+ \) ? 46 \( \text{b}3 \! - \! - \) with the white rooks playing a supreme role.

**Option A:** 0 points  
**Option B:** 5 points  
**Option C:** 2 points  
**Option D:** 0 points

### Test 65 [Level 5]

**Theme:** Bishop-Pair vs a Better Pawn-Formation

13 \( \text{xd}5 \)!  

Option A is a very deep combination, so we give it 5 points. Let us see the remaining options:

13 \( \text{b}5 \) (Option B; 2 points) starts a typical manoeuvre, but it is not clear that White takes \( \text{d}4 \) or \( \text{e}2 \) under control after the natural follow-ups 13...\( \text{e}4 \) or 13...\( \text{b}6 \). The position could be level.

13 \( \text{h}3 \) (Option C; 0 points) 13...\( \text{xf}3 \) (in fact, White will win a pawn, but Black gets in exchange a lot of activity after 13...\( \text{h}5 \) 14 \( \text{g}4 \) \( \text{g}6 \) 15 \( \text{g}5 \) \( \text{h}5 \) 16 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{a}5 \) or 16...\( \text{e}7 \) with obvious activity which fully compensates for the sacrificed pawn; White has weakened his kingside too much) 14 \( \text{xf}3 \) \( \text{d}4 \! \! \! \! \text{f} ; \) the bishop appears strong on this diagonal.

After 13 \( \text{a}4 \) (Option D) 13...\( \text{f}8 \) White does not appear to achieve much; Black’s next move is going to be ...\( \text{e}4 \) and his pieces will be very active. This move gets 1 point.

13...\( \text{xf}2 \)\text{+}

13...\( \text{xd}5 \) is not completely satisfactory either: 14 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) 15 \( \text{xc}5 \) \( \text{xe}2 \) 16 \( \text{g}7 \) (or 16 \( \text{a}1 \) \( \text{e}6 \) and White keeps an edge after both 17 \( \text{g}5 \) \! \! \! \! \text{±} \) and 17 \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{xd}4 \) 18 \( \text{xc}8 \! \! \! \text{c}8 \) 19 \( \text{xd}5 \! \! \! \! \text{±} \) 16...\( \text{xg}7 \) 17 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{xf}3 \) 18 \( \text{xf}3 \) \( \text{xa}2 \! \! \! \! \text{±} \).

14 \( \text{xf}2 \) \( \text{xd}5 \)

If 14...\( \text{xd}5 \) then 15 \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{d}5 \! \! \! \! \text{g}5 \! \! \! \! \text{±} \).
15  @e5!
This key move was planned when White played 13  @xd5.
15...@e3
The critical reply, achieving an unbalanced endgame with two bishops vs two knights. Too passive is 15...@e6 16  @xc6 (in our opinion 16  @xf7?! is very strong: 16...@xf7 17  @xf7  @xf7 18  @xd5+  @g6 19  @d3+  @h6 20  @c4 with an attack) 16...bxc6 17  @d4 ±. Also bad is 15...@xe5 16  @xc8  @xc8 17  @xd5  @xd5 18  @xd5 ± and it is unclear how to defend f7.
16  @xd8  @xd8 17  @xg4
17  @xc8  @xc8.
17...@xc1+ 18  @xc1  @xg4 19  @f1
19...@c6
19...@e3 20  @xe3  @xe3 21  @d1 ±.
20  @d1  @d8 21  @xd8+  @xd8 22  @f4 (D) ±

The bishop-pair with an open position and pawn-chains on both flanks promise a definite edge. We have the strong feeling that Black should be able to occupy a defensive fortress with his knights, thanks to his superior pawn-structure, but this is not possible. The Armenian GM Arshak Petrosian plays the ending with great technique.
22...@f8 23  @f3  @f6 24  @f2  @e7 25  @e3
One of White's advantages is the possibility of activating his king.
25...@d7 26  @d2  @f8?!
Better were both 26...@b6 27  @b8  @c8 and 26...f6, ensuring a strong post for the knight.
27  @e3 a6
27...b6 is met by 28  @c3 intending 29  @c4 and  @b5-a6 and the queenside collapses.
28  @c3
Once the queenside has been weakened, the king tries to penetrate.
28...@e6 29  @b4  @d6 30  @a5  @c7 31  @b6+ --  @e8 32  @xd8!
A timely simplification. As the old adage goes, the advantage of having the pair of bishops is that one of them can be exchanged for a knight if necessary! The game is decided by zugzwang.
32...@xd8 33  @b6  @b8 34  @d5
With a decisive advantage.
34...@h6 35  e3  @c8 36  a4  @b8 37  a5  @c8 38  @e4  @b8 39  e5  @c8 40  b4  @b8 41  h4  @c8 42  h5  @b8 43  @e4 f6?
Now White breaks through immediately. However, the pawn ending is equally lost after 43...@c8 44  @f5+ (44 b5?! axb5 45  @xb7+ @xb7 46  a6  @b8 --) 44...@e6 (44...@b8 45  @d7 comes to the same thing) 45 b5 axb5 46  @xb5 @c7 47  @xe6 fxe6 48  @c5 @d7 49  @b6 @c8 50  a6 bxax6 51  @xa6 @c7 52  @b5 @b7 53  @c5 @c7 54  g4 @d7 55  @b6 --.
44 e6!  @xe6 45  @xb7 f5 46  @xa6 f4 47  gx.fx4 1-0
If 47...@xf4, then 48  @b7 intending a6-a7#.
Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 0 points
Option D: 1 point

Test 66 [Level 3]

Theme: Getting Rid of the Defender

21  @e4!
Option A receives 5 points. With this move White gets rid of Black's best defensive piece.
Although natural, doubling rooks on the e-file does not achieve the proposed goal, since after 21  @xe2 (Option B; 2 points) 21...@xb8! the move 22  @xe7 will be met by 22...@e6!, when White gets nothing special. Meanwhile, Black is threatening to defend with 22...@xf8, followed by ...@e8. Instead, 21...@f8 is bad due to 22  @xe7  @e6 23  @xb7.
21 d5 (Option C; 1 point) fails to take advantage of the activity and better development of the white pieces, because Black has a tactical resource: 21...\texttt{Qxe6}!, and if 22 d6 then 22...\texttt{Qxd5}! 23 \texttt{Qxd5} \texttt{Qxd6}=. White's idea 21 d5 had the point that after 21...\texttt{Qxd5} 22 \texttt{Qxd5} \texttt{Qxe6} (22...\texttt{Qxe6} 23 \texttt{Qxe7+}) 23 \texttt{Qxf6+} \texttt{Qxf6} 24 \texttt{Qxe6} fxe6 the weakness of the isolated e-pawn gives White a slight but enduring advantage.

21...\texttt{Qxe4}

Black needs to exchange this knight. After 21...\texttt{Qxd5} there follows 22 \texttt{Qg3}!.

22 \texttt{Qxe4}

After getting rid of Black's best defensive piece, White frees the way to f7.

22...\texttt{Qf8}

22...\texttt{Qf5} 23 \texttt{Qe5} \texttt{Qg6} 24 \texttt{Qe3}.

23 \texttt{Qf4} \texttt{Qe8} 24 \texttt{Qxe8} \texttt{Qxe8} (D)

25 \texttt{Qh2}!

The king goes to the centre, preparing to play an ending without queens.

25...a5

An attempt at counterplay. If 25...\texttt{Qe6}, then 26 \texttt{Qe5}! \texttt{Qd7} (26...\texttt{Qh7} 27 \texttt{Qxe6} \texttt{Qxe6} 28 \texttt{Qxe6} \texttt{Qxe6} 29 \texttt{Qg3} \texttt{Qg6} 30 \texttt{Qf4} ++) 27 \texttt{Qc7} \texttt{Qc8} 28 \texttt{Qd6} \texttt{Qe8} 29 \texttt{Qg3}. Another position that deserves analysis and is complicated to assess -- for Black -- in practice, is the pawn ending after 26 \texttt{Qxe6} fxe6 (26...\texttt{Qxe6}?) 27 \texttt{Qc7} \texttt{Qf7} 28 \texttt{Qxf7}+.

26 \texttt{Qc7} \texttt{Qe4} 27 \texttt{Qxf7}+ \texttt{Qxf7} 28 \texttt{Qxd7+}

White wins a healthy pawn and his king will be better protected in this difficult ending.

28...\texttt{Qg8} 29 \texttt{Qg3} \texttt{Qd3}+ 30 \texttt{f3} \texttt{Qd2} 31 \texttt{b3} \texttt{b5} 32 \texttt{Qe6}+ \texttt{Qh8} 33 \texttt{Qe8}+ \texttt{Qh7} 34 \texttt{Qe4}+ \texttt{Qh8} 35 \texttt{Qe8}+ \texttt{Qh7} 36 \texttt{Qe4}+ \texttt{Qh8} 37 \texttt{a4} \texttt{Qc3}

Losing a pawn. More stubborn was 37...\texttt{bxa4} 38 \texttt{bxa4} \texttt{Qg5}+ 39 \texttt{Qh2} \texttt{Qc1} 40 \texttt{Qe5}! (the queen is an almighty piece on this square) 40...\texttt{Qc3} 41 \texttt{Qg3} and White will proceed slowly with h4-h5.

38 \texttt{Qe8}+ \texttt{Qh7} 39 \texttt{Qe4}+ \texttt{Qh8} 40 \texttt{axb5} \texttt{cxb5} 41 \texttt{Qe8}+ \texttt{Qh7} 42 \texttt{Qxb5} \texttt{Qxd4} 43 \texttt{Qxa5} \texttt{Qd6}+ 44 \texttt{Qf2} \texttt{Qd4}+ 45 \texttt{Qe2} \texttt{Qb2}+ 46 \texttt{Qd2} \texttt{Qxb5} 47 \texttt{Qd3}+ \texttt{Qxd3}+ 48 \texttt{Qxd3} \texttt{Qg6} 49 \texttt{Qe4} \texttt{Qf6} 50 \texttt{f4} \texttt{h5} 51 \texttt{f5}

But not 51 \texttt{g4} \texttt{h4} 52 \texttt{g5}+? \texttt{Qg6} 53 \texttt{Qe5} \texttt{Qh5} 54 \texttt{Qe6} \texttt{g6}.

1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 1 point

**Test 67 [Level 2]**

Theme: Strong Passed Pawns

27 \texttt{Qxb5}!

Option A earns 5 points. When playing this positional piece sacrifice it was necessary to make a good assessment of the lack of the light-squared bishop and the strength of the d6-knight.

A quiet option was 27 g4 (Option B; 3 points) 27...\texttt{Qxe5}?! (27...\texttt{Qxa1} 28 \texttt{Qxa1} \texttt{Qa8} 29 \texttt{Qe1} +) 28 dxe5 with a good game. This is a healthy choice, since the black pieces are quite restricted and cannot fight easily against two 'fires' on both sides of the board. It is a pity, but there was a better move.

27...\texttt{Qxe5} 28 \texttt{fxe5} \texttt{Qh6} 29 \texttt{Qc1} \texttt{Qxb5} 30 \texttt{Qxb5}

A funny position. White is a piece down and his dark-squared bishop is limited by its own pawns. But this is only for a short time.

30...\texttt{Qd7} 31 \texttt{Qd6} \texttt{Qxa1} 32 \texttt{Qxa1} \texttt{Qa8} 33 \texttt{Qc3}

33 \texttt{Qb2} is better, securing the defence of the b-pawn after its later advance, and probably wins. After 33...\texttt{Qf8} 34 b5 \texttt{Qxd6} 35 exd6 White has three connected passed pawns: 35...\texttt{Qa4} 36 \texttt{Qd2} ++.
33...\textit{\&}f8 34 b5 \textit{\&}xd6 35 exd6

Here too, White has three connected passed pawns.

35...\textit{\&}a4 36 \textit{\&}b2 \textit{\&}f7 37 \textit{\&}h2

Under severe time-pressure, White plays hastily. Interesting was 37 \textit{\&}d2 followed by \textit{\&}b4.

37...h6?

37...\textit{\&}f6 would have saved the game. After 38 \textit{\&}d2 \textit{\&}e8 39 \textit{\&}b4 (39 c6 \textit{\&}xc6 40 bxc6 \textit{\&}xc6 41 \textit{\&}b8+ \textit{\&}d7 42 \textit{\&}a7+ \textit{\&}c8 43 \textit{\&}e7 \textit{\&}e4 44 \textit{\&}xe6+ \textit{\&}d7) 39...\textit{\&}xb4 40 \textit{\&}xb4 \textit{\&}d7 Black should not lose (Botvinnik).

38 e4 f4 (D)

If 38...dxe4, 39 d5! and if 38...fxe4 then 39 \textit{\&}f2+ and the queen gets in.

\begin{center}
\textbf{W}
\end{center}

39 e5 g5 40 \textit{\&}e2 \textit{\&}g7 41 \textit{\&}d3?

This scaled move wastes White’s huge advantage. The winning move was 41 c6 \textit{\&}xc6 42 bxc6 \textit{\&}xc6 43 \textit{\&}xf4! gxf4 (43...\textit{\&}c4 44 \textit{\&}xc4 dxc4 45 \textit{\&}c1 +--) 44 \textit{\&}g4+ \textit{\&}f7 45 \textit{\&}xf4+ \textit{\&}g7 46 \textit{\&}g4+ \textit{\&}f7 47 \textit{\&}h4 \textit{\&}f8 48 \textit{\&}xh6 +— and Black cannot oppose the advance of the h-pawn, even if queens are exchanged.

41...\textit{\&}b8!

An unexpected resource. Only this move, relocating the offside knight, saves Black.

42 h4 \textit{\&}c4 43 \textit{\&}h3 \textit{\&}xb5!

Much better than 43...\textit{\&}xc1 44 hxg5 hxg5 45 \textit{\&}xg5 \textit{\&}e3 46 \textit{\&}f6+ \textit{\&}h7 47 \textit{\&}xg5 \textit{\&}g3+ 48 \textit{\&}xg3 fxg3 and the white pawns are stronger than the black pieces. As result of this analysis, we know that the b5-pawn must be eliminated.

44 hxg5 hxg5 45 \textit{\&}xe6 \textit{\&}d3 46 \textit{\&}f6+ \textit{\&}h7 47 \textit{\&}f7+ 47 \textit{\&}xg5 \textit{\&}g3+ 48 \textit{\&}xg3 fxg3+ 49 \textit{\&}xg3 \textit{\&}c8 =.

47...\textit{\&}h8 48 \textit{\&}f6+ \textit{\&}h7 49 \textit{\&}xf4 gxf4 50 \textit{\&}f7+ \textit{\&}h8 51 \textit{\&}e8+ \textit{\&}g7 52 \textit{\&}e7+ \textit{\&}h8 53 \textit{\&}e8+ \textit{\&}g7 54 \textit{\&}e7+ \textit{\&}h8 55 \textit{\&}f8+ \textit{\&}h7 56 \textit{\&}f7+ \textit{\&}h8 57 \textit{\&}xb7 \textit{\&}g3+ 58 \textit{\&}h1 \textit{\&}h/2

“I shall admit that I had used this technical procedure quite often. Two passed pawns, moving forward over the enemy pieces, provided me with more than a dozen victories in different tournaments, but in a World Championship match such a sacrifice should be calculated with special accuracy.” –Bronstein.

Reuben Fine voiced his opinion immediately after the end of this game, saying that this was the most fantastic game among the ones played in world championship encounters up to this date.

\textbf{Option A: 5 points}

\textbf{Option B: 3 points}

Supplementary game:

\textbf{Shirov – Grishchuk

New Delhi FIDE KO 2000}

1 e4 e5 2 \textit{\&}f3 \textit{\&}c6 3 \textit{\&}b5 a6 4 \textit{\&}a4 \textit{\&}f6 5 0-0

6 \textit{\&}e7 6 \textit{\&}e1 b5 7 \textit{\&}b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 \textit{\&}a5 10

\textit{\&}c2 c5 11 d4 \textit{\&}b7

Romanishin is the champion of this second-line, instead of the most usual 11...\textit{\&}c7.

12 d5

One of the ways to resolve the central tension (and favoured by some of the strongest players) is to close the position and play on the flanks. 12 \textit{\&}bd2 cxd4 13 cxd4 exd4 14 \textit{\&}xd4 \textit{\&}e8 15 b3 \textit{\&}f8 16 \textit{\&}b2 g6 17 \textit{\&}f3 \textit{\&}g7 18

\textit{\&}ad1 \textit{\&}c8 19 \textit{\&}b1 \textit{\&}c6 20 \textit{\&}f1 \textit{\&}e5 21 \textit{\&}e3

\textit{\&}ed7 22 \textit{\&}f4 d5 23 \textit{\&}g3 \textit{\&}c7 = J.Polgar-Milos, Buenos Aires 2000.

12...\textit{\&}c4

Black improves the placing of his minor pieces.

13 a4

13 b3 \textit{\&}b6 14 a4 \textit{\&}c8 15 \textit{\&}bd2 g6 16 \textit{\&}f1

\textit{\&}h5 17 \textit{\&}d3 \textit{\&}d7 18 \textit{\&}h6 \textit{\&}e8 19 axb5 axb5

20 \textit{\&}e2 \textit{\&}xal 21 \textit{\&}xal \textit{\&}f8! 22 \textit{\&}g5 \textit{\&}f4 23
\[ \text{xf}4 \text{exf}4 24 \text{xb}5 \text{xd}5 25 \text{xd}7 \text{xd}7 26 \text{d}3 \text{f}6 27 \text{d}1 \text{b}7 28 \text{e}1 \text{d}7 ^{1/2} - ^{1/2} \text{was played in Luther-Grischuk, Istanbul OL 2000.} \\
13...\text{b}6 14 \text{we}2! \]

White wants to play on both flanks.

14...\text{xa}4 15 \text{xa}4 \text{bxa}4 16 c4

Strengthening the centre.

16...\text{d}7! 17 \text{xa}4

17 \text{c}3!?.

17...\text{b}6 18 \text{a}3 a5

An important move; if White manages to fix the pawn on a6 and achieve the b4 advance, he will win the strategic battle. Karpov proved this in similar positions long ago; see, for instance, the game Karpov-Gligorić, Milan 1975.

19 \text{c}3 a4

White was already seriously contemplating b3.

20 \text{xe}3

20 \text{d}1 \text{c}8 21 \text{e}3 g6 with counterplay.

20...\text{c}8 21 b3! (D)

21 \text{d}2 \text{g}5 22 \text{b}1 \text{xe}3 23 \text{w}xe3 \text{d}7, Topalov-Piket, Groningen FIDE KO 1997.

24...\text{dxc}5 25 \text{xe}5 \text{a}4

Logical: Black exchanges off the hanging knight.

26 \text{xa}4 \text{xa}4 27 \text{c}6 \text{c}7 28 \text{e}5 \text{a}6

28...\text{a}6?! 29 \text{b}6 intending d6 and \text{d}1.

29 \text{f}3

29 \text{xe}7+ \text{we}7 30 \text{f}4 \text{a}4!? intending \ldots \text{a}6. Shirov keeps the tension.

29...f4

F freeing the passive c8-bishop. 29...\text{xc}6 30 \text{dxc}6 \text{we}5 31 \text{e}3 \text{f}6 (31...\text{wc}7 32 \text{wd}5+ \text{h}8 33 \text{be}1 \text{d}6 34 \text{e}8 intending \text{xf}8+ and \text{e}8 +) 32 \text{wd}5+ \text{h}8 33 \text{be}1 \text{d}6 34 \text{e}8 \text{h}6 35 \text{c}7! \text{h}7 36 \text{fx}8 \text{fx}8 37 \text{c}6 \text{e}7 38 \text{b}1! intending \text{b}8 +.

30 \text{e}1 \text{f}5 31 \text{b}5 \text{c}2

Intending ...\text{a}4.

32 \text{b}2 \text{g}6!?

32...\text{a}4 33 \text{a}2 (Winants suggested 33 \text{a}1) 33...\text{xc}6 34 \text{xa}4! \text{g}6 35 \text{d}6 \text{xd}6 36 \text{d}5+ \text{f}7 37 \text{xf}7+ \text{xf}7 (37...\text{fx}7 38 \text{ex}d6 \text{xd}6 39 \text{e}8+ \text{g}4 40 \text{e}7 with the initiative) 38 \text{ex}d6 \text{xd}6 39 \text{a}7+ leads to an unpleasant ending for Black.

33 \text{d}2 \text{e}8 (D)

A great tactical resource. 33...\text{xc}6 34 \text{dxc}6 \text{e}8 35 \text{d}7! \text{xd}7 36 \text{d}5+ is dangerous for Black.

21...\text{axb}3 22 \text{xb}3 \text{a}6

Alternatives: 22...\text{d}7!? 23 \text{eb}1 \text{a}4 = / ±; 22...f5 23 \text{eb}1 \text{a}4 24 \text{b}5!? ± intending 24...\text{fx}4 25 \text{d}2 \text{f}5 26 \text{a}3 and White regains the pawn with the initiative; 22...\text{d}7 ± is rather passive.

23 \text{eb}1 f5

23...\text{d}7 24 \text{d}2 was Shirov’s idea.

24 \text{xc}5!

This brave decision poses Black some problems.
The bishop continues its dauntless ride. It attacks the h3-pawn, and also helps blockade White’s pawns. 39...fxe6 40 d7! Wxa6 41 exf6! 40 Wh7
40 hxg4 Wxg4 intending ...f3 and a perpetual check with ...Wh4+ and ...Wg3+.
40...Wd6 41 Wxe5+!
White can’t save the h3-pawn, so he sets a clever trap. Not 41 Wg2? f3 42 Wf2 Wf4! -- intending ...Wxh3.
41...Wh7?
Not 41...Wh8? 42 Wg2 f3 43 Wf2+ and White wins; 41...Wxe6 42 Wh3.
42 Wg1
42 Wg2 f3 43 Wxf4? Wxd2+.
42...Wxh3 43 Wg2
43 e6 Wg3+ 44 Wxf1 Wh3+ 45 We2 Wg4= =.
43...Wf4 44 Wf2
After 44 Wd1 f3 45 d7? Wh7 46 Wh8+ Wf8 47 Wxf8+ Wh8 48 Wh3+ We7 Black has compensation and a draw is the most likely result.
44...We7
It was necessary to play 44...Wh3! 45 Wh2 (45 Wf3 Wh5+ 46 Wh1 Wh4 =) 45...f3 46 e6 Wh4+ 47 Wh1 Wh2+ with a draw (since 48 Whxg2?? fails to 48...fxg2+ 49 Whxg2 Wh4+ 50 Whg1 Wxe1+ 51 Wh2 Wxf2 +). 45 Wxe6+--
Now White wins a crucial tempo. 45 Wh2 Wh3 46 e6 Wh4+ = draws as above.
45...Wf8
Or: 45...fxg2? 46 exf7+ --; 45...Wxe6 46 Wxe6 fxg2 47 Wf8+ Wf8 48 Wfxf8#. 46 Wxe8 47 d7 Wxd7 48 Wxf3 Wh5+
48...Wh4+ 49 Whxg4 Whxg4 50 Wef1 +\-.
49 Wxf1 1-0
49...h5 50 Wdf5+ Wxf5 51 cxd5 intending d6 and Wha2-a7 +--.

12 b4 (Option C) is a bad attempt, since after 12...Wc4 13 Wd2 We7 Black has no problems.
0 points for this line.
12...We4 (Option D; 0 points) is a mistake due to 12...Wb3 (12...Wc6 is met by 13 b3) and Black is OK.
The move 12 Wb5+ (Option A; 1 point for inventiveness) 12...Wxb5 13 Wxb5 does not work well, since after the reply 13...a6 (13...Wc6 14 Wc6 14 We7+ We7 (or 14...Whd8??) White has no direct approach that takes advantage of the temporarily bad situation of the black king.
The ingenious 12 Whc1 (Option E; 0 points) is met by 12...Wb3! and the planned 13 Wxd5? fails.

12...dxe4
If 12...Wxb2, with the point 13 Whd2 (this was the move Petrosian had in mind) 13...Wb3!, White has the superior 13 Whc1, with strong pressure.
13 Whxe4 Whd5
Better was 13...Wxe4 14 Whxe4 Whc7, although 15 d5 offers good prospects to White after 15...exd5 16 Wxd5 (or 16 Wc2??) 16...0-0 17 Wc5.
14 Whg3 Wb3 (D)

Test 68 [Level 3]

Theme: Creating an Isolated Pawn – Seeking Activity

12 e4!
Option B is best, and scores 5 points. This is a logical opening of the position since the opponent is behind in development.

15 Wd2
The exchange of queens is inconceivable for White.
15...Whc4 16 Wg5 ±
Whereas Black has clearly won the queenside battle, White has successfully transferred the action to the centre and kingside. Even though there are no forced lines, the general
assessments of the position is undoubtedly in White’s favour.

16...h6

16...cxb2 is strongly met with 17 cxb1, while if 16...f6 in order to give the king some space, then 17 wg4 (targeting e6) 17...f7 (17...f5 18 wh5+ g6 19 wh3 fxe4 20 wxe6+ de7 21 de5 with an attack) 18 dg5+!.

17 wg4 h5 18 wg5 h6

Once the g6-square is covered, the threat is...

19 mae1

Another piece joins the attack: the threat is wxd5.

19...xb2

Or: 19...wb2 20 wxd5 exd5 (20...e7?) 21 df6++ dg8 22 d8#; 19...f6 20 wxd5 exd5 21 cc5+ intending xxb3.

20 df2

20 cc5!?.

20...wb5 21 f4 (D)

This pawn is going to play a decisive role by demolishing the pawn-cover which protects the black king from White’s major pieces.

21 mgb6

21...d3 can be met by 22 f5 or 22 xb1.

22 wxh5 eh6 23 wf3 wd3 24 wf2 g6?

Now White’s threats become real. 24...wa6! (intending ...d3) looks like the best defence, because Black can repeat moves after 25 wf3.

25 f5 gx5 26 wxf5 wxd4+ 27 h1 e7

27...wg7 28 wxd5.

28 wx7+ df7 29 df3 wh8 30 e5 wh7

31 wxh7 exh7 32 ebx2 ec2 33 dx4 axa3 34 de5+ d8 35 dg5 h5 36 xexe+ de7 37
g6+ df6 38 df4 fx4 39 dx4 f1 0-1

White followed one of the most important rules in chess strategy: “When a side is behind in development, the position must be opened in order to punish the ‘transgressor’.”

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 0 points
Option D: 0 points
Option E: 0 points

Here is a supplementary game:

Illescas – Short
Pamplona 1999/00

1 if3 d5 2 d4 fd6 3 c4 e6 4 cc3 e7 5 dg5

h6 6 dh4 0-0 7 e3 b6

The Tartakower Defence.

8 de2 b7 9 xf6

The exchange is justified because the bishop is now worse at b7 than at c8.

9...xf6 10 cxd5 exd5 11 0-0 wa7 12 wb3
d8 13 df1 14 df1

14 db2 0d7 15 ac1 df8 16 a3 de6 17 wa4
c5 18 ca6 cxd4 19 exd4? (better is 19 exd4 = – Donev) 19...c5 = 20 xb7 xa4 21 axa8
dxc3 22 dc6 wc5 0-1 Derichs-Ginsburg, Germany 1996.

14...da6!

The knight is going to the excellent square e6.

15 db2 dc7 16 a4 de6

16...c5?.

17 a5 b5 18 wa2 a6 19 ac1?!

White misses his opponent’s counterplay. Better options are 19 ad1 c5 20 dxc5 a3 (20...xc5 21 xd5 xb2 22 wb2 [22 db6 d3! ?] 22...xd5 =) 21 bxc3 axc5 ? and the prophylactic 19 de2! =.

19...e5!

Temporarily creating an isolated pawn, in order to get the greatest piece activity.

20 dxc5 d4!

Giving the b7-bishop some life.

21 xd4 xd4 22 edx4 dx4 23 h1

23 c1? df3+! and the queen check at g5 is decisive.
23...\[f3! (D)

A pretty tactical resource.

24 \[xg8+

24 \[e2 \[h4 25 h3 \[e1 27 \[e1 \[f2 28 \[e1 --.

24...\[d8 25 c6 \[xc6 26 \[e2 \[h4! -- 27 \[xf3 \[xf3 28 \[f4 \[xf3+ 29 \[g2 \[d2 30 \[g1 30 \[e8+ \[h7 31 \[b1+ \[g6 32 \[g1 \[d1!.

30...\[e4! 0-1

This nice game exemplifies why the Tartakower Variation is so attractive for players who seek more complex and dynamic positions within the Queen’s Gambit Declined.

Test 69 [Level 3]

Themes: Fighting for the Initiative; Exploiting a Lack of Development

15 e4!

This reply (Option B) gets 5 points. White decides to open the position; thus he gives his opponent no rest, and takes advantage of the fact that the black knight is still on its original square. An experienced master like Pachman should have felt the danger.

The natural but lazy 15 \[d3 (Option C; 1 point) would miss the chance of taking advantage of the poor development of the black pieces.

Very interesting was 15 f4 (Option A; 3 points), attempting to introduce dynamic possibilities to the position. If 15...f6 (15...\[a6 is better), then 16 \[g6 \[xe3+ 17 \[h1 with the initiative.

15...\[xe4 16 \[xe4 f6?

Black probably did not foresee White’s next move. The only move was 16...\[xe5 17 dxe5 \[xe5 even though the menacing position of White’s pieces give him a strong initiative after 18 \[d6 (18 \[fe1 allows White an edge after 18...\[f8 ±, but Black can also consider 18...\[a6) 18...\[f8 19 b3.

17 f4! \[c7

Taking on e5 will end in immediate disaster: 17...\[xe5 18 \[xe5 \[c7 19 \[f6+ \[h8 20 \[xe8 \[xe8 21 c6 --.

18 \[g3 \[xe5

There is no other move, on account of the threat of \[f5.

19 \[f5 \[f6 (D)

19...\[f8 20 \[xh6+ intending 21 fxe5 --.
Option A: 3 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 1 point

Test 70 [Level 3]

Theme: Bringing More Pieces into the Attack

15 $\textbf{h}7+$!
This is Option C, and it receives 5 points.
After 15 $\text{exd}4$ (Option B: 2 points) 15..$\text{Qf}6$, the hanging pawns don’t seem to give White the good dynamic chances that they often deliver in positions of this type. 16 $\text{e}5$ $\text{exe}4$ 17 $\text{We}4$ $\text{b}6$ is comfortable for Black, and the same goes for 16 $\text{f}5$ $\text{xf}5$ 17 $\text{Wxf}5$ $\text{e}2$, with equality.

The move 15 $\text{Qxd}4$ (Option A; 0 points) is not very good. Even if 15...$\text{Qh}2+$ fails, the other replies 15...$\text{Qc}5$ and 15...$\text{Wc}7$ are good enough to get a healthy position.

15...$\text{Qh}8$ (D)

16 $\text{Qxd}4$
White takes a brave decision, giving priority to the dynamic power of his pieces rather than the pawn-structure. The rook joins the game and it is able to cooperate in a future attack.

16...$\text{Qc}5$
Or:
16...$\text{f}8$ 17 $\text{Qf}1$ $\text{Wc}7$ 18 $\text{h}4$ forces $\text{Qf}6$, with a very difficult position.
16...$\text{e}7$ 17 $\text{e}5$ $\text{f}8$ 18 $\text{Qxd}7$ $\text{xd}7$ 19 $\text{Qfd}1$ +–.

21 $\text{Qh}5$!
This is a subtle move, freeing the h4-square for the knight and foreseeing the defence with $\text{Qe}5$.

21...$\text{d}6$ 22 $\text{d}1$ $\text{e}5$ 23 $\text{a}3$ c5 24 $\text{h}4$! 1–0
Black cannot prevent $\text{Qg}6$. 24...$\text{Qd}8$ 25 $\text{Qe}4$ $\text{g}8$ 26 $\text{d}5$ +–; 24...$\text{g}8$ 25 $\text{h}7$! $\text{Xh}7$ 26 $\text{g}6$ +–.

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 2 points
Option C: 5 points

Here are a few supplementary games where a rook joins the attack:
Piket – Van den Doel
Dutch Ch (Leeuwarden) 2001

1 d4 d5 2 c4 dxc4 3 Qc3 c5 4 e3 e6 5 Bxc4 a6 6
0-0 Qf6 7 a4 Qc6 8 Be2 cxd4 9 Bxd1 Qe7 10
exd4 0-0 11 c3 Qd5 12 c4 Qcb4 13 Qb1
b6 14 Qe5 Qb7 15 a3

Starting a thematic attacking plan against
the opponent’s king. A similar idea, avoiding
the exchange of knights, was played in the
game Korotylev-Vaulin, Minsk 1998, where White,
before bringing the rook into the attack, played
first 15 Qe4: 15...Qe8 16 Qa3 f5 17 Qd2? Qc6
18 Bxh3 Qxe5 19 dxe5 fxe4 20 Qxe4 Qf5 21
Qxf5 exf5 22 Bxh5 B7 23 Bxh7+ Bf7 24
Qg3 Qf8 25 Wg6+ Qg8 26 e6 Qxe8 27 Wx5
Qe7 28 Wg4 Qd8 29 Qc3 Qf5 30 Qe1 Qxg3
31 e7 Qe2+ 32 Qxe2 Qxe7 33 Qx7 Qx7 34
Qx7 Qd1+ 35 Qe1 Qxe1+ 36 Qxe1 Qc6 37 a5
bxa5 38 Qxa5 Qf7 39 f3 Qe6 40 Qf2 Qb5 41
g4 Qa4 42 Qg3 Qd1 43 Qf4 g6 44 h4 1-0.

15...Qc8 16 Qxd5 Qxd5 17 Qxh7+
17 Qg3 Qf6 18 Qg5 Qxg5 19 Qxg5 f5 20 h4
Qc6 21 Qf3 Qe7 22 Qxe1 Qc8 23 Qd2 Qd8 24
Qe4 Wa5 25 Qxa5 Qxa5 26 Qb1 Tregubov-

17...Qxh7 18 Qh5+ Qg8 19 Qg3 Qxc1!
19...g6 20 Qh6 with an attack; 19...Qf6 20
Qg4!

20 Qxc1
20 Qxg7+ Qxg7 21 Wg4+ ½-½ Avrukh-
Sadler, Budapest 1993.

20...Qf6!

Or:
a) 20...Qd6? 21 Qg4 Qxe5 22 dxe5 g6 23
Wxb4 +– Mirković-Djukić, Yugoslav Ch (Kla-

b) 20...Qe4?! 21 Qh6 g6 (21...Qh7? 22
Wxh7+ Qxh7 23 Qe7 Qc8 24 Qg3 +-) 22 h4
Wxh4 23 Qf7 Wxh6 24 Qxh6+ Qg7 25 Qg4
Qd5 26 Qe5 Qe4 +.

21 Qg4
21 Qh6 Qxe5 22 dxe5 Qxe5 +.

21...Wg5

The black queen is ready to give herself up in
exchange for three white pieces.

22 Qc7
22 Bxh6+ gxh6 23 Wxh6 Qxg3 24 hxg3 Qd5
(24...Qg7?!) 25 Wd2 a5 +.

22...Qe4 23 h4
23 Qh6+ gxh6 24 Wxh6 Qxg3 25 hxg3 Qd5
=.

23...Wxh4 24 Qxf6+
24 Qh6+ Qh7 +; 24 Wxf7? Wxh5 25 Qxf6+
Qxf7 26 Qxh5 g6 −−.

24...Wxf6 25 Qh3 g5 ⊕ 26 Qg3 Qg6 27
Qxg5 Qxg5 28 Qxg5 Qd8
28...Qd5 +−.

29 a5 b5 (D)
29...bxa5?!

30 Qg4 Qg7
Better is 30...Qd5.

31 d5! Qxd5 32 Qc6 Qf6 33 Qg3 Qa8
33...Qe4 +–.

34 Qgc3 Qb4
Better is 34...Qd5 35 Qc3 b4 +.

35 Qec4 Qd5 36 Qd4! Qf8 37 g4 Qe7 38
f4! Qd7 39 Qwc4 Qb8 40 f5

White has more counterplay than Black need
have allowed, but nevertheless it is insufficient.

40...Qh7 41 Qd2 f6 42 Qxe6+ Qxe6 43 Qc6+
Qe5 44 Qe2+
44 Qxa6 Qg8 45 Qf1 Qxg4 46 Qa8 Qe4 47
Qe8+ Qf4 with an attack.

44...Qd4 45 Qd2+ Qd3 46 Qd6
46 Qxa6 Qc3 +–.

46...Qg8! 47 Qxd5+
47 Qf2 Qxg4 48 Qxa6 Qf4+ 49 Qg3 Qe3 50
Qxd3+ Qxd3 51 Qd6 Qd4 52 a6 Qc7 wins for
Black.

47...Qxd5 48 Qxd3+ Qc4 49 Qg3 f5 50 g5
f4 51 Qg2
51 Qg4 Qb3.
51...b3 52 g6 a2! 53 f2
53 g7 f3 54 g4 b3 −+.
53...xb2 54 f3+ a3 55 xf4 b3 56 
f5 b2 57 g1 a2 58 f6 b1 59 xxb1
xb1 60 g7 b2 61 f7 a8 0-1
62 g8# xg8 63 xg8 #b3 −+

Oll – Romero
Groningen jr Ech 1984/5

1 d4 f6 2 c4 e5 3 dxe5 g4 4 f3 
xe5 5 e3 c6 6 c3 gxe5 7 xe5 
xe5 8 e2 0-0 0-0 e8 10 b3 a5
11 b2 a6 (D)

What is the purpose of this eccentric-looking move? The rook intends to move to the kingside, considering its lack of natural defenders. Before this game the customary move was 11...d6, impeding the manoeuvre played in the game.

12 e4

White brings a knight to the defence.
12...a7

It is important to keep this bishop on the diagonal, anticipating a possible advance of White’s f-pawn.
13 wd5

If White had anticipated what follows, then he would probably have chosen 13 d4 with a level game.
13...ae6

Black brings the rook to the kingside in order to play...d6 later under more favourable conditions. He could also accelerate his attack by 13...h6?!. Oll expected 13...d6.
14 wa5 b6 15 wc3

15 wb4!? is interesting, with the idea of meeting 15...wh4 with 16 c5 (defending the knight) 16...h6?! 17 f6+! xf6 18 cxb6 and the queen plays a defensive role from b4.
15...wh4 16 f4

White has a difficult defence from now on. If 16 c5, then 16...h6 17 h3 d5!.
16...h6 17 h3 d5

Opening the way for the light-squared bishop, which was the only piece not attacking yet. Equally interesting was 17...d6.
18 cxd5?

18 fxe5? xh3 19 e6 f6 20 xf6+ gxf6 21 
xf6 d4! and 18...f2? g3! also favour Black, but White should try 18 c5! dxe4 (18...xh3 19 we1!) 19 cxb6 (19 fxe5 xh3 20 we1?)
19...g6 20 f3 f3+ 21 xf3 exf3 22 xf3
xh3 23 f2 cxb6 =.
18...xh3 19 gxh3

If 19 g3, then 19...g6 20 f2 xg3! 21 
xg3 xf4+ taking advantage of the pins thanks to the dark-squared bishop.
19...xh3 20 f2 wh4+ 21 g3 wh2+ 22 
ec1 xg3+ 23 ed1

If 23 ed2, then 23...xe3+.
23...d7

The game is decided even though the white king was able to escape. The weakness of the e-pawn removes any possibility of defence.
24 f3 wg2 25 f2 xdx5+ 26 ec2 ec6 27 
ec4 we4+ 28 ed1 f6 29 ec2 ed6+ 30 ec2 
ed8 0-1

Beliavsky – Illescas
Linares 1990

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 c3 c5 4 cxd5 exd5 5 
f3 c6 6 g3 f6 7 g2 e7 8 0-0-0 0-9 g5 
cxd4 10 xdx4 h6 11 a3 e8 12 ec2 g4 13 
h3 d7
13...e6 14 ad1 ec8 15 h2 b4 = Ador-
jan-Tarjan, Indonesia 1983.
14 ad1

14 ffd1 f8 15 xdx5 xdx5 16 xdx5 xe3
17 fxe3 wg5 with counterplay.
14...ec8! 15 h2 f8 16 fe1?

White is not giving enough attention to the following manoeuvre of the black rook. Better was 16 ecx6 bxc6 =.

15 wh4 16 f4
16...\(\mathcal{E}e5!\)

The rook surprisingly goes to h5, with devastating effects.

17 \(\mathcal{B}h1\)

The only move. 17 \(\mathcal{O}xc6\) bxc6 18 \(\mathcal{D}d4\) \(\mathcal{H}h5\) 19 \(\mathcal{S}xf6\) \(\mathcal{X}xh3\) 20 \(\mathcal{H}h4\) (or 20 \(\mathcal{F}f3\) \(\mathcal{F}f5+)\)
20...\(\mathcal{X}xh4!\) 21 \(\mathcal{G}xh4\) \(\mathcal{D}d6+-\).

17...\(\mathcal{H}h5!\) 18 \(\mathcal{G}g1\) \(\mathcal{X}xh3\) 19 \(\mathcal{F}f3\) \(\mathcal{E}e5\)
19...\(\mathcal{G}g4\) 20 \(\mathcal{D}xh5\) \(\mathcal{X}xh5\) 21 \(\mathcal{X}xh5\) \(\mathcal{D}xh5\) 22 \(\mathcal{D}f3\) =.

20 \(\mathcal{O}xc6\) bxc6
20...\(\mathcal{E}xe3!\) 21 \(\mathcal{F}xe3\) bxc6 \(\mp\) Beliavsky.

21 \(\mathcal{O}d4\) \(\mathcal{F}f5!\) 22 \(\mathcal{E}e4\) \(\mathcal{E}xe4\) 23 \(\mathcal{D}xe4\) \(\mathcal{E}xe4\) 24 \(\mathcal{W}e2\) \(\mathcal{C}c5?\) 25 \(\mathcal{E}e3?\)
25 \(\mathcal{X}xg7!\) \(\mathcal{X}xg7\) 26 \(\mathcal{X}xd5\) is much better.
25...\(\mathcal{W}e6\) 26 \(\mathcal{G}g2\) d4?! 26...\(\mathcal{F}xe8\) 27 \(\mathcal{W}b5\) g5 \(\mathcal{=}\).

27 \(\mathcal{G}c1\) \(\mathcal{E}e8\) 28 \(\mathcal{W}b5\) a6 29 \(\mathcal{W}b7\) \(\mathcal{W}xa2\) 30 \(\mathcal{X}xe1\) \(\mathcal{D}d6\)
30...\(\mathcal{W}xe6\) 31 \(\mathcal{H}h4!\).

31 \(\mathcal{W}b6\) \(\mathcal{X}e8\) 32 \(\mathcal{F}f4!\) \(\mathcal{F}f4!\) 33 \(\mathcal{W}b7\) \(\mathcal{W}xb2\) 34 \(\mathcal{W}d5\) \(\mathcal{W}c2\) 35 \(\mathcal{W}e2\) \(\mathcal{O}b6\) 36 \(\mathcal{W}b7\) \(\mathcal{W}b3\) 37 \(\mathcal{X}xe1\)
\(\mathcal{W}b5!\) 38 \(\mathcal{F}c1\) \(\mathcal{F}c4\) 39 \(\mathcal{W}d5\) \(\mathcal{D}d7\)
39...\(\mathcal{G}g6?!\).

40 \(\mathcal{F}e7!\) \(\mathcal{X}xe7\) 41 \(\mathcal{X}xe7\) \(\mathcal{E}e8\) 42 \(\mathcal{E}e4?\)
42 \(\mathcal{W}f4!\) with counterplay.

42...\(\mathcal{F}f8\) 0-1
43 \(\mathcal{W}b7\) \(\mathcal{W}c6\) 44 \(\mathcal{W}f5\) \(\mathcal{W}xe4+!\) 45 \(\mathcal{W}xe4\) \(\mathcal{G}c6\)
+-.

Test 71 [Level 4]

Theme: Inducing Weaknesses in a Flank

18 \(\mathcal{W}a5!\)

Option C earns 5 points. White anticipates the idea of \(\mathcal{D}b6\) and ties Black down on the queenside, where the white queen can create serious trouble. Black can hardly avoid a serious weakening of his queenside, since he has few useful moves at his disposal.

The natural move 18 \(\mathcal{D}d2\) (Option A; 1 point), to double rooks on the d-file, has little sense. Black reacts quickly with 18...\(\mathcal{F}f6\) 19 \(\mathcal{H}h4\) g5 20 \(\mathcal{X}xf6+\) \(\mathcal{W}xf6\).

18 g3 (Option B; 3 points) is an interesting move as Black has some trouble completing his queenside development, but with precise play the advantage probably fades away. For instance: 18...\(\mathcal{B}b6\) 19 \(\mathcal{G}g2\) \(\mathcal{F}f7\) (19...\(\mathcal{D}d5\) and 19...\(\mathcal{D}d5\) are also possible) 20 \(\mathcal{O}c5\) (20 \(\mathcal{O}c3\) is another idea) 20...\(\mathcal{D}d5\) 21 \(\mathcal{D}db3\) and White keeps some pressure on the queenside and the knight is well placed on this square.

18...\(\mathcal{B}b6\)

Black weakens the c6-square, as White had hoped. Bad is 18...\(\mathcal{X}xh2+\) 19 \(\mathcal{X}xh2\) \(\mathcal{W}h4+\) 20 \(\mathcal{G}g1\) b6 21 \(\mathcal{W}a3\) \(\mathcal{W}xe4\) 22 \(\mathcal{D}c6!\).

19 \(\mathcal{W}c3\) \(\mathcal{B}b7\)

Again, 19...\(\mathcal{X}xh2+\) seems to fail: 20 \(\mathcal{W}xh2\) \(\mathcal{W}h4+\) 21 \(\mathcal{G}g1\) \(\mathcal{W}xe4\) 22 \(\mathcal{W}c7\) \(\mathcal{B}b7\) (22...\(\mathcal{X}e8\) 23 \(\mathcal{O}c6\) 23 \(\mathcal{O}e2\) \(\mathcal{D}d5\) (23...\(\mathcal{A}c8\) 24 \(\mathcal{X}xd7\) \(+\)-) 24 \(\mathcal{D}d4!\), followed by e4.

20 \(\mathcal{O}c6\) \(\mathcal{X}xc6\) 21 \(\mathcal{W}xc6\) \(\mathcal{A}a7\) 22 \(\mathcal{G}g3\)

In spite of the opposite-coloured bishops, Black faces a wearisome middlegame with some trouble freeing his queenside, many weaknesses to defend and a rather inactive bishop.

22...\(\mathcal{B}b5\)

Black cannot liberate himself easily: after 22...\(\mathcal{F}e5\) 23 \(\mathcal{A}c2\) (23 \(\mathcal{B}3\) 23...\(\mathcal{O}c7\) 24 \(\mathcal{W}xc7\) \(\mathcal{X}xc7\) 25 \(\mathcal{X}xc7\) f5 26 \(\mathcal{D}d6\) the pin is decisive.

23 \(\mathcal{B}3\) \(\mathcal{F}f8\) 24 \(\mathcal{A}e2\) \(\mathcal{F}f6\)
24...\(\mathcal{W}a3!\) was necessary.

25 \(\mathcal{O}xf6+\) \(\mathcal{W}xf6\) \((D)\)

26 \(\mathcal{W}b6\)

The exchange of the knight does not help a lot. The pressure continues.

26...\(\mathcal{W}c7\)
26...\(\mathcal{B}b2\) 27 \(\mathcal{F}f3\) \(\mathcal{W}xa2\) 28 \(\mathcal{D}d8\).

27 \(\mathcal{G}c6\) \(\mathcal{E}e5\) 28 \(\mathcal{F}f3\) \(\mathcal{B}b8\) 29 \(\mathcal{A}a5\) \(\mathcal{A}c7\) 30 \(\mathcal{A}c3\) \(\mathcal{B}b6\) 31 \(\mathcal{H}h4\)
Another disturbing factor enters the game. When this pawn reaches the fifth rank, the black king will not breathe quietly.

31...g6 32 c5 b8
32...h5 is risky due to 33 g5 (rather than 33 hx5 b4!).

33 h5 g5 34 c6 b6
Black should have insisted on a free rook exchange by 34...b6!, in order to reduce White’s attacking chances.

35 g2 b4 36 e5 c7 37 d6 xc6 38 xc6

The exchange has finally happened, but under bad circumstances, since the rook on the sixth rank is very difficult to beat off, and creates several tactical threats.

38...d8 39 g4 b7
39...e8 40 e4!.

40 xe6 xe6 41 xe6+ 1-0
Option A: 1 point
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 5 points

Here is a supplementary game, where the queen again plays a weakening role:

**Kamsky – C. Hansen**  
**Groningen 1995**

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 c3 b4 4 e5 c5 5 a3 xc3+ 6 bxc3 c7 7 g4 f5 8 h5+ g6
It is well known that the exchange of queens after 8...f7 favours the white bishops.

9 d1
Now that Black’s kingside dark squares have been weakened, the queen returns in order to defend c2.

9...d7 10 f3 a4 11 d2!
11 d3!? cx4 12 cxd4 c3+ 13 d2 xd3 14 cxd3 xd1 15 xd1 d6 16 b1 b6 17 c1 d7 f J.Polgar-Morovic, Buenos Aires 1992.

11...d7
Not 11...cx4? 12 cxd4 xc2 (12...xc2 13 b5+ --) 13 b5+ d7 14 c1 c8 15 e2 (intending a4+) 15...d8 16 g5 ++.-.

12 d3 c4
Black closes the centre (he fears dxc5 at some moment) but also removes his chances of counterplay along the c-file. He could try 12...h6!? intending ...e7, ...0-0-0, ...b8 and ...c8.

13 e2 h6 14 h4 0-0-0 15 wc1
With this pressure against h6, the g8-knight is condemned to defence. Please note the primary role played by the white queen in the passivity of the black pieces.

15...b6 16 h3 e8 17 b1 a4 18 f1 g7 19 g1 a5 20 f3 e7 21 e2 c6 22 g3 (D)

All White’s pieces are converging on Black’s kingside, which is very exposed.

22...d8 23 g1 b5 24 f4 f7 25 h3 f8 26 e2 d7 27 a1 h7 28 a4 h8 29 d2 h7 30 e1 c8 31 c1 d7 32 d2 c6 33 c2 h7 34 h1 h8 35 g1 h7?! 35...d7 intending ...d7.

36 f4 f7 37 f3 h7 38 e2 g8 39 f1 h7 40 g3 h7 41 f4 h8 42 e2 g4!?
After much preparation, White finally decides to open the game. This was the thematic break.

43 g5
43...fxg4 44 xg4 d5 45 h5.

44 hxg5 hxg5 45 xe6!
Of course!

45...xe6 46 h6+ g6
46...g6!? 47 xf5+ xf5 (47...xf5? 48 xg5! xg5 49 xg5+ xg5 50 h6+ xg6 51 g1#) 48 xg6+ xd6 49 g4 d7 (49...d7 50 h7! ++) 50 xg5 xc7 51 xg3! (Kamsky) 51...f4 52 gh6 52 f6, 51...xb7 52 xf4 xf4 53 xf4 xf4 54 h6 --.
47 gxf5+ hxg5 48 hxg5 -- d7 49 h5 c7 50 fxg5 h5f5 51 h8xg5 e4 52 d1 b4 53 axb4
53 f3 f8 54 gxg6 fxg6+ 55 g1.
33...axb4 54 cxb4 xd4 55 e4 56 d5 d4 57 b5 h5 b5 58 a5+ b7 59
xd5 a6 60 e7+ b8 61 d6 1-0

Test 72 [Level 5]

Theme: Restricting Counterplay

20 d7!
Option C gains 5 points. Apparently, the knight moves to an exposed square without an obvious reason, but in fact, this piece is unsailable at b7, restricts the scope of the black pieces, keeps an eye over the critical square c5 and, finally, forces Black to lose a tempo.

The direct approach 20 e4!? (Option B) is also interesting. After 20...c4 White has a choice:

a) 21 b7 d7 22 d5! is one intriguing possibility: 22...exd5 23 exd5 xd5 23...d8 24
25 f6 24...xd5 25 d2 ± 25 x4 bxc4 26 xc4 ±; 23...xd5 24 e1) 24 d2
25 x4 bxc4 26 d5! ±.

b) 21 x4 a5 22 d5 (22 d2 xd4!) 22...b3 (22...b3 23 x4 [23 c6 e8 24
25 c6 e8 24...xe7+ xe7 25 c5 xc1 26 xc1 e5 ±] 23...bxa4 and White has some compensation) 23 d2 (23 e1 xd4 24 xa5 xe5 ±) 23...c5!.

These variations hang on a thread, but intuition tells White he has the advantage, even though this is a different kind of advantage from that in the game. Calculation is here very important, and if you calculated so far then you deserve 4 points.

20 e3 (Option A) gets 0 points, because after 20 a5 Black has obtained all the time he needed in order to strengthen himself and put pressure on the light squares on the queenside.

20...d7
20...e8 is interesting.
21 e3
We are now able to understand the idea behind that incomprehensible knight move. With the white knight on b7 White avoided unpleasant counterplay with ...a5.

21 b8
The c6-knight must prevent the jump of the white knight from f3 to e5. Not 21 b4 22
23 b7 23 e5.
22 c5 e8
And we have now the starting position with the rook at b8, which represents an important advantage.

23 d2!
This is a thematic exchange in this kind of position. The black bishop supports the weakened light squares on the queenside and in the centre.

23 d8 24 b4!
Another step in order to realize the advantage. The idea is to press against b5 giving new possibilities to the other white pieces to attack the weakened black queenside. If 24 e4, then 24...c4.

24 axb3 25 dxb3 b6 26 xd5 xd5 27 a4! (D)

With the exchange of the a-pawn for Black’s b-pawn the advantage becomes more durable: the c-pawn is going to be very weak and the strong white centre will tell.

27 bxa4 28 xa4 a6 29 e2 ± c7 is weak.
29 d6?!
29...d8 is better.
30 c3 b4 31 e2 g5 32 xa6 Exchanging the rook that defends Black’s queenside.
32...\(\text{Qxa6}\)
32...\(\text{Qxa6}\) 33 \(\text{Qxa6}\) \(\text{Qxa6}\) 34 \(\text{Qa1}\).
33 \(\text{Qe4}\) \(\text{Nd5}\) 34 \(\text{Qa1}\) \(\text{Qb8}\)
34...\(\text{Qb4}\) 35 \(\text{Qe4}\) ±.
35 \(\text{Qc3}\) \(\text{Qg5}\) 36 \(\text{Qe4}\) \(\text{Nd5}\) 37 \(\text{Qc3}\) \(\text{Qg5}\) 38 \(\text{Qc4!}\).

While White has brought all his pieces to the queenside, the black rook is misplaced. The next move will be \(\text{Qa7}\).
38...\(\text{Qb7}\) 39 \(\text{Qb1!}\).
Threatening \(\text{Qc5}\) followed by \(\text{Qe4}\).
39...\(\text{Qc6}\) 40 \(\text{Qc5}\) \(\text{Qd7}\)
40...\(\text{Qe8}\) 41 \(\text{Qa4}\) \(\text{Qc6}\) 42 \(\text{Qe4!}\) +–.
41 \(\text{Qxd7}\) \(\text{Qxd7}\) 42 \(\text{Qe4}\) 1–0

Black made White’s task easier, although probably he could not have defended the c-pawn for long.

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 4 points
Option C: 5 points

Test 73 [Level 3]

Theme: Over-Expanding

This is a key strategic crossroad. There are two main possibilities in this type of position:
1) a central break, with \(\text{f3}\), \(\text{e4}\) and \(\text{e5}\) followed by \(\text{f4}\);
2) attack on the queenside: \(\text{Qa4-c5}\), and if \(\text{Qxc5}\) then \(\text{dxc5}\) freeing \(\text{d4}\) for the knight.
Adianto chose the wrong plan.
14 \(\text{Qg3?!}\)

Option A; 2 points. The idea is to prepare the central break by \(\text{f3}\) and \(\text{e4-e5}\). In a superficial manner, this looks natural but the knight is misplaced here. One of the most pleasant strategies is the pawn-storm. The pawns force the enemy pieces back from their squares and seize more and more space. But in the present case the defense does not look difficult and White is taking the risk of over-expanding.

14 \(\text{Qa4!}\) ± (Option C; 5 points) was the right move. This is the best plan for attacking on the queenside by means of \(\text{Qc5}\), and after ...\(\text{Qxc5}\) follow with \(\text{dxc5}\) and \(\text{Qd4}\). It would be very good for White if he could get this knight on that square.

On the other hand, 14 \(\text{f4?!}\) (Option B; 0 points) has the same drawback as the text-move. After 14...\(\text{Qb6}\) White achieves nothing tangible with his central expansion while there remain some weaknesses in his position.
14...\(\text{Qb8}\)

The procedure to counter this pawn avalanche is to place our pieces out of the scope of the threatening pawns. Then this avalanche can easily turn into an over-expansion. Black plans to transfer his pieces to the queenside and prepare ...\(\text{h5}\).
15 \(\text{Qb1}\) \(\text{Qb6!}\) 16 \(\text{f3}\) \(\text{Qe8!}\) 17 \(\text{Qhe1}\) \(\text{Qc7!}\) (D)

Black puts pressure on the white \(\text{d4}\)-pawn, trying to hinder the central advance \(\text{e4}\).
17...\(\text{Qd6}\)? lessens the pressure on \(\text{d4}\) and White will take advantage of this by 18 \(\text{e4!}\) ±.

18 \(\text{Qf1}\)
White has taken too long preparing the advance. Black is now fully prepared.
18...\(\text{Qd7!}\) 19 \(\text{f4}\)
Changing the original plan. After 19 \(\text{e4 dx4}\) 20 \(\text{fxe4}\) \(\text{Qd8}\) 21 \(\text{Qf2}\) \(\text{Qb4}\) the \(\text{d4}\)-pawn is weak.
19...\(\text{Qf6!}\)
This move comes within the planned set-up: hold up the white centre. If 19...\(\text{Qdd8}\), then 20 \(\text{f5!}\) and “the bishop might be in the dark forever” – Seirawan.
20 \(\text{f5?!}\)
Closing the \(\text{b1-h7}\) diagonal and restricting the scope of his knight. Better was 20 \(\text{Qd3}\) \(\text{Qd8!}\) intending 21...\(\text{Qe7}\) 22 \(\text{Qxh7}\) \(\text{Qc4!}\).
20...\textit{Wf7} 21 \textit{e4 dxe4} 22 \textit{Qgxe4} \textit{Qe8} 23 \textit{Qf2} \\
\textit{Qd8} 24 \textit{Qc5} \textit{Qe7} 25 \textit{Qxe7} \textit{Qxe7} $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Black ought to be a little better here, although the position is far from clear after 26 \\
\textit{Q3e4 Qbd5} 27 \textit{Qg3}.

\textbf{Option A}: 2 points  \\
\textbf{Option B}: 0 points  \\
\textbf{Option C}: 5 points

\textbf{Test 74 [Level 3]}

\textit{Theme: Besieging the Isolated Pawn}

20 \textit{Qe2}!

Option B gets 5 points, and was the game’s best move. When you are playing against an isolated pawn it is very important to keep good control of the blockading square, i.e. the one in front of the pawn. On d4 the knight is a good piece, but does little. It is necessary to regroup the pieces in order to take advantage of such a theoretical strategic advantage.

20 \textit{b4} (Option A; 0 points) would only help to simplify the position, thus reducing our winning chances.

20 \textit{Cc3} (Option C; 2 points) doesn’t give Black real problems either, since the exchange of rooks on the c-file will ease Black’s position.

20...\textit{b6}

A new weakness appears, thanks to White’s threat of directly attacking the pawn by \textit{Qd4}.

21 \textit{Qd1}

If 21 \textit{Qxc8+ Qxc8} the white queen is tied to the defence of a3. He chooses to keep a pair of rooks, because right now the black queen is not very active, due to the weakness at b6.

21...\textit{Qc5} 22 \textit{b4} \textit{Qcc8} 23 \textit{Qd4} \textit{Qe6} 24 \textit{Qg3} \\
After 24 \textit{Qf4 Qd6} the idea of playing e4 will be impossible. From g3 the knight can go to f5.

24...\textit{Qd6} 25 \textit{Qe2} \\
Again threatening e4. If 25 e4, then 25...\textit{Qe8}! \\
(25...\textit{Qf4} 26 \textit{Qe2 Wh4} 27 e5) 26 exd5 axb4!.

25...\textit{Qe6} (D) \\
26 \textit{Qab1}!

Not only with the threat of reaching b6 but also protecting b4 (prophylaxis against a possible ...a4 or ...\textit{Qe7}). White keeps the rook on d1, to maintain the pressure on d5.

26...\textit{axb4} 27 \textit{axb4 Qa4} 28 \textit{Qa1}!

Ruling the a-file is very important. For Black it means having the squares a4, a3 and a2 under control, and for White a6 and a7. On the contrary, there is only one entry-square along the c-file (c7) which is easily defended by ...\textit{Qe8} or ...

28...\textit{Qa8} \\
Defending the d5-pawn is already difficult.

28...\textit{Qxa1}?! is interesting.

29 \textit{Qxa4} \textit{Qxa4} 30 \textit{Qc3} \textit{Qa3} 31 \textit{Qe2} \\
Intending \textit{Qf3}, targeting d5.

31...\textit{Qa4} \\
31...\textit{Qc6} 32 \textit{Qb1} (32 \textit{Qf3 Qb3}) 32...\textit{Qa2} \\
(32...\textit{Qb3} 33 \textit{Qd2} 33 \textit{Qf3}!).

32 \textit{Qc1} (D)

There is an additional problem: the rook is badly placed on a3.

32...\textit{Qc6} 33 \textit{Qxb6} \textit{Qb3} 34 \textit{Qd4} \textit{Qd6} 35 \\
\textit{Qb1} \textit{Qxb1}+ 36 \textit{Qxb1 Qe4} 37 \textit{Qc3 Qg5} 38
g4! h5 39 f5 g6 40 h4! e6 41 xe6 wxe6 42 b5 b7 43 e2 w5 44 b6 d7 45 d4 1-0

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 2 points

Test 75 [Level 1]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Exchanging Manoeuvre

Black has several possibilities, but the most interesting path to equality is that indicated in Option A, since it brings about a simplification which reduces the dynamic possibilities offered to White by the isolated queen’s pawn. Therefore, we give 5 points to this continuation.

11...h5!

This excellent move forces the aforementioned exchange of pieces.

The move suggested under Option C, whose idea is to complete development, does not achieve full equality, though it is a perfectly playable choice and we give it 2 points. 11...b6 12 a3! b7 13 e1 produces a thematic position which can arise, with slight differences, both in the Queen’s Gambit and the Nimzo-Indian Defence. White gets a slight advantage because of his space advantage and the dynamic possibilities offered by the isolated queen’s pawn.

Now we are going to evaluate Option D, which led to success in Damjanović-Beliavsky, Belgrade 1993, but with accurate play White can get an advantageous position. Here, similarly to the previous option, we award 2 points since this is a logical and playable continuation. That game continued 11...b6 12 d2 d8 13 a4? (after the natural 13 d1 we don’t see how Black can equalize) 13...b4! 14 xb4 a4 (after the exchange of queens, the weakness of the queen’s pawn increases and the compensation for this weakness disappears; we give the rest of the game without notes so the reader will know how to play this position) 15 c3 d7 16 d1 ac8 17 b3 c6 18 e5 g5 19 g3 e4 20 h4 f5 21 hxg5 hxg5 22 a3 bd5 23 xd5 exd5 24 xd5 exd5 25 f3 f6 26 g4 xg4 27 fxg4 f7 28 c7 e8 29 f2 e6 30 f3 d7 31 g3 b5 32 a4 bxa4 33 h1 xc1 34 xc1 c8 35 xc8 xc8 36 e3 a3 37 bxa3 xa3 38 d3 a5 39 e1 a4 40 c3 d7 41 e2 c6 42 d3 b5 0-1.

The idea behind Option B, 11...d5, does not score any points, since White is able to avoid the exchanges by 12 g3!, while 12 xd5!? also leaves White in a better position.

12 xe7

12 g3 xg3 13 hgx3 f6 gives Black pressure against d4 since 14 d5? fails to 14...a5!.

12...xe7?

The right recapture. The knight looks at d5 in order to blockade the isolated pawn.

13 b3?!

A dubious move: better is 13 d5, getting rid of the isolated pawn.

13...f6 14 e5 d7 15 e2 c8 16 e4?!

Pursuing the policy of exchanges that only favours Black. It is better to play 16 e1 e8! (a serious mistake is 16...c6? 17 x7 f7 18 xe6 ed5 18...e8 19 xe7) 17 x5, etc., while 16...ed5 17 xd5 xd5 18 xd5 ed5 gives White a slight edge) 17 ed1 ed5 18 xd5 xd5 with approximate equality.

16 xe4 17 xe4 c6 18 xc6 xc6 19 c3

19 xc6 xc6 20 c1 wb6 and the d4-pawn will be more exposed than the one at c6.

19 wd6 20 g3 ed8 21 ed1 wb6! (D)


![Diagram](image)

The rook is going to b4, where it will put pressure on the queen’s pawn while immobilizing the bishop because of the pressure against
the b2-pawn. The way in which Black’s major pieces are using the dark squares is remarkable. White is greatly missing his dark-squared bishop whose exchange Black forced with the move 11...\textit{c}h5!.

22 \textit{w}e1 \textit{w}d7 23 \textit{c}d3 \textit{d}d6 24 \textit{w}e4 \textit{c}e6! 25 \textit{w}f4

If 25 \textit{w}xc6 there would follow 25...\textit{c}xc6! 26 d5 \textit{c}h4 winning a pawn.

25...\textit{c}d5 26 \textit{w}d2 \textit{b}6!

Threatening...\textit{c}b4.

27 \textit{a}xd5 \textit{c}xd5 28 \textit{b}3 \textit{w}c6 29 \textit{c}c3 \textit{w}d7!

Now Black threatens...\textit{e}5, thus causing new weaknesses.

30 \textit{f}4 \textit{b}6 31 \textit{b}4 \textit{b}5!

With the threat of...\textit{a}5.

32 \textit{a}4 \textit{bxa}4 33 \textit{a}3 \textit{a}5 34 \textit{c}xa4 \textit{b}5 35 \textit{d}2 \textit{e}5!

An excellent move which highlights the exposed position of the white king.

36 \textit{x}e5 \textit{c}xe5 37 \textit{w}a1

37 dxe5 \textit{c}xd2 38 \textit{c}xa5 \textit{w}c2, etc.

37...\textit{w}e8!!

Decisive.

38 dxe5 \textit{c}xd2 39 \textit{c}xa5 \textit{w}c6 40 \textit{a}8+ \textit{h}7

41 \textit{b}1+ \textit{g}6 42 \textit{c}f1 \textit{c}5+ 43 \textit{h}1 \textit{d}5+ 0-1

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 2 points
Option D: 2 points

Test 76 [Level 3]

Themes: Realization of the Advantage; Weakness of a Square Complex

21 \textit{c}xe6!

This is the right decision. It is true that this exchange reinforces Black’s d-pawn, but in return, the light squares around the black king are seriously weakened, while the attacking chances are greater since we have opposite-coloured bishops. Therefore, if this was your choice (Option A), you have earned 5 points.

The idea behind Option B, which is to leave Black with the weakness of the isolated pawn, here does not work: 21 \textit{c}fd1 \textit{c}xd4! 22 \textit{c}xd4 \textit{c}c2 23 \textit{c}4d2 \textit{f}5 leaves Black very active along the c-file. We give only 1 point to this option.

21...\textit{f}xe6

Reinforcing the central pawn, but weakening the light squares. After 21...\textit{w}xe6, 22 h3 \textit{d}d8 23 \textit{f}d1 favours White, but not 22 \textit{f}d1? d4! 23 \textit{x}d4 \textit{g}5!.

22 \textit{g}4 (D)

Starting the pressure against the light squares. With this move White attacks e6 and so ties the black queen to its defence. If 22 \textit{f}d1 then Black would play very actively by means of 22...\textit{b}4!, threatening to take on d2.

22...\textit{c}4 23 h3 \textit{w}c6 24 \textit{c}d3

In case of the direct 24 \textit{g}6 Black would reply with 24...\textit{w}e8. The time to invade the light squares has not come yet.

24...\textit{h}8 25 \textit{f}d1 \textit{a}5 26 b3 \textit{c}c3 27 \textit{w}e2 \textit{f}8

Better is 27...\textit{a}3 28 \textit{c}xc1 \textit{w}c1+ 29 \textit{h}2 \textit{c}6 30 \textit{g}3, with a minimal advantage for White.

28 \textit{h}5!

The bishop is directed to a more dangerous diagonal.

28...\textit{b}5

Black should choose 28...\textit{d}8 29 \textit{g}6 \textit{c}7 30 \textit{d}3 \textit{w}d6 31 \textit{g}3 \textit{w}e5 32 \textit{g}4 \textit{f}6, building a fortress.

29 \textit{g}6

Finally the bishop comes to the critical diagonal.

29...\textit{d}8 30 \textit{d}3 \textit{b}4 31 \textit{g}4 \textit{w}e8 32 \textit{e}4!

32 h4 is inferior owing to 32...\textit{g}8 33 \textit{h}5 \textit{g}5.

32...\textit{g}5 33 \textit{c}2 \textit{xc}2?
Not the best, although White is doing well even after 33...\textw{w}f7 34 \texte{e}2 or 33...\textw{w}c6 as long as he replies 34 exd5 and not 34 \textw{w}e2? \textw{w}c5! 35 \texte{f}1 \textd{d}4 (Kasparov).

34 \texte{e}xc2 \textc{c}6 35 \textw{w}e2 \textw{w}c5

Threatening ...\textw{w}xf2.

36 \textd{f}1 \textc{c}3 37 exd5 exd5 38 \textb{b}1 \textd{d}2 39 \textw{w}e5 (D)

Of course it would be unsuitable to play 39 \textw{w}xd2 \texte{xd}2 40 \textd{d}1 \textg{g}5 41 \textx{xd}5 \textd{d}8, when Black has drawing chances in the ending, because of the opposite-coloured bishops.

39...\textd{d}8

39...d4 doesn’t work either in view of 40 \textw{w}e4 \textg{g}8 41 \textd{d}3, but 39...\textw{w}f6 is tougher.

40 \textf{f}5 \textg{g}8 41 \textw{w}e6+ \texth{h}8

41...\textw{w}f8 42 \textg{g}6 \textw{w}f4 43 \textd{d}1 with the decisive threat of penetrating at e8.

42 \textg{g}6 \textg{g}8 43 \textw{w}e6+ \texth{h}8 44 \textf{f}5! \textw{w}c3 45 \textw{w}g6 \textg{g}8 46 \texte{e}6+ \texth{h}8 47 \textf{f}5 \textg{g}8 48 \textg{g}3 \textf{f}8 49 \textg{g}2 \textw{w}f6 50 \textw{w}h7 \textw{w}f7

50...\textg{g}6 51 \textx{xd}6 \textw{g}7 52 \textf{f}4! \textf{f}6 53 \textd{d}1.

51 \texth{h}4 \textd{d}2

Other possibilities also fail: 51...\textf{f}6 52 \texte{e}1 \textw{w}g8 53 \textg{g}6 \textf{f}7 54 \textw{w}g4; 51...\texte{e}7 52 \texte{e}1 and the threats to penetrate with the bishop on e6 or g6 are decisive.

52 \textd{d}1 \textc{c}3 53 \textd{d}3 \textd{d}6

53...\textw{w}g8 54 \textw{w}g6 \textf{f}7 55 \textw{w}b6 followed by \textf{f}3 decides matters.

54 \textf{f}3!

54 \texte{e}3 g5!.

54...\texte{e}7 55 \texth{h}8! \textd{d}4 56 \textw{w}c8 \textf{f}6 57 \textw{w}c5+ \textw{w}e8 58 \textf{f}4 \textw{w}b7+ 59 \texte{e}4+ \textf{f}7

59...\texte{e}6 60 \textw{w}c4! \texte{e}4 61 \textw{w}g8+ \texte{e}7 62 \textw{x}g7+, etc.

60 \textw{w}c4+ \textw{w}f8 61 \texte{e}7! \textw{f}7 62 \textw{w}e6 \textw{w}d7 63 \textw{w}e5! (D)

1-0

There is no defence. Let us see some possible variations:

a) 63...\textw{w}e7 64 \textw{w}b8+.

b) 63...\textw{w}d8 64 \textw{w}c5+ \texte{e}7 65 \textf{f}4+ \textw{w}e8 66 \textw{w}c6+ \textw{w}d7 67 \textg{g}6+.

c) 63...\textw{w}e7 64 \textw{w}f4+ \textw{f}7 65 \textw{w}b8+.

Option A: 5 points

Option B: 1 point

Test 77 [Level 5]

Themes: Piece Activity; Symmetrical Structure

17 \textf{f}1!

This move, reinforcing c3, is the beginning of a deep plan. The natural 17 \textf{d}1, suggested under Option A, would only lead to simplification along the d-file (1 point for this choice). Besides, with the movement of the rook to c1, the d1-square is released to the bishop, which will prove important. We shall see in some moves the whole plan.

The other natural move, 17 \texte{e}5 (Option B), leads only to clear equality after 17...\textb{b}7 18 \textd{d}7 \textf{c}8 19 \textx{xb}6 axb6, so we give just 1 point to this choice.

17...\textb{b}7?!
It looks more appropriate to develop the bishop on the e8-a4 diagonal, controlling critical squares. In fact, the bishop is going to move to this diagonal, losing a tempo. In any event, even after the correct development of the bishop by 17...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}7}\), White would have a slight but lasting advantage: 18 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{f}}}1\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{fd}}8}\) 19 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}3!\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{ac}}8}\) 20 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}3\text{\textit{\textbf{c}}}}7\) 21 c4 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}4\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}}8\) 22 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}1\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}8\) 23 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}5\), Novikov-Sturua, Lvov 1985.

18 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{f}}}1\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}5\)

If 18...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{c}}}6?!\) then 19 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}5\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}4\) 20 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}5!\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xd}}}5+\) 21 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xb}}}5\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{ac}}8}\) 22 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}3\) c4 23 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}2!\) with a slight advantage to White.

19 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}5!\)

The rook goes to a5 in order to put pressure on the black pawns. 19...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{x}}a2}\) does not work because of 20 c4. This detail shows the action of the c1-rook.

19...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}7\)

More resistant was 19...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{ac}}8}\) 20 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}5\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{c}}}7\) 21 c4 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}8\).

20 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}5!\) (\(D\))

20...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{fb}}8}\) 21 c4 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}6\) 22 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}1!\)
The knight goes to d3 increasing the pressure against c5.

22...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}4\)

22...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}2\) 23 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}3\).

23 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}1!\) (\(D\))
The direct 23 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}3\) fails to 23...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}4!\).

The bishop retreat is a multi-purpose move: it deprives the black rook of the a4-square, and prepares the transfer of the bishop to b3, closing the b-file and at the same time supporting the c4-pawn. After this, we are able to appreciate the whole idea of White’s 17th move. If you grasped a good part of the idea (Option C) award yourself 5 points.

23...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}7\) 24 f3 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}8\) 25 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}3\) g5 26 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}3!\) (\(D\))

A last preparation before taking on c5. Not 26 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}5?\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}5\) 27 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}5\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}2!\) 28 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}6\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{dd}}}2\) with equality.

26...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{f}}}8\) 27 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}5\)

Finally, White has won a pawn, thus successfully concluding the plan started with 17 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{fc}}1}\).

27...\(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}5\) 28 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xc}}}5\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}6\) 29 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}2\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}7\) 30 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}1\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xd}}}1\) 31 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xd}}}1\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}6\) 32 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}5\) f5 33 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}2\) h5 34 e4! fxe4 35 fxe4 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xe}}4}\) 36 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xe}}}4\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xe}}}4\) 37 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{xd}}}5\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{f}}}5\) 37 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}3\)

Fixing the h-pawn, but there was an easier way to win: 37 h4! \(\text{\textit{\textbf{f}}}7\) 38 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}3\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}4\) 39 c5+ \(\text{\textit{\textbf{c}}}6\) 40 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{a}}}4+\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{c}}}7\) 41 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}8\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}7\) 42 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}6\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}6\) 43 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}4\).

37...h4 38 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}4\) e5+ 39 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{c}}}3\) \(\text{\textit{\textbf{b}}}1\) 40 a3 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{e}}}7\) 41 \(\text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}4\) h3!
If 41...e4 then 42 d1 f7 43 d4 f2 44 c5+ e7 45 b3 d2+ 46 c3 d3+ 47 b2 e3 48 a4 with a decisive advantage.

42 g3 e8 43 g7! f8 44 xa7 f2 45 b4 xh2 (D)

45...b2 46 c5+ c6 47 a6+ c7 48 c4 c2 49 xc2 xc2+ 50 d5 xh2 51 a7+ b8 (51...c8 52 h7 h1 53 d6 h2 54 h8+ b7 55 c6+ winning) 52 h7 h1 53 e4 h2 54 f3 e4+ 55 xe2 c1 56 xh2 xc5 57 e7 c4 58 g4 with a decisive advantage.

46 c5+ c6 47 a4+ d5 48 d7+ e4 48...e6 49 c6 b2+ 50 b3+ xb3+ 51 xb3 e4 52 d8 xc6 53 h8 g2 54 a4 e5 55 h4 with an easy win.

49 c6 b2+ 50 a5! b8 51 c7 e8 52 b6 e3 53 c6 h2 54 g4!

Preventing...f5.

54...h8 55 d1 a2 56 e1+ f4 57 e4+ g3 58 xe5 xg4 59 e2 1-0

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 5 points

White starts a sequence of exchanges preventing the freeing of the black bishop by ...c5. If this was your choice, then you have earned 5 points.

The move indicated under Option B is also very interesting: 19 Wh4!? xd1+ (19...e7? 20 xd8+ wd8 21 d1 with a clear advantage; 19...c5?! 20 xd8 xd8 21 xa8 xa8 22 d1 with advantage) 20 xd1 xe5 21 d8! e1+ (21...f8) 22 h2 e5+ 23 g3 f8 with unclear play. Award yourself 4 points if this was your choice.

However, the idea under Option C, of sacrificing a pawn by 19 c5, deserves no points, since Black gets a very good position with the simple 19...bxc5!

19...xd8 20 d1! (D)

Complementing the previous move. It again prevents ...c5, exchanging the remaining pieces and reaching a position where the difference in the activity of the bishops is decisive.

20...xd1+ 21 xd1 d8 22 f3 d2 23 b3 xa2

White calculated this pawn sacrifice when he started the exchanges on move 19. With this sacrifice, he prevents the freeing of the black bishop, while Black must also face the threat of b4-b5. Besides, White seizes control of the d-file.

24 b4!

The best move. If 24 d4, then 24...a3 25 d8+ (25 d7 a1+! 26 h2 xe5+ 27 g3 b8!) 25...f8 and Black is able to defend himself.

24...a1+ 25 h2 a6

Test 78 [Level 4]

Themes: Exclusion of Pieces; The Art of Simplification

19 xd8!

This was the move indicated under Option A, and looks the strongest continuation. With this,
If 25...\texttt{b}2, then 26 \texttt{b}5 \texttt{xf}2 27 \texttt{d}3 \texttt{c}5 28 \texttt{xc}6 \texttt{xc}6 29 \texttt{xc}6 with advantage.

26 \texttt{d}4!

26 \texttt{b}5 would be less effective now: 26...\texttt{c}8 27 \texttt{xc}6 \texttt{h}6 28 \texttt{g}3 \texttt{a}5 with counterplay.

26...\texttt{e}8 27 \texttt{c}5! (D)

B

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

Completely closing in the black bishop. 27...\texttt{bxc}5 28 \texttt{xc}5 \texttt{a}6?!

28...\texttt{b}8 is better.

29 \texttt{e}7 \texttt{g}6 30 \texttt{h}4 \texttt{h}5? (D)

A serious mistake in a difficult position. With this move the dark squares are severely weakened, and the white king will take advantage of this weakness later. 30...\texttt{b}8 was preferable.

W

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

31 \texttt{g}3!

Starting the decisive invasion.

31...\texttt{b}7?

This simply loses. The exchange of queens leaves Black no hope. 31...\texttt{b}8 was necessary although White’s advantage will be crushing after 32 \texttt{f}4.

32 \texttt{xb}7! \texttt{xb}7 33 \texttt{f}4

The king pursues his invasion.

33...\texttt{f}8 34 \texttt{g}5 \texttt{e}7 35 \texttt{c}4

Preparing the decisive break with \texttt{f}3 and \texttt{g}4.

35...\texttt{a}8 36 \texttt{f}3 \texttt{b}7

36...\texttt{c}5 doesn’t save Black either: 37 \texttt{xa}8 \texttt{cxb}4 38 \texttt{c}6 \texttt{b}3 39 \texttt{a}4 \texttt{b}2 40 \texttt{c}2 and White wins.

37 \texttt{g}4! \texttt{a}8 38 \texttt{gxh}5 \texttt{gxh}5 39 \texttt{f}4 \texttt{b}7 40 \texttt{f}3 \texttt{a}8 41 \texttt{hxh}5 1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 4 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 79 [Level 5]

Theme: Bishop vs Knight

Here we have a typical position in which Black has a ‘bad’ bishop against a graceful white knight. However, after 46...\texttt{g}6 White would find it very difficult to break Black’s fortress. Therefore, if this was your choice (Option A), you have earned 5 points.

Kasparov decided to take on \texttt{h}4, thus considering that he would get a draw more easily by avoiding a possible break based on \texttt{g}4, and with only one remaining point, \texttt{f}4, where the white pieces can penetrate Black’s position. But he missed the strong reply prepared by Karpov.

46...\texttt{g}xh4? 47 \texttt{g}2!! (D)

B

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
This move was missed by Kasparov, who only considered the recapture on h4. With this move, which involves a temporary pawn sacrifice, the white king will be able to penetrate into Black’s camp. Take 1 point if your choice was Option B or Option C.

47...hxg3+ 48 hxg3 xe6 49 f4+ g5 50
xh5 e6 51 f4+ d6 52 g4

The king starts his invasion.

52...c2 53 h5 d1 54 g6! e7

The best defence. If 54...xf6 55 xf6 White would continue, by means of knight checks, displacing the black king and thus winning the d5-pawn.

55 xd5+?

This capture is hasty. Extensive analysis shows that 55 h5 wins.

55...e6 56 c7+ d7?

56...d6 is considered just sufficient to draw.

57 xxa6 xf3 58 xf6 d6 59 f5 d5

60 f4 h1 61 e3 c4 62 c5 c6

Nor does 62...g2 help: 63 d3 b3 64
f4 b7 65 d3 xxa3 66 c3 followed by d5 winning.

63 d3 g2 64 e5+ c3 65 g6 c4 66

If 66...b3 White wins after 67 d5 xa3 68
d6 h3 69 d5 b3 70 d4 g4 71 c5
h3 72 f6 etc.

67 f5 g2 68 d6+ b3 69 xb5 a4

70 d6 1-0

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 1 point
Option C: 1 point

Test 80 [Level 4]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; The Break at d5

18 xf6!

This is a strong follow-up without a doubt, and Black’s position starts to stagger.

The idea suggested under Option A, of capturing at d5 in order to enter the seventh rank with the rook, gives White no special advantage: 18 xd5 xd5 19 xd5 xd5! 20 xd5 exd5 21 e7 f6! followed by 22...f7, neutralizing the white rook with full equality. If this was your choice then you have earned just 1 point.

The idea in Option C, of transferring the bishop to e5, is quite harmless for Black. Let us analyse a possible continuation: 18 h4 xc3!? 19 bxc3 c6! 20 xc6 bxc6 and White is somewhat better, though Black should not be worried too much. We give 2 points to this move.

18...xf6 19 d5!

A strong breakthrough based on the previous move.

19...exd5 20 xd5! (D)

Taking with the knight is harmless: 20 xd5?
xd5 21 xd5 c7 22 xb7 b8 23 d5
xb2 and Black has nothing to fear.

Even though it looks unusual, the capture on d5 with the bishop appears more frequently than you might believe. After the end of this game you will find another example where after the break at d5 and the later capture with the bishop, White gets a clear advantage.

Indeed, White’s whole idea was based on this capture with the bishop. The centre is now open and the white rooks play along the central files, where the black queen is exposed. There are serious threats that are very difficult to meet. If your choice was Option B and your analysis reached this move, then you have earned 5 points.

20 b8

The only move. Black loses material after 20...xd5? 21 xd5; 20...c7 is a little more difficult to refute: 21 xb7 b8 22 d5! xb2
23  \( \text{\textit{b}}3! \) (trapping the black rook; the direct threat is 24  \( \text{\textit{a}}4 \)) 23...\( \text{\textit{xd}}8 \) (if 23...\( \text{\textit{g}}4 \) then 24 \( \text{\textit{hxg4 \text{\textit{wc}}3 \text{\textit{25 \text{\textit{xf}}7! }} \) 24 \( \text{\textit{xd}}8+ \) \( \text{\textit{xd}}8 \) 25 \( \text{\textit{b}}7 \) \( \text{\textit{d}}7 \) 26 \( \text{\textit{xf}}7+. \)
\[ 21 \text{\textit{b3! \textit{c}}7 (D)} \]
Also bad would be 21...\( \text{\textit{c}}6 \) 22 \( \text{\textit{xc}}6 \) \( \text{\textit{bxc}}6 \) 23 \( \textit{e}7 \) with complete control.

\[ \]

\[ \]

\[
22 \text{\textit{eb}}5! \\
The knight is going to be decisive at d6.
22...\( \text{\textit{b}}6 \) 23 \( \text{\textit{d}}6 \) \( \text{\textit{bd}}8 \) (D)
\]

\[ \]

\[ \]

\[
Dvoretsky – Romanov \\
Moscow 1963
\]

15 \( \text{\textit{d}}5! \)
A strong break that gives White a dangerous initiative.
15...\( \text{\textit{exd}}5 \) 16 \( \text{\textit{xd}}5! \)
The right capture. The bishop is untouchable and Black is subjected to unpleasant pressure.
16...\( \text{\textit{fe}}8 \) 17 \( \textit{wc}}4!? \) \( \text{\textit{xd}}5? \)
17...\( \textit{e}5! \) is superior, and forces simplification that leaves White only a little better.
18 \( \text{\textit{xd}}5 \) \( \text{\textit{wb}}8 \) 19 \( \textit{f}4! \) \( \textit{a}5 \) 20 \( \text{\textit{xe}}7+ \) \( \textit{xe}}7 \) 21 \( \text{\textit{xc}}8+/! \) 1-0

Test 81 [Level 2]

Themes: Move-Order; Right Plan but Wrong Realization

16...\( \text{\textit{a}}5? \)
The commutative property does not always apply to chess. Therefore it is not enough to find the right plan but one must also play the moves in the right order. Of course Black must move the rook from h8 to b8, then withdraw the
knight, with pressure against the b2-pawn and follow with ...a5 planning a break at a4 with good counterplay. However, Black omits an important tactical detail, whereby he should play the rook to b8 first before playing ...a5, as we shall see later. 0 points for Option C.

The idea behind Option A, of guarding the bishop against a possible jump of the knight to h4 by playing 16...g5 is not necessary since the bishop has the g4-square to escape. It is better not to lose time and he should seek counterplay along the a- and b-files without delay. 0 points for this choice.

16...\textit{Nh8}, suggested under Option B, is the right plan (and the right move-order). Now Black is ready to play 17...\textit{Qd7} (or maybe better ...a5 first) beginning the aforementioned counterplay. There is no need to worry about 17 \textit{Qa6} \textit{Nc8} 18 \textit{Nh4}? due to 18...\textit{Nc6} and ...a5. If this was your choice, and you found that the other move-order fails tactically, then you have earned 5 points.

17 \textit{Nh4}! \textit{Qg4}?

17...\textit{Nh8} was the only move, although after 18 \textit{Qxf5+} exf5 White’s advantage is evident.

18 \textit{h3} \textit{Nh5} (D)

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

19 \textit{Qxe6}!

The key move. White forced the bishop from the defence of e6 and now the undefended b6-knight becomes apparent.

19...\textit{Qxe6} 20 \textit{Bxc6+} \textit{Kd7} 21 \textit{Bxb6} \textit{Bb8} 22 \textit{Bxb8} \textit{Bxb8} 23 b3 a4 24 g4 \textit{AXB3} 25 \textit{AXB3} \textit{AXB3} 26 \textit{We2}

The situation is now clear and White has a healthy extra pawn.

26...\textit{Bb2+} 27 \textit{Bf3} \textit{f7} 28 \textit{Bf5} g6 29 \textit{Bh6} \textit{Ke6} 30 \textit{Bd1} \textit{Bb7} 31 h4 g5 32 \textit{hxg5} \textit{fxg5} 33 \textit{Bh1} 1-0

The game would have ended as follows: 33...\textit{Be7} 34 \textit{Bf5+} \textit{Bxf5} 35 \textit{gxf5} \textit{Bf6} 36 \textit{Bg4} \textit{Bxb2} 37 \textit{Bxh7} \textit{Bxf2} 38 \textit{Bh6}+.

Option A: 0 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 0 points

Test 82 [Level 1]

Themes: Pawn-Formation c3-d4; Hindering the Threats

16...f5!

This is the right way to hinder White’s threats, without fearing the weakness at e6, since we do not see how White can exploit this. We should remember that “a weakness is only a weakness if the opponent can take advantage of it!” Both 16...g6 and 16...h6, suggested under Options B and C, are a little weakening and thus they deserve no points. If this was your assessment and you chose Option A, ending White’s attacking prospects, then you have earned 5 points.

17 \textit{Qf3}

Probing e6 and threatening 18 \textit{Qg5}.

17...\textit{Wxe8}! (D)

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

A logical follow-up. With this move, Black virtually forces the exchange of queens. After
this exchange, the c3-pawn will be more vulnerable than that at e6 (supported and protected by the black king).

18 \textlbrace $\text{f}$xe8

Avoiding the exchange is no better since the queen remains in an unhappy position. Let us see a very likely continuation: 18 \textlbrace $\text{f}$h3 \textlbrace $\text{f}$6! 19 \textlbrace $\text{c}$c1 (preventing 19...\textlbrace $\text{f}$h6) 19...\textlbrace $\text{c}$c6 (19...\textlbrace $\text{c}$xc3?! 20 \textlbrace $\text{c}$xf5!) 20 \textlbrace $\text{d}$d2 \textlbrace $\text{c}$c4! (20...\textlbrace $\text{g}$g6 gets nowhere: 21 \textlbrace $\text{h}$h4! forces the rook to return because if 21...\textlbrace $\text{g}$g4? then 22 \textlbrace $\text{f}$3!) 21 \textlbrace $\text{c}$c1 \textlbrace $\text{d}$d5! and Black’s advantage is beyond question.

18...\textlbrace $\text{f}$xe8 19 \textlbrace $\text{d}$d2

Necessary in order to control c4.

19...\textlbrace $\text{d}$d5! (D)

A very complete move. From d5 the bishop attacks the a2-pawn, watches over the important c4-square and defends e6. The reader should notice the difference in activity between the bishop defending the ‘weakness’ at e6 and the other defending the weakness at c3.

20 a4 \textlbrace $\text{f}$7 21 g3 \textlbrace $\text{g}$6! 22 f4

The only way to prevent 22...e5. The drawback of this move is that it gives Black the possibility of a break with...\textlbrace $\text{g}$5, combining play on both flanks.

22...\textlbrace $\text{h}$6!

Preparing...\textlbrace $\text{g}$5.

23 \textlbrace $\text{c}$c1 (D)

Threatening to gain some space by pushing the c-pawn.

23...\textlbrace $\text{c}$c4!

The right way to hinder the advance. The attempt to do so with the knight is not so effective:

23...\textlbrace $\text{c}$c4 24 \textlbrace $\text{c}$xc4! \textlbrace $\text{c}$xc4 25 \textlbrace $\text{f}$3 followed by 26 \textlbrace $\text{e}$e5 with some activity.

24 \textlbrace $\text{c}$c2 \textlbrace $\text{g}$5! 25 \textlbrace $\text{f}$xg5 \textlbrace $\text{h}$xg5 26 \textlbrace $\text{a}$a3 \textlbrace $\text{a}$xa3 27 \textlbrace $\text{a}$xa3 \textlbrace $\text{d}$5!

Preventing \textlbrace $\text{f}$3-e5 again.

28 \textlbrace $\text{d}$d3 \textlbrace $\text{e}$ed8 29 \textlbrace $\text{e}$e1

If 29 c4, then 29...\textlbrace $\text{b}$b7 winning the d-pawn.

29...\textlbrace $\text{c}$c7!

Preparing not only the doubling of rooks on the c-file but the rooks will also play on the other flank, one on the first rank and the other via the second.

30 \textlbrace $\text{e}$e3 \textlbrace $\text{f}$6!

Centralizing the king and freeing the way for the rook.

31 \textlbrace $\text{a}$a6 \textlbrace $\text{f}$4! (D)

Beginning the final onslaught.

32 \textlbrace $\text{d}$d3 \textlbrace $\text{h}$h8 33 c4 \textlbrace $\text{a}$8 34 \textlbrace $\text{g}$xf4 \textlbrace $\text{g}$xf4 35 \textlbrace $\text{h}$h3 \textlbrace $\text{g}$7+! 36 \textlbrace $\text{f}$2 \textlbrace $\text{g}$2+ 37 \textlbrace $\text{e}$1 \textlbrace $\text{h}$xh2 38 \textlbrace $\text{h}$xh8 \textlbrace $\text{h}$h8
Black has won a pawn, thus realizing his positional advantage. The rest is just technique, since besides the material advantage, the white pieces are badly placed.

39 \textit{xf3 \textit{xd8!} 40 \textit{xf2 \textit{xf3} 41 \textit{xf3 \textit{xd4}}}

Winning a second pawn. The rest of the game is not interesting.

42 \textit{xc3 \textit{bxc6} 43 \textit{b5 \textit{e5+} 44 \textit{e2 \textit{f5} 45 c5 \textit{f3+} 46 \textit{e1 bxc5} 47 \textit{xc5 \textit{xf4} 48 \textit{c7 \textit{e3} 49 \textit{d7 f2+} 50 \textit{f1 \textit{g4}} 0-1}}}

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 0 points

\section*{Test 83 [Level 2]}

\textit{Themes: Weak Squares; Linked Squares}

15...\textit{cd7}!!

An excellent move. The knight is going to d7 with the idea of reaching c4 via b6. In this and similar positions, the game revolves around the c4- and c5-squares, and the side in a better position to take advantage of them gets the advantage. If this was your choice, then you have earned 5 points.

If instead you decided to play the natural 15...\textit{ce4}, which leads to equal play, then you have scored 2 points.

16 \textit{g3}?

A serious mistake. White would get a more or less equal game after 16 \textit{b3} and \textit{a5}, fighting for the c4-square.

16...\textit{b6} 17 \textit{b3} (D)

17...\textit{d5}!!

With the idea of ...\textit{xc3} followed by ...\textit{d5-c4}, and after the exchange of the light-squared bishops, the c4-square will be even weaker.

18 \textit{xf3 \textit{xc4!} 19 \textit{d4 \textit{c8} 20 \textit{xc4}?}}

According to Kotov, White should have played 20 \textit{wb1} with the idea of \textit{d6} or \textit{d2}, fighting for control of the c4-square.

20...\textit{xc4} 21 \textit{xc1 \textit{a8!} 22 \textit{xc3}}

White faced the threat of ...\textit{dxe3}.

22...\textit{e8} 23 \textit{xd5 \textit{xd5} 24 \textit{xd5 \textit{xd5} 25 a4 \textit{f6} 26 \textit{f3 \textit{b2}}}!!

With the idea of ...\textit{e5} without blocking the bishop.

27 \textit{e1} (D)

Let us examine other lines quoted by Alekhine:

a) 27 \textit{d1 bxa4} 28 \textit{xa4 \textit{b6} 29 \textit{xd5 \textit{xa4} 30 \textit{d1 c3} 31 \textit{d6 \textit{e4} 32 \textit{f7} 33 \textit{f6} 34 \textit{b1 \textit{f7} 35 \textit{b1 c3}}} winning.

b) 27 \textit{b1 \textit{a3!} 28 \textit{xb2 \textit{xb1} 29 \textit{xb1 \textit{b3}}}!! 30 \textit{f1 bxa4} 31 \textit{h3 \textit{c4}}, also winning.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure.png}
\caption{Position after 27...\textit{d8} 28 \textit{axb5 axb5 29 h3 e5 30 \textit{b1 e4} 31 \textit{d4 \textit{xd4} 32 \textit{d1 \textit{xe3} 0-1}}}}
\end{figure}

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 2 points

\section*{Test 84 [Level 3]}

\textit{Themes: Hanging Pawns; Realization of the Advantage}

17 \textit{a4}!
A strong move which puts the black centre under serious pressure, because the move not only prepares to drive one of its defenders out by means of a5, but also a2 with pressure against d5. If this was your choice (Option B), you have earned 5 points.

We give 2 points to Option A because it only allows a2, without threatening to drive the black knight out, and is therefore a less complete plan than the one in Option B.

The idea underlined in Option C, despite being very logical, gives Black some counterplay. If you chose this option, then you have earned 3 points. Let us see a possible follow-up: 17 w c2 g6 18 cxd5 cxd5 19 e4 w d6 20 exd5 a2 and matters are not so clear for White, since Black is active and owns two powerful bishops.

17...f6

According to Kramnik, White would also get a clear plus after 17...a5 18 w c2 g6 19 a2! f6 20 e4!

18 w c2 g6 19 a5!

19 a2 is also promising.

19...c4 20 cxd5 x b 2

If 20...x d 5 then 21 e 4 with a great advantage.

21 cxd6+ wxf6 22 a d 2 xf3 23 xf3 (D)

This is what we know in chess as the realization of an advantage. White turned the pressure against the hanging centre into another advantage, namely that the b2-knight is excluded from play. This fact, combined with the advance of the central pawns, should give him victory.

23..ab8 24 f4 e 4 25 e 4 w d 8

If 25...c3, then 26 e 5 w c 6 27 w d 6 with a crushing advantage.

26 e 5 w d 2 27 w x d 2 w d 8 28 w e 2 w d 4!

In case of 28...w x a 5 White will play 29 e 6.

29 e 6 d 3! 30 c 2 f x e 6 31 w x e 6+ g 7 (D)

32 a 4! c 3?

Weakening the position of the d3-knight, and therefore allowing the bishop to become powerful along the b1-h7 diagonal.

33 c 2 ! b 2 34 w e 7 + g 8 35 w e 2 ! x f 4

Neither 35...x c 2 36 w x c 2 g 7 37 w d 1 winning, nor 35...b 4 because 36 w e 8 +, offered Black a way out.

36 g x f 4 f 7 37 w d 1 1-0

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 3 points

Test 85 [Level 3]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Zwischenzug

10...b 6

This was the idea proposed by Option B. However, as Botvinnik skilfully shows, despite being a logical idea it was necessary to play...a6 first, thus forcing White to play a4, weakening the b4-square, which will serve as an outpost for the black knights. Therefore we give only 2 points to Option B.

The right plan was that mentioned under Option C (5 points): 10...a6! with the idea of ...b5
followed by ...\texttt{\texttt{b7}} and ...\texttt{b6}. If White prevents it by playing 11 a4 then after 11...\texttt{b6} Black has the b4-square for his knights. Playing ...a6 in order to force a4 before playing ...\texttt{b6} is a customary procedure in positions like this. Therefore, we recommend the reader to remember this idea. Let's see some examples after 12 \texttt{b3 \texttt{d7}} (D):

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

\begin{itemize}
\item a) 13 \texttt{e2} \texttt{c6} 14 \texttt{fd1} \texttt{fd5}!? 15 \texttt{d2} \texttt{d}16 \texttt{c5} \texttt{xd4}! 17 \texttt{x}f7 \texttt{x}f7 18 \texttt{e}3 (if 18 \texttt{xe}6, then 18...\texttt{ff}6) 18...\texttt{e}5 19 \texttt{xb}6 \texttt{xe}2 20 \texttt{xe}2 \texttt{d}5! 21 \texttt{xd}5 \texttt{xd}5 22 \texttt{d}4 \texttt{d}8 23 \texttt{c}3 \texttt{xc}3 24 \texttt{xc}3 1/2-1/2 Spraggett-A. Sokolov, Saint John Ct (1) 1988.
\item b) 13 a5 seems to be the only way for White to keep some advantage after the upcoming exchanges, even though if Black plays with some care he should have no problems drawing. 13...\texttt{bd}5 14 \texttt{d}5 \texttt{d}5 15 \texttt{xd}5 \texttt{exd}5 16 \texttt{xe}7 \texttt{exe}7 17 \texttt{b}3 (the advantage of the knight against the bishop in this position is more theoretical than real, since the bishop has the b5-square) 17...\texttt{d}6 18 \texttt{f}e1 \texttt{f}6 (controlling \texttt{e}5) 19 \texttt{e}3 \texttt{f}8 20 \texttt{c}1 \texttt{c}6 21 \texttt{ce}1 \texttt{f}8 22 \texttt{xe}8+ \texttt{xe}8 23 \texttt{xe}8+ \texttt{xe}8 24 \texttt{wc}3 \texttt{we}6 25 \texttt{h}3 \texttt{d}7 26 \texttt{ce}1 \texttt{b}5! (preventing \texttt{d}3-\texttt{c}5; we can see how the bishop is not so awkward in this position) 27 \texttt{c}2 \texttt{wc}6 28 \texttt{xc}6+ \texttt{xc}6 29 \texttt{b}4+ \texttt{d}6 30 \texttt{f}4 \texttt{c}4 31 \texttt{e}2 \texttt{c}7 32 \texttt{wc}3 \texttt{b}6 33 \texttt{ax}b6+ \texttt{xb}6 34 \texttt{d}2 \texttt{b}5 35 \texttt{c}2 \texttt{b}3 36 \texttt{de}3 \texttt{b}4 1/2-1/2 Eslon-Hoffman, Alicante 1989.
\end{itemize}

The idea suggested under Option A does not solve Black’s needs in this position. 10...\texttt{b6} deprives the d7-knight of the b6-square, with no good prospects and leaving Black in a restricted position and without good control of the d5-square. We give no points to this choice.

11 \texttt{b3 \texttt{d7}} 12 \texttt{wd3 \texttt{bd5}?!}

12...\texttt{fd5}! is more precise, heading for exchanges, although after 13 \texttt{e}3 (13 \texttt{c}2?! \texttt{g}6 with the threat of ...\texttt{b}4) 13...\texttt{xc}3 14 \texttt{xc}3 \texttt{a}4! 15 \texttt{c}4 White has a slight edge according to Botvinnik.

13 \texttt{e}5 \texttt{c}6 14 \texttt{ad1}

White follows his preparations, strengthening the central pawn before beginning kingside action. 14 \texttt{xc}6 would be a positional mistake since besides exchanging the awesome e5-knight, it allows Black to reinforce the d5-square.

14...\texttt{b}4

We are now able to assess the importance of inducing the weakening of the b4-square on move 10, since the knight is not going to remain on this square.

15 \texttt{wh}3 \texttt{d}5 16 \texttt{xd}5 \texttt{bd}5

Better is 16...\texttt{fx}d5 17 \texttt{c}1!

17 \texttt{f}4!

Opening the f-file with \texttt{f}5, as well as weakening the blockade at d5. Thus the light-squared bishop gains power.

17...\texttt{e}8 18 \texttt{f}5 \texttt{exf}5?

It would have been better to keep the bishop’s diagonal closed, even at the cost of weakening the e6-pawn.

19 \texttt{xf}5 \texttt{d}6?

A tactical mistake in a very bad position.

20 \texttt{xf}7! \texttt{xf}7 21 \texttt{xf}6 \texttt{xf}6

If 21...\texttt{xf}6, then 22 \texttt{xf}6 \texttt{xf}6 23 \texttt{wc}8+, etc.

22 \texttt{xd}5 \texttt{wc}6 23 \texttt{d}6 \texttt{we}8 24 \texttt{d}7 1-0

Option A: 0 points

Option B: 2 points

Option C: 5 points

Test 86 [Level 2]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Break at d5

14 \texttt{g}5

This strong and natural move was suggested under Option B. White played this move in the
game, without noticing that Black’s position would be a total ruin after the break at d5, as we are going to see later. If you chose Option B then you have scored 3 points.

The idea mentioned under Option A, of developing the bishop to e3, deserves no more than 1 point, because it does not emphasize Black’s problems.

The right plan was recommended under Option C: 14 d5!. After this strong break White’s attack gets a decisive boost. 14...exd5 (14...Qa5 is answered by 15 Qg5 g6 16 d6!) 15 Qg5 g6 (15...Qe4 is met by 16 Qxe4 dxe4 17 Wxe4! g6 18 Qxe7 Wxe7 19 Wxe7 Qxe7 20 Qxe7 Qxf3 21 Qb3! Qg4 22 Qxa7 with an overwhelming advantage, Howell-Magem, Groningen jr Ech 1983/4) 16 Qxe7! Wxe7 17 Qxd5 Qxd5 18 Qxe7 winning. If this was your choice, and your analysis was somewhat like this, then you have earned 5 points.

14...g6
Despite missing the win, White’s position remains much better.

15 Qad1 Qd5 16 Qh6 Qe8 17 Qa4!
Forcing new weaknesses due to the pressure from both bishops.

17...a6
Weakening the b6-pawn, but there was no choice.

18 Qxd5! Wxd5 (D)

19 We3!
The follow-up to the previous move. Now White plans Qb3 followed by d5 and the weakness at b6 becomes apparent.

19...Qf6 20 Qb3 Wh5 21 d5! Qd8 22 d6 Qc5 23 d7 Qe7 24 Qf4! Qg7 25 Wb8 Whxh6 26 Wxd8+ Qf8 27 Qe3 Qc6 28 Wxf8+! Wxf8 29 d8=Q 1-0

Option A: 1 point
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 5 points

Let us see a similar position in which another former world champion, Tigran Petrosian, played more accurately:

Petrosian – Balashov
Moscow (Spartakiad) 1974

15 d5!
Like in the main game, this break has decisive effects.

15...exd5 16 Qg5 Qe4
If 16...g6, then 17 Qxe7, etc.

17 Qxe4 dxe4 18 Wxe4 g6 19 Wh4! Wc7 20 Qb3!
The threat against f7 induces new weaknesses.

20...h5
If 20...Qf8, then 21 Qf4! followed by Qg5 and wins.

21 We4 Qg7 22 Qxf7!
This is an instructive example of demolishing the defences.

22...Qxf7 23 Qh6!
This strong move is the key of the combination, establishing many threats to which there is no solution.

23...Wd6
If 23...\(\text{\&}d8\), controlling e6, then 24 \(\text{\&}g5+\).
24 \(\text{\&}c4+\) \(\text{\&}f6\) 25 \(\text{\&}ad1!\) \(\text{\&}d4\) 26 \(\text{\&}xd4+\) \(\text{\&}xd4\) 27 \(\text{\&}xd4\) \(\text{\&}c5\)
With the idea of covering the check on the f5-square as well as controlling g5.
28 h4! 1-0
There is no defence against \(\text{\&}g5\).

15 \(\text{\&}a4!\) (D)
As pointed out by Yermolinsky, it would be more precise to exchange on f6 first: 15 \(\text{\&}xf6\) \(\text{\&}xf6\) 16 \(\text{\&}a4\) axb4 17 axb4 \(\text{\&}a8\) (17...b6? loses to 18 \(\text{\&}a6!\) \(\text{\&}c7\) 19 \(\text{\&}xb6\) \(\text{\&}c7\) 20 \(\text{\&}eb1\) 18 \(\text{\&}c5\) \(\text{\&}x1\) 19 \(\text{\&}x1\) b6 20 \(\text{\&}xe6\) \(\text{\&}xe6\) 21 \(\text{\&}f5\) \(\text{\&}d6\) 22 \(\text{\&}a7\) with advantage.

Test 87 [Level 4]

Themes: Karlsbad Formation; Minority Attack

12... \(\text{\&}c8\)
A logical move suggested under Option A. With this, as we are going to see, Black does not solve all his problems. But since this is a natural follow-up in this type of position, we give 3 points to this choice.
12... \(\text{\&}6d7!\) is a good move, solving Black’s problems. Black is preparing the transfer of his knight to b6, where it will control the c4-square, preventing White from playing the minority attack. Then:

a) The natural 13 \(\text{\&}xe7\) \(\text{\&}xe7\) 14 \(\text{\&}ab1\) a5 15 a3 \(\text{\&}ec8\) 16 b4 b5!, followed by ...\(\text{\&}b6-c4\), gives Black a good game. In this line we are able to see the spirit of Black’s plan. If you chose Option B and analysed so far, then you have scored 5 points.

b) 13 \(\text{\&}f4!\) is the best move. 13... \(\text{\&}g6\) 14 \(\text{\&}h2\) \(\text{\&}df8\) (but not 14...\(\text{\&}f6\) because of 15 \(\text{\&}e5!\) followed by f4) 15 \(\text{\&}ad1\) (to open the position with e4, trying to take advantage of the more harmonious development and activity of the white pieces) 15... \(\text{\&}h4!\) (15... \(\text{\&}d6\) 16 \(\text{\&}e5!\) 16 \(\text{\&}xh4\) (not, of course, 16 \(\text{\&}e5?\) because of 16...f6 17 \(\text{\&}g4h5\) 18 \(\text{\&}g3\) hxg4 19 \(\text{\&}xh4 gxh3\) 16...\(\text{\&}xh4\) 17 e4! dxe4 18 \(\text{\&}xe4\) with a more or less equal game, Yermolinsky-Yusupov, Chicago 1996.

Instead, the exchange of bishops by means of 12... \(\text{\&}h5\) suggested under Option C allows White to carry out the minority attack comfortably after 13 \(\text{\&}xe7\) \(\text{\&}xe7\) 14 \(\text{\&}ab1\)!. We give 2 points to this choice.
13 a3 \(\text{\&}g6\) 14 b4 a5?!
This move unnecessarily creates a new weakness in Black’s position.

15... \(\text{\&}e4\)
15...axb4 16 axb4 \(\text{\&}xb4\) (16...\(\text{\&}e4!?\) deserves attention) 17 \(\text{\&}eb1\) with a clear advantage for White.
16 \(\text{\&}xe7\) \(\text{\&}xe7\) 17 \(\text{\&}c5\) f5
Let us see the interesting variations which arise after 17... \(\text{\&}f5\) 18 \(\text{\&}g5\) axb4 19 axb4 \(\text{\&}e8\) (if 19...\(\text{\&}xg5\), then 20 \(\text{\&}xf5\) \(\text{\&}a8\) 21 f4! \(\text{\&}x1\) 22 \(\text{\&}x1\) b6 23 \(\text{\&}d3\) with an overwhelming advantage) 20 \(\text{\&}ec1\) h6 21 \(\text{\&}xe4\) dxe4 22 \(\text{\&}f1\) b6 23 \(\text{\&}a4\) with a clear advantage.
18 bxa5!
White opens the b-file and therefore is going to put strong pressure on the b7-pawn.
18... \(\text{\&}xa5\) 19 \(\text{\&}eb1\) \(\text{\&}a7\)
After 19... \(\text{\&}xc5\) 20 dxc5 White would fix b7 as well as getting the d4-square for his knight.
20 a4 \(\text{\&}f8\)
20...b6 also leads to a clear advantage for White: 21 \(\text{\&}xe6\) \(\text{\&}xe6\) 22 \(\text{\&}b3\).
21 a5 \(\text{\&}c8\) 22 \(\text{\&}b6!\)
Preparing the decisive a6.
22...h6 23 \(\text{\&}b3\) \(\text{\&}h7\) 24 a6!
After this move Black is helpless.
24... \(\text{\&}xe5\) 25 dxc5 \(\text{\&}f6\) 26 \(\text{\&}d4\) \(\text{\&}e5\) 27 \(\text{\&}xf5!\) \(\text{\&}xf5\) 28 \(\text{\&}xf5\) \(\text{\&}xf5\) 29 \(\text{\&}b1\) 1-0
If 29... \(\text{\&}ef7\) then 30 axb7.
Option A: 3 points
Option B: 5 points
Option C: 2 points

Let us see a supplementary example on the theme of Black’s strategy to combat the minority attack.

White is playing routine moves, without a plan, since the minority attack he intended cannot be accomplished. Once the minority attack has been prevented, Black is going to focus his attention on White’s king.

22...\textit{g5!} 23 \textit{d1 h5!}
Preventing \textit{g4}.

24 \textit{h1}
Freening g1 for the rook, on account of the threat of ...\textit{f5-h4}.

24...\textit{e7!} (D)

\textbf{Bobotsov – Petrosian}
\textit{Lugano OL 1968}

15...\textit{b6!}?
The knight points to the important c4-square, a useful idea especially when this square lacks the protection of the light-squared bishop.

16 \textit{g5 e4!}
A typical move in these positions; besides, the knight can go to d6 where it guards the critical squares c4 and e4.

17 \textit{xex7 \textit{xe7} 18 \textit{c2} (D)}
The pawn cannot be taken: 18 \textit{dxe4 dxe4 19 \textit{xe4??} (if 19 \textit{b3 then 19...\textit{e6!} 20 \textit{xe6 \textit{xe6} and Black’s position is preferable}) 19...f6 and White loses a piece.

18...\textit{d6!}
Following the aforementioned idea.

19 \textit{a4 c4 20 \textit{xc4 c4 21 c5 d6!}
The d6-knight performs several duties admirably: on the one hand it controls e4 and particularly c4, thus preventing b4. From d6 the knight also protects the b7-pawn and hinders the break at b5, and furthermore, we shall not forget a possible transfer to the kingside to h4 via the f5-square.

22 \textit{ac1}

A multi-purpose move. On the one hand the rook releases the knight from the defence of b7 and thus can join the attack, and on the other hand, clears the way for the other rook. Furthermore, as the game is going to show, the rook can use the second rank in order to help in the attack (after ...f6 the rook will move to g7 supporting the break ...g5-g4).

25 \textit{d3}
Transferring the knight to the defence. It is clear that Black has won the strategic battle.

25...\(\text{\texttt{\texttt{d}e}4}\) 26 \(\text{\texttt{c}e}5\) \(\text{\texttt{d}d}6\) 27 \(\text{\texttt{c}d}3\) (\(\text{D}\))

27...\(\text{\texttt{w}f}5\)!

The beginning of a decisive attack. With this move Black frees the way for his g-pawn.

28 \(\text{\texttt{g}e}5\) \(\text{\texttt{f}6}\) 29 \(\text{\texttt{f}f}3\) \(\text{\texttt{g}g}7\)!

This was one of the ideas behind the move \(\text{\texttt{e}e}7\).

30 \(\text{\texttt{h}h}2\) \(\text{\texttt{e}e}8\)

And thus the other rook joins the battle.

31 \(\text{\texttt{g}g}1\) \(\text{\texttt{e}e}4\) 32 \(\text{\texttt{f}f}3\) \(\text{\texttt{e}e}6\) 33 \(\text{\texttt{f}f}d1\) \(\text{\texttt{g}g}5\)!

Threatening \(\text{\texttt{g}g}4\).

34 \(\text{\texttt{w}x}h5\)

Although the drawbacks of this move are obvious, there was no better choice.

34...\(\text{\texttt{f}f}5\) 35 \(\text{\texttt{e}e}1\) \(\text{\texttt{g}g}4\)!

Threatening to win the queen with \(\text{\texttt{h}h}7\).

36 \(\text{\texttt{hx}g4}\) \(\text{\texttt{fx}g4}\) 37 \(\text{\texttt{f}f}3\) \(\text{\texttt{gx}f3}\) 38 \(\text{\texttt{xf}3}\) \(\text{\texttt{h}h}7\) 39 \(\text{\texttt{we}5}\) \(\text{\texttt{c}c}8!\) 40 \(\text{\texttt{w}f}4\) \(\text{\texttt{xf}8}\) 41 \(\text{\texttt{we}5}\) \(\text{\texttt{f}f}5\)! 0-1

White loses material.

Before starting any exchange manoeuvre, it is important to play 12...\(\text{\texttt{e}e}6\) threatening \(\text{\texttt{b}b}5\) and hence forcing White to play 13 \(\text{\texttt{a}a}4\). After this, White’s position is weakened a little, and the c4-bishop is somewhat restricted in its movements (the bishop could not go to \(\text{\texttt{a}a}6\), a very annoying manoeuvre in some variations, as we shall soon see) and the same for the c3-n knight. Then:

a) The plan based on 13...\(\text{\texttt{e}e}4\) is now more interesting, as the following variation shows: 14 \(\text{\texttt{xe}4}\) \(\text{\texttt{xe}4}\) 15 \(\text{\texttt{g}g}3\) (but not 15 \(\text{\texttt{xe}7??!}\) \(\text{\texttt{w}xe}7\) 16 \(\text{\texttt{xa}6}\) \(\text{\texttt{xf}3}\) 17 \(\text{\texttt{gx}f3}\) \(\text{\texttt{cxd}4}\) 18 \(\text{\texttt{ex}d4}\) \(\text{\texttt{xf}6}\) with a lot of compensation for the pawn) 15...\(\text{\texttt{w}c}8\). This is the key move of Option B. Now, in contrast to what would happen in Option A, this move is possible since \(\text{\texttt{a}a}6\) – a very annoying idea – is under control. At any rate, after 16 \(\text{\texttt{dxc}5}\) \(\text{\texttt{bxc}5}\) (16...\(\text{\texttt{xc}xc}5\) 17 \(\text{\texttt{e}e}5!\)) 17 \(\text{\texttt{d}d}2!\) White had a slight but lasting advantage in Korchnoi-Karpov, Merano Wch (3) 1981. If Option B was your choice, you are entitled to 3 points.

b) Black can simplify by 13...\(\text{\texttt{cxd}4}\) 14 \(\text{\texttt{ex}d4}\) (restricting the mobility of the d7-knight; 14 \(\text{\texttt{xd}4}\) does not cause Black too much trouble) 14...\(\text{\texttt{h}h}5!\) – this is the true essence of Black’s plan. We feel that this idea was not seriously considered until this game, due to Black’s consequent lack of control over d5. However, after 15 \(\text{\texttt{xe}7}\) \(\text{\texttt{w}xe}7\) 16 \(\text{\texttt{d}d}5\) \(\text{\texttt{f}f}4\) 17 \(\text{\texttt{e}e}3\) \(\text{\texttt{w}f}6!\), White has nothing better than 18 \(\text{\texttt{e}e}4\) \(\text{\texttt{w}f}5\) 19 \(\text{\texttt{g}g}3\) \(\text{\texttt{w}f}6\) 20 \(\text{\texttt{e}e}4\) \(\text{\texttt{w}f}5\) 1/2-1/2 Kasparov-Karpov, Moscow Wch (34) 1984/5. If this – Option C – was your assessment and analysis, you get 5 points.

Test 88 [Level 5]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; The c-File

12...\(\text{\texttt{e}e}4\) (\(\text{D}\))

This was the move suggested under Option A. This is a natural move which tries to solve the problem of the black queen’s position. However, as Alekhine proves in a masterful way, White can get a superior position with accurate play. We give 2 points to this choice.
13 \( \square xe4 \) \( \square xh4 \)
After 13...\( \square xe4 \) 14 \( \triangle g3 \)! White’s pressure remains.
14 \( \triangle c3 \)!
After the inferior 14 \( \triangle d6 \) \( \triangle xf3 \) 15 \( \triangle xf3 \) \( \triangle e7 \) Black gains time.
14...\( \triangle f6 \)
Maybe 14...\( \triangle e7 \) is better, although Black’s desire to free \( e7 \) for his queen is understandable.
15 \( \triangle fd1 \) \( \triangle e7 \) (D)

\[ W \]

16 \( \triangle a6 \)!
A typical move in these positions. After the exchange of queens, White is going to consolidate the queenside and the command of the c-file.
16...\( \triangle ab8 \)
After this move the black rooks will lose coordination. 16...\( \triangle xa6 \) 17 \( \triangle xa6 \), allowing the white queen to take up residence on \( a6 \), with pressure against Black’s queenside pawns – and also against the c8-square, a key one for the control of the file – looks no better.
17 \( \triangle xb7 \) \( \triangle xb7 \) 18 \( \triangle e4 \)!
A strong move, opening the c-file.
18...\( \triangle xd4 \) 19 \( \triangle xd4 \)!
The right recapture. The d4-pawn is far from being weak and prevents the jumps of the black knight. If 19 \( \triangle xd4 \), then 19...\( \triangle xd4 \) 20 \( \triangle xd4 \) \( \triangle f6 \) with equality (Alekhine).
19...\( \triangle d8 \) (D)
20 \( \triangle a6 \)!
The queen uses the weakened light squares on the queenside in order to disturb the black pieces.

\[ W \]

20...\( \triangle b8 \)
In the event of 20...\( \triangle db8 \) White will follow with 21 \( \triangle c8+ \) \( \triangle xc8 \) 22 \( \triangle xb7 \) and the invasion by the queen has decisive effects.
21 \( \triangle xf6+ \)!
This exchange also causes a weakening in the kingside.
21...\( \triangle xf6 \) 22 \( \triangle e2 \) \( \triangle bd7 \) 23 \( \triangle d3 \)
Preparing to double rooks on the c-file, and we should not forget that from the third rank the rook is able to pass to the kingside.
23...\( \triangle d5 \) 24 \( \triangle dc3 \) \( \triangle h7 \) 25 \( h3 \) a5 26 a3!
A strong move which denies the black queen the b4-square. Black’s passivity is complete.
26...\( \triangle g8 \) 27 \( \triangle c7 \) \( \triangle d7 \) 28 \( \triangle 1c6 \) \( \triangle f8 \) 29 \( \triangle c2+ \)!
As Alekhine pointed out, this is more precise than 29 \( \triangle c8 \) \( \triangle g7 \) 30 \( \triangle c2+ \) since then Black could reply with 30...\( \triangle g6 \).
29...\( \triangle f5 \)
The weakening of the e5-square was unavoidable.
30 \( \triangle c8 \) \( \triangle e7 \) 31 \( \triangle xg8 \) \( \triangle xg8 \)
After the exchange of rooks, any sort of counterplay on the g-file vanishes.
32 \( \triangle c1 \) \( \triangle g7 \) 33 \( \triangle f4 \) \( \triangle d8 \) 34 a4!
Depriving the black rook of the b5-square. Black is virtually in zugzwang.
34...\( \triangle b5 \)
If 34...\( \triangle h7 \), as Alekhine wisely indicated, White wins by playing 35 \( \triangle c1 \) followed by \( \triangle c4-a6 \) with a decisive invasion.
35 \( \triangle g3+ \) \( \triangle f8 \) 36 \( \triangle d6+ \) \( \triangle e7 \) 39 \( \triangle xd5 \) is also hopeless for Black.
37 axb5 \( \text{b7} \) 38 \( \text{xd5} \) \( \text{xd5} \) (D)

39 b6!

The position is an easy win for White.

39...\( \text{c6} \) 40 \( \text{c7} \) \( \text{xc7} \) 41 \( \text{bxc}7 \) \( \text{b6} \) 42 \\
\( \text{e5} \) \( \text{e7} \) 43 \( \text{c4}! \) \( \text{c8} \) 44 \( \text{xa5} \) \( \text{d7} \) 45 \( \text{h2} \) \\
\( \text{xc7} \) 46 \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{d6} \) 47 \( \text{h4} \) \( \text{d5} \) 48 \( \text{h5} \) \\
\( \text{xd4} \) 49 \( \text{xh6} \) e5 50 \( \text{g5} \) f4 51 h4 f6+ 52 \\
\( \text{xf6} \) e4 53 \( \text{b3}+ \) \( \text{d5} \) \\
Or 53...\( \text{d3} \) 54 \( \text{c5}+ \) \( \text{d4} \) 55 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{xe4} \) \\
56 h5 and White wins easily. \\
54 h5 e3 55 fxe3 fxe3 56 \( \text{c1} \) 1-0

Option A: 2 points
Option B: 3 points
Option C: 5 points

Test 89 [Level 3]

Themes: Isolated Queen’s Pawn; Going to a Fixed Centre

17 \( \text{xd5} \)?

This move – suggested under Option B – is a positional mistake that leaves Black with a very comfortable game. Therefore we give this choice 0 points.

The tactical idea suggested under Option C gets no points either, since after 17 \( \text{xd5} \) \( \text{xd5} \) (not, of course, 17...\( \text{xc2} \)?? 18 \( \text{xe7}+ \) \( \text{h8} \) 19 \\
\( \text{xc2} \) 18 \( \text{e4} \) \( \text{hx4} \) 19 \( \text{hh4} \) \( \text{a4}?! \) Black \\
gets a positional advantage.

As the commentators correctly pointed out, the right move was 17 \( \text{xf6} \)! \( \text{xf6} \) (and not \\
17...\( \text{xf6} \)? 18 \( \text{g6} \) \( \text{fe8} \) 19 \( \text{xe6} \) fxe6 20 \\
\( \text{xe6}+ \) \( \text{h7} \) 21 \( \text{f8}++ \) \( \text{h8} \) 22 \( \text{h7}+ \) \( \text{xh7} \) \\
23 \( \text{g6#} \) ) 18 \( \text{xd5} \)!, continuing with the idea 
started on the previous move. With this move 
we are going from an IQP structure to a fixed centre, where Black’s central pawn will be 
shortly exposed and the white knights will be 
superior to the black bishops. After 18...\( \text{exd5} \) 
19 \( \text{xf5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) (best; if 19...\( \text{c6} \), then 20 \( \text{g4}! \) \\
\( \text{g5} \) 21 f4 g6 22 \( \text{xf6}+! \) \( \text{xf6} \) [22...\( \text{g7} \) 23 \\
\( \text{h5}+? \) \( \text{h7} \) 24 \( \text{e5} \) ] 23 \( \text{xf6} \) with a clear po-

titional advantage) 20 \( \text{xe5} \) \( \text{c4} \) 21 a3 \( \text{b6} \) 22 \\
\( \text{d2} \) White has a positional advantage. If this 
was your choice (Option A) and your analysis 
was in this direction, then you deserve 5 points.

17...\( \text{xd5} \) 18 \( \text{xe5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 19 \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{c6} \) 20 \\
\( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{bxc6} \)!

Fixing d4. As we saw many times, this is the 
right recapture, since the d4-pawn is going to 
prove more exposed than the one at c6.

21 \( \text{e5} \)

If 21 \( \text{a4} \), then 21...\( \text{d8} \) 22 \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{d5} \)!

21...\( \text{b6} \) 22 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{d8} \) 23 \( \text{e2} \)??

Too passive. After the correct 23 \( \text{a4} \) \( \text{b8} \) 
24 \( \text{c5} \) \( \text{f5} \) 25 \( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{xc6} \) 26 \( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 27 \\
\( \text{e4} \) (the only move on account of the discov-
ered attacks by the knight) 27...e5 Black is only 
slightly better.

23...\( \text{d5} \) 24 \( \text{xd5} \)

After this exchange, Black improves his 
pawn-structure, and the d4-pawn remains ex-
posed despite the d-file being closed. Neither 
was more promising 24 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{f5} \) 25 \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{d8} \) 
26 \( \text{b4} \) \( \text{d7} \) and we do not see how White is 
going to face the move ...e5 or ...\( \text{d8} \).

24...\( \text{xd5} \) 25 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{f5} \) 26 b3 h5?! (D)
This natural move, securing the knight, allows the exchange of that piece, thus easing White’s defence.

27 h3!?
Missing the opportunity to play 27 g3!.
27...h4!
Fixing the white pawns.

28 Wd3 c6 29 f1 g6 30 b1 b4 31 g1 a5! (D)

Once the position is strengthened and the position of the pieces is improved, Capablanca begins this advance, producing new weaknesses in White’s position.

32 Wb2 a4 33 Wxd2 Wxd2 34 Wxd2 axb3 35 axb3 b6 36 Wd3 a6 37 g4

This move weakens the position even more, but is the only way. If White keeps his pawn-structure unbroken by playing 37 c3 then Black can reap the fruits of his advantage by 37...a1+ 38 h2 c1 39 b4 c2 40 g1 b2 41 b5 b4.

37...hxg3 38 fxg3 a2 39 e3 c2 40 d1 e7 41 e3 c1+ 42 f2 c6 43 d1 b1! (D)

Capablanca plays this phase of the game with great accuracy. The alluring 43...b4 44 d2 b1 45 b2 xxb2 46 xxb2 d3+ 47 e2 xxb2 fails because after 48 d2 the knight is trapped.

44 e2?

This move was much criticized by some annotators, even though the alternative they offered does not look much better: 44 e1 a5 45 d2 xxb3 46 xxb3 xb3+ 47 c3 and

White has some minimal hope due to the position being simplified. But really, this knight ending does not look difficult to win.

44...xb3 45 e3 b4 46 c3 e7 47 e2 f5+ 48 f2 g5 49 g4 d6 50 g1 e4+ 51 f1 b1+ 52 g2 b2+ 53 f1 f2+ 54 e1 a2 55 f1 g7 56 e3 g6 57 d3 f6 58 e3 f7 59 d3 e7 60 e3 d6 61 d3 f2+ 62 e1 g2 63 f1 a2 64 e3 e5 65 d3 exd4 66 xxd4 c5 67 d1 d4 68 c1+ d5 0-1

Option A: 5 points
Option B: 0 points
Option C: 0 points

This game reminds us of another example where the solution is also a capture at d5 with the bishop:

De Groot – Scholtens
Netherlands 1938
17 \( \text{xd5} \)
Since Black is unable to recapture on d5 with a piece.

17...\text{exd5}
If 17...\text{exd5}, then 18 \text{xf6} \text{xf6} 19 \text{d7} \text{xd4} 20 \text{xd4} \text{xd4} 21 \text{xf8}, etc.

18 \text{f3!} \text{d8}
18...\text{g7} is met by 19 \text{g4}!

19 \text{fe1} \text{g7} 20 \text{g4!} \text{hxg4} 21 \text{xe7} \text{d7}
22 \text{xf8+} \text{xf8} 23 \text{f4}

With a decisive advantage.

Test 90 [Level 2]

Themes: Karlsbad Structure; Castling on Opposite Wings

11 0-0-0! (D)
This is the most sensible choice. White proposes a battle with opposite-side castling, and a typical race to open lines against the opponent’s king. White will have a head-start in this race since there is a point of contact at g5 thanks to the advance...h6. If this was your assessment and therefore your choice was Option A, then you have earned 5 points.

Of course, the plans suggested under Options B and C also deserve attention. Let us begin with Option B, where White plans a typical minority attack. Without a doubt, this is one of the typical manoeuvres in these positions and here is stronger than in analogous positions without the move...h6, since Black is unable to play the manoeuvre...f8-g6 or...g6 followed by...f8-e6-g7 planning the exchange of bishops with...f5. If this was your choice (Option B) then you have scored 4 points. Let us see two older games, without notes: 11 \text{g3} \text{f8} 12 0-0 \text{a6} 13 \text{ab1} \text{g4} 14 \text{h3} \text{d6} 15 \text{b4} \text{e6} 16 \text{f5} \text{h5} 17 \text{xd6} \text{xd6} 18 \text{b5} \text{d7} 19 \text{bcx6} \text{bcx6} 20 \text{d4} \text{g5} 21 \text{f5} \text{xf5} 22 \text{xf5} \text{e6} 23 \text{c5} \text{g6} 24 \text{h4} \text{f6} 25 \text{we5!} 1-0 Gligorić-Linsakens, Montevideo 1953; 11 0-0 \text{d6} 12 \text{ab1} a5 13 \text{bc1} \text{f8} 14 \text{h3} \text{e7} 15 \text{g3} \text{e6} 16 \text{xd6} \text{xd6} 17 \text{a4} \text{d6} 18 \text{b6} \text{b6} 19 \text{f5} \text{c7} 20 \text{xc8} \text{bxc8} 21 \text{f4} \text{d8} 22 \text{xe6} \text{fxe6} 23 \text{g6} \text{e7} 24 \text{f4!} \text{e8} 25 \text{f3} \text{d6} 26 \text{g4} \text{f8} 27 \text{h1} \text{h8} 28 \text{g1} \text{d8} 29 \text{fg3} \text{d7} 30 \text{g5} \text{f5} 31 \text{xf5} \text{exf5} 32 \text{gxf6} \text{gxf6} 33 \text{g2} \text{d7} 34 \text{g6} \text{e7} 35 \text{g8}+ 1-0 Kotov-H.Steiner, Moscow (USSR-USA) 1955. Of course Black could have played better in these games, but they are good to show the difficulties facing Black if he does not play with precision against White’s plan.

The plan mentioned under Option C also deserves 4 points. Even though it is a matter of taste, we like this plan more than the minority attack, since Black’s defensive task is quite difficult. Let us see two examples: 11 \text{f3} \text{c5} 12 0-0 \text{a6} 13 \text{ad1} (13 \text{h1}?! \text{c4} 14 \text{f5} \text{b5} 15 \text{e4} \text{b6} 16 \text{xc8} \text{xc8} 17 \text{e5} \text{h7} 18 \text{xe7} \text{xe7} 19 \text{a3} \text{e8} 20 \text{f4} 21 \text{a4} 22 \text{b5} \text{e6} 23 \text{g3} \text{g6} 24 \text{f5} \text{c8} 25 \text{wd2} \text{h5} 26 \text{f3} \text{h4} 27 \text{f1} \text{f6} 28 \text{e3} \text{fxe5} 29 \text{dxe5} \text{xe5} 30 \text{g4} \text{e4} 31 \text{f6!} \text{f7} 32 \text{h3} \text{g5} 33 \text{xd5}+ \text{e6} 34 \text{d8} \text{e8} 35 \text{xa5} \text{e1}+ 36 \text{xe1} \text{xe1}+ 37 \text{h2} \text{xf6} 38 \text{d4} \text{d6} 39 \text{wxg5} 1-0 Lalić-Aščić, Zadar 1997) 13...\text{b5} 14 \text{f2} 15 \text{a5} \text{b6} 16 \text{f3} \text{f8} (16...\text{b4}?! 17 \text{a3} \text{b7} 18 \text{e4} \text{g6} 19 \text{h3} 20 \text{e5} 21 \text{d2} 22 \text{d2} \text{c6} 23 \text{a1} \text{a4} 24 \text{b1} \text{f5} 25 \text{axb4} \text{axb4} 26 \text{xf5}! \text{gx} 5 27 \text{xf5} \text{e7} 28 \text{g3} \text{d7} 29 \text{xd7} \text{xd7} 30 \text{g6}+ \text{g7} 31 \text{c6} \text{xa1} 32 \text{xa1} \text{d7} 33 \text{xe5} 34 \text{dxe5} \text{e6} 35 \text{dxe6}+ \text{xe6} 36 \text{f5} \text{d6} 37 \text{e1} \text{c3} 38 \text{bxc3} \text{bxc3} 39 \text{e3} \text{a2} 40 \text{d5} \text{xf5} 41 \text{e1} \text{f8} 42 \text{e2} \text{e6} 43 \text{g5} 44 \text{d3} 45 \text{d6} \text{c7} 46 \text{e4} \text{d7} 47 \text{f5} \text{d4} 48 \text{f6}+ \text{h6} 49 \text{d5} \text{c7} 50 \text{e6} \text{c6} 51 \text{a6} \text{e5}+ 52 \text{xd4} 1-0 Botvinnik-Larsen, Noordwijk 1965.

11...\text{f8}
11...\(\text{Q}e4\)!? looks interesting.

12 h3!
Preventing the advance g4.

12...\(\text{Q}e6\) 13 g4 a6 14 f4 \(\text{Q}c8\) 15 g5! hxg5 16 \(\text{Q}xg5\)
White has the g-file for attacking with the rooks.
16...c5 17 \(\text{Q}h1\) c4
17...cxd4 18 \(\text{Q}xd4\) would be no better.
18 \(\text{Q}f5\) \(\text{Q}xf5\) 19 \(\text{Q}xf5\) \(\text{Q}d7\) 20 \(\text{Q}c2\) b5 21 \(\text{Q}h6\) g6 \((D)\)

22 f5!
Another breakthrough, opening more lines into the enemy fortress.
22...b4 23 \(\text{Q}xg6\)! bxc3 24 gxf7++ \(\text{Q}xf7\) 25 \(\text{Q}f4\) cxb2+ 26 \(\text{Q}b1\)
The black pawn serves as a shield to the white king.
26...\(\text{Q}e4\) 27 \(\text{Q}g7\) \(\text{Q}f6\) 28 \(\text{Q}f1\) \(\text{Q}d2\)?!
A last attempt in a hopeless position.
29 \(\text{Q}xd2\) \(\text{Q}f5\) 30 \(\text{Q}xb2\) c3+ 31 \(\text{Q}xc3\)
\(\text{Q}xc3\) 32 \(\text{Q}xd5\)+! \(\text{Q}e6\) 33 \(\text{Q}xf5\) 1-0
Option A: 5 points
Option B: 4 points
Option C: 4 points

Here is a supplementary example (see following diagram):
10 0-0-0!
## Index of Players

Numbers refer to pages. When a page number appears in **bold**, the named player had White.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Player</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adams</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adianto</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alburt</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alekhine</td>
<td>62, 66, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aleksandrov</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anand</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andersson</td>
<td>17, 49, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balashov</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barev</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beliavsky</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biscguier</td>
<td>7, 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bobotsov</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bogoljubow</td>
<td>66, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boleslavsky</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botvinnik</td>
<td>13, 34, 35, 50, 64, 87, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronstein</td>
<td>24, 35, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candea</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capablanca</td>
<td>62, 66, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chajes</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiburdanidze</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christiansen</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Groot</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolmatov</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donner</td>
<td>29, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dvoretsky</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>El Taher</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evans</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fernandez Garcia</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fischer</td>
<td>37, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flohr</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gelfand</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgiev, Ki.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gheorghiu</td>
<td>60, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gligorić</td>
<td>21, 23, 43, 45, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gomez, M.</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grischuk</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gufeld</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gurevich, M.</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hansen, C.</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hecht</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hjartarson</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostalet</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hübner</td>
<td>19, 27, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illescas</td>
<td>174, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ivkov</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamsky</td>
<td>13, 20, 180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karpov</td>
<td>7, 8, 8, 9, 9, 10 (2), 11, 12 (2), 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19 (2), 20 (2), 21, 22, 26, 27, 48, 56, 57, 57, 58, 59 (2), 65, 96, 107, 19, 20, 22, 39, 48, 53, 57, 58, 59, 107, 156, 30, 40, 63, 165, 18, 119, 7, 62, 66, 12, 30, 59, 25, 33, 31, 119, 16, 25, 36, 42, 54, 41, 148, 47, 7, 16, 53, 178, 45, 52, 48, 48, 21, 24, 28, 32, 33, 37, 39, 42, 43, 45, 47, 51, 52 (2), 82, 118, 161, 197, 199, 205, 10, 23, 177, 36, 153, 161, 29, 143, 14, 151, 62, 25, 191</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Romero 32, 41, 46 (2), 133, 137, 148, 162, 164, 178
Salov 61, 93
Schawecker 8
Scholtens 203
Schweber 118
Seirawan 55
Serper 96
Shirov 171
Short 174
Simagin 45
Smirin 23
Smyslov 39, 65
Sokolov, A. 18
Sorokin 51
Spassky 28, 82, 205
Spraggett 143
Szabo 44
Taimanov 11, 37, 52
Tal 13, 38, 49, 87
Timman 8
Tolnai 14
Uhlmann 23, 114
Vaganian 40
Van den Doel 177
Veingold 156
Vidmar 64
Wexler 36
Williams, A.H. 15
Yermolinsky 65
Yudasin 162
Yurtsev 39
Yusupov 63
Zagoriansky 34
Zamikhovsky 67
Zielinska 46
Zlotnik 32
Zsinka 14

Index of Openings

Numbers refer to pages. Alphanumeric codes are ECO codes.

**English Opening**
A13 34; A15 45; A16 28; A21 31; A26 25; A28 8; A29 26, 32; A30 10; A31 7; A33 8, 9, 28; A34 27; A35 30; A36 133; A39 29

**Queen's Pawn**
A45 10, 32; A46 33; A52 178; A55 41; A56 43

**Modern Benoni**
A60 42; A63 43

**Dutch Defence**
A91 35

**Sicilian Defence**
B76 119

**French Defence**
C01 137, 143; C09 137; C18 151, 180

**Ruy Lopez (Spanish)**
C91 102; C96 171

**Queen’s Gambit**
D12 61; D14 51; D27 177; D30 56; D34 48, 59, 178; D35 67; D36 55, 65; D38 52; D41 62; D42 65; D45 50, 59; D46 52; D53 57; D55 49, 53, 57, 58; D58 63, 66, 174; D60 64; D61 66; D63 62

**Grünfeld Defence**
D73 9; D75 18; D79 20; D82 19; D85 19; D94 7, 60; D98 20, 107

**Catalan Opening**
E05 54

**Bogo-Indian Defence**
E11 16

**Queen's Indian Defence**
E12 39, 40; E13 38; E15 18; E16 17

**Nimzo-Indian Defence**
E24 13, 87; E27 89; E31 15; E32 12; E38 12; E40 37; E41 36; E42 16, 93; E46 36; E48 13, 39; E54 11, 14; E58 14, 37

**King’s Indian Defence**
E71 46, 154; E73 25, 118; E75 23; E76 153; E80 47; E87 22; E89 21, 45, 161; E91 46, 162; E92 44, 48, 156; E93 21; E94 23, 164, 165; E95 24, 148; E99 166
How to Play Chess Endgames
Karsten Müller & Wolfgang Pajek
This book focuses on the practical side of playing endgames. Using outstanding examples, the authors explain both how to conduct ‘classical’ endgame tasks (e.g., exploiting an extra pawn), and also how to handle unbalanced endings that arise from modern-day dynamic openings.
352 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $34.95 / £18.99

Grandmaster Secrets: Winning Quickly at Chess
John Nunn
For a grandmaster to lose a game in 25 moves or fewer takes something special, and club players can learn much from studying these miniatures. Each game is a true battle, with the result often in doubt until near the very end.
256 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $29.95 / £15.99

Creative Chess Strategy
Alfonso Romero
Many players, once they have obtained an advantage, mistakenly assume that the exploitation will be ‘just a matter of technique’. Romero shows that often it is the paradoxical solution that wins the game.
224 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $24.95 / £17.99

Creative Chess Opening Preparation
Viacheslav Eingorn
Grandmaster Eingorn is a renowned chess opening trend-setter. Here he reveals the methods by which he prepares his openings.
160 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $26.95 / £15.99

Secrets of Chess Transformations
Dražen Maročić
This instructive work teaches one of the most important skills in chess – the ability to transform one type of advantage into another.
208 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $27.50 / £15.99

Grandmaster Secrets: The Caro-Kann
Peter Wells
1 e4 c6 – the popular Caro-Kann Defence – stakes Black’s claim to the central squares, and seeks free development for all his pieces. GM Peter Wells reveals the new approaches for both sides developed in recent years.
176 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $29.95 / £15.99

The Road to Chess Improvement
Alex Yermolinsky
224 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $24.95 / £17.99

Improve Your Positional Chess
Carsten Hansen
Throughout a game there are judgements and decisions that cannot be determined simply by calculation. This illuminating book shows how to weigh up positional elements at the board.
192 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $25.95 / £14.99

Chess Strategy in Action
John Watson
Here Watson fleshes out the theory presented to enormous acclaim in Secrets of Modern Chess Strategy. The games come from imaginative players such as Kasparov, Kramnik, Anand, Ivanchuk and tempestuous innovators such as Shirov and Morozevich.
288 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $29.95 / £19.99

50 Way to Win at Chess
Steve Giddins
An engaging book guaranteed to develop your personal arsenal of techniques and ideas. The 50 games are mostly from the modern era, but with some classic examples to show essential themes.
176 pages, 248 x 172 mm; $26.95 / £14.99

About the Publisher: Gambit Publications is passionate about creating innovative and genuinely instructive chess books. The company is owned and run exclusively by chess masters and grandmasters.
The opening is reaching its end, and we must make a pivotal decision: what shall our middlegame strategy be? Do we seek an active plan to profit from our strengths and highlight the opponent’s weaknesses? Or do we adopt prophylaxis, attending to our own position’s shortcomings and hindering the opponent’s plans? Alternatively, are there any ready-made plans we know from other games that can be tailored to fit our position?

The authors present 90 ‘multi-choice’ tests where the reader faces this task. In detailed solutions, they explain the best option, and why other possibilities are less convincing. We develop a feel for how the decision is made, while painlessly building our ‘repertoire’ of plans in typical positions.

All the examples in this book arise from Queen’s Pawn or Flank Openings, and are arranged by opening and level of difficulty. Many are drawn from games by virtuoso strategists such as Karpov and Petrosian. In all cases, the game is annotated in full, so we see the consequences of the critical decision, while also appreciating the finer points of some of the most instructive games in chess history.

Grandmaster Alfonso Romero comes from Spain and was runner-up in the 1984/5 European Junior Championship. He has represented his country in several Olympiads, winning an individual bronze medal at the 2002 event.

Amador Gonzalez de la Nava is a FIDE Master. He is also from Spain, and is a chess teacher and writer.

Other chess titles from Gambit include: